

# EVALUATION OF RECLAMATION PRACTICES ON UPLAND AND PEATLAND WELLSITES

Heather Tokay and Dean MacKenzie, Vertex Resource Group Ltd.

Chris Powter, Enviro Q&A Services

Bin Xu, Center for Boreal Research, Northern Alberta Institute of  
Technology

Bonnie Drozdowski and Simone Levy, InnoTech Alberta Inc.

---

REPORT PREPARED FOR  
PETROLEUM TECHNOLOGY ALLIANCE CANADA  
Reclamation Remediation Research Committee

---

CONFIDENTIAL

18 – RRRC - 09

May 10, 2019

---

## NOTICES OF REPORTS

---

1. This Report was prepared as an account of work conducted at INNOTECH ALBERTA INC. ("INNOTECH") on behalf of PTAC. All reasonable efforts were made to ensure that the work conforms to accepted scientific, engineering and environmental practices, but INNOTECH makes no other representation and gives no other warranty with respect to the reliability, accuracy, validity or fitness of the information, analysis and conclusions contained in this Report. Any and all implied or statutory warranties of merchantability or fitness for any purpose are expressly excluded. PTAC acknowledges that any use or interpretation of the information, analysis or conclusions contained in this Report is at its own risk. Reference herein to any specified commercial product, process or service by trade-name, trademark, manufacturer, or otherwise does not constitute or imply an endorsement or recommendation by INNOTECH.
2. Any authorized copy of this Report distributed to a third party shall include an acknowledgement that the Report was prepared by INNOTECH and shall give appropriate credit to INNOTECH and the authors of the Report.
3. Copyright INNOTECH 2019. All rights reserved.

---

## DISCLAIMER

---

PTAC does not warrant or make any representations or claims as to the validity, accuracy, currency, timeliness, completeness or otherwise of the information contained in this report, nor shall it be liable or responsible for any claim or damage, direct, indirect, special, consequential or otherwise arising out of the interpretation, use or reliance upon, authorized or unauthorized, of such information.

The material and information in this report are being made available only under the conditions set out herein. PTAC reserves rights to the intellectual property presented in this report, which includes, but is not limited to, our copyrights, trademarks and corporate logos. No material from this report may be copied, reproduced, republished, uploaded, posted, transmitted or distributed in any way, unless otherwise indicated on this report, except for your own personal or internal company use.

---

## CITATION

---

This report may be cited as:

Tokay, H., C.B. Powter, B. Xu, B. Drozdowski, D. MacKenzie and S. Levy, 2019. Evaluation of Reclamation Practices on Upland and Peatland Wellsites. Prepared for the Petroleum Technology Alliance of Canada, Calgary, Alberta. 222 pp.

---

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

---

The authors would like to acknowledge the financial contributions provided by the Alberta Upstream Research Fund (AUPRF) Program as well as the guidance and support provided by the technical project champions Sonia Glubish and Lisa Warren and the technical steering committee members Susan McGillivray and Nadia Cruickshank. The contributions from all of the interview participants is also sincerely appreciated.

---

## EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

---

In general, regulators expect that disturbed sites in the boreal forest will undergo complete reclamation (recontouring, soil replacement and revegetation) with the goal of returning the site to pre-disturbance condition and land use (equivalent land capability). Legislation and policies provide opportunities to vary from these expectations with written approval from a specified decision maker (Director, Regulator, or Land Manager). Alberta's Wetland Policy requires replacement of wetlands lost due to industrial development, but recognizes that the relative value of a wetland (used to calculate replacement ratios) is based, in part, on the relative abundance of wetlands in the region. In areas of high abundance (such as northeast Alberta) and low historical loss, the concept of *relative abundance* will facilitate a considered approach to wetland management, balancing environmental, social, and economic priorities in the execution of management decisions.

The two specific instances of relevance to this project where a regulatory decision is needed are: (1) a request for a variance based on a site having natural vegetation encroachment rather than complete reclamation; and, (2) a request to leave well pads in peatlands in place.

The following key observations were made from this phase of the project:

- It is clear in the wellsite criteria and SED 002 that the Land Manager (AEP) must approve a change in land use from peatland to upland; it is less clear if the Land Manager or the AER must approve the variance for a vegetation override where a site has natural vegetation encroachment. Furthermore, when a pad in a peatland is partially removed it is unclear if a change in land use approval is required for the remaining upland portion (and if so, if there is a size of remaining upland below which an approval is not required). **Clarity of roles must be provided.**
- There is limited guidance on how decisions are being made to accept or reject requests for change in land use and variances. There are perceptions within the government/regulator and industry/consultant worlds about the "real" reason for applications and the willingness to make the decisions in a timely manner. **These perceptions must be addressed before meaningful change can occur.**
- There is limited scientific information available to support applications and decisions related to requests for variances and changes in land use. Some information is coming to light from various field-based research and demonstration trials but awareness of, access to, the information is not widespread. **A compilation of existing experience in an easily accessible and continuously updated location would be very helpful for practitioners and regulators.**
- Several interview respondents defaulted to the criteria when asked about reclamation expectations; however, **the issues at hand (request for variance and change in land use) are, by definition, exceptions to the criteria therefore a new way of thinking is required to address these requests.**
- During the reclamation certification process, professional justification is required for sites requiring a change in land use and/or a variance to criteria for one or more reclamation

deficiencies according to the applicable wellsite criteria. It is clear from the interviews that **there is a need for clear direction on what information is required to support professional justification** which describes why the specific deficiencies will not have long term adverse environmental impacts and/or ultimately influence equivalent land capability.

- **Clarity is required on the relative priority that should be placed on the core components of the reclamation criteria (soils, landscape and vegetation) when evaluating a request for a variance to the criteria** (i.e., what are the minimum parameters that must be met). There was considerable variability in the interview responses regarding which parameters were most important, especially when it came to vegetation; the variability appeared to be correlated to the specific area of expertise and interest of the respondent.
- **Clarity is required on the application of the Wetland Policy to requests for a change in land use, as well as the extent to which local and regional implications of site-specific land use changes will be considered.**
- The concept of net environmental benefit (environmental and economic) arising from regulatory decisions was often raised in the context of removing pads in peatlands. **Clear guidance on the environmental and economic factors to be considered when making the decision to grant or refuse a request for change in land use is required.**
- **Care is required in discussing policy and practice approaches using generic terms like *peatland*** – there is information to suggest that different peatland types may respond to reclamation differently. More research, and documentation of existing practices and results, is required to ensure the appropriate policies and practices are developed.
- Similarly, while some general policy guidance may be provided, **site-specific factors (e.g., caribou habitat, location, access, etc.) will still need to be incorporated into final decisions to grant a variance or request for change in land use.**
- **One or more decision support tools are required to guide practitioners and regulators through the application, review and decision process;** these tools should be designed to remove subjectivity from the decision process.
- This document has focused primarily on well pads; however, access roads, particularly in peatland sites, will also face similar concerns and be subject to request for variances and/or changes in land use. **Once a final set of recommendations is made for well pads the rules for access roads can be addressed.**

---

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

NOTICES OF REPORTS .....	I
DISCLAIMER.....	I
CITATION .....	I
ACKNOWLEDGMENTS.....	II
EXECUTIVE SUMMARY .....	III
TABLE OF CONTENTS.....	V
LIST OF TABLES.....	VII
LIST OF FIGURES.....	VII
LIST OF ACRONYMS.....	VII
1.0 INTRODUCTION.....	1
1.1 BACKGROUND.....	1
1.2 SCOPE AND OBJECTIVES.....	2
1.2.1 <i>Scope</i> .....	2
1.2.2 <i>Objectives</i> .....	3
1.3 METHODOLOGY .....	3
1.4 DEFINITIONS.....	4
1.5 STRUCTURE OF THIS REPORT.....	7
2.0 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR RECLAMATION AND CHANGE IN END LAND USE .....	8
2.1 BACKGROUND.....	8
2.2 UPLAND SITES WITH NATURAL VEGETATION ENCROACHMENT .....	14
2.3 MINERAL SOIL PAD REMOVAL .....	17
2.4 SUMMARY.....	22
3.0 ECOLOGICAL FUNCTIONALITY OF RECLAIMED WELLSITES .....	26
3.1 UPLAND FORESTS .....	26
3.1.1 <i>Peer-reviewed and Grey Literature Discussing Ecological Function of Upland Ecosystems</i> .....	26
3.1.2 <i>Outreach Responses Related to Ecological Function of Upland Ecosystems</i> .....	31
3.2 PEATLANDS .....	36
3.2.1 <i>Peer-reviewed and Grey Literature Discussing Ecological Function of Peatland Ecosystems</i> .....	36
3.2.2 <i>Key Components for Evaluating Ecosystem Function of Reclaimed Wellsites Within Peatlands</i> .....	38
4.0 UPLAND SITES WITH NATURAL VEGETATION ENCROACHMENT .....	41
4.1 KEY CHALLENGES.....	41
4.2 CONDITIONS ON SITES WITH NATURAL VEGETATION ENCROACHMENT .....	42
4.3 TRADITIONAL RECLAMATION APPROACH .....	45
4.4 PROCESS AND FACTORS AFFECTING THE DECISION TO APPLY FOR A VARIANCE TO CRITERIA .....	46
4.4.1 <i>Consequences of Leaving Deficiencies in Place</i> .....	48

4.4.2	<i>Consequences of Correcting Deficiencies through Traditional Reclamation Approaches</i> .....	62
4.4.3	<i>Remoteness and Access Considerations</i> .....	68
4.4.4	<i>Location Land Use Considerations</i> .....	69
4.5	FACTORS AFFECTING THE DECISION TO ALLOW A VARIANCE TO CRITERIA.....	69
4.6	RECLAMATION OPTIONS FOR A VARIANCE TO CRITERIA.....	72
4.7	SUMMARY OF MAIN CONSIDERATIONS INFLUENCING VARIANCE DECISIONS.....	72
5.0	MINERAL SOIL PADS IN PEATLANDS .....	74
5.1	KEY CHALLENGES.....	74
5.2	SITE CONDITIONS FOR MINERAL SOIL PADS IN PEATLANDS .....	75
5.3	RECLAMATION APPROACH FOR PAD REMOVAL.....	76
5.3.1	<i>Complete Mineral Soil Pad Removal</i> .....	80
5.3.2	<i>Partial Mineral Soil Pad Removal</i> .....	81
5.4	POTENTIAL ADVERSE ECOLOGICAL IMPACTS FROM MINERAL SOIL PADS IN PEATLANDS .....	84
5.5	PROCESS AND FACTORS AFFECTING THE DECISION TO LEAVE A MINERAL SOIL PAD IN PLACE .....	88
5.5.1	<i>Mineral Soil Pad Impacts</i> .....	88
5.5.2	<i>Cumulative Effects and Regional Considerations</i> .....	89
5.5.3	<i>Upland Function</i> .....	90
5.5.4	<i>Pad Removal and Net Environmental Benefit</i> .....	92
5.5.5	<i>Location and Land Use Considerations</i> .....	94
5.6	PROCESS AND FACTORS AFFECTING THE DECISION TO GRANT A CHANGE OF LAND USE.....	95
5.7	SUMMARY OF MAIN CONSIDERATIONS INFLUENCING PAD REMOVAL DECISIONS .....	98
6.0	KNOWLEDGE GAPS AND RECOMMENDATIONS .....	100
6.1	RATIONALE AND PROCESS FOR APPLYING A VARIANCE TO CRITERIA .....	100
6.2	RATIONALE AND PROCESS FOR LEAVING A MINERAL SOIL PAD IN PLACE .....	101
6.3	RECOMMENDATIONS .....	102
7.0	REFERENCES.....	104
	APPENDIX A: SUMMARY OF INTERVIEWS.....	121
	APPENDIX B: SUMMARY OF CASE STUDIES .....	199
	APPENDIX C: ECOLOGICAL FUNCTIONALITY OF UPLAND FORESTS .....	212
	APPENDIX D: ECOLOGICAL FUNCTIONALITY OF PEATLANDS.....	224

---

## LIST OF TABLES

---

Table 1.	Possible end land uses based on natural region.....	13
Table 2.	Summary of key factors affecting peatland function. ....	40
Table 3.	Summary of benefits and drawbacks of traditional and modified reclamation for upland forested sites eligible for a variance to criteria. ....	73
Table 4.	A summary of key factors affecting peatland function under different reclamation approaches for mineral soil pads within peatlands.....	79
Table 5.	Summary of the main considerations for pad removal vs. leaving mineral soil pads in place in peatlands. ....	98

---

## LIST OF FIGURES

---

Figure 1.	Hierarchy of reclamation outcomes for peat operations. ....	12
Figure 2.	Choosing land use reclamation criteria for peatland sites. ....	19
Figure 3.	Relationship between pad construction / removal and criteria.....	22
Figure 4.	Preliminary decision tree for selecting reclamation and criteria options. ....	25
Figure 5.	Windthrow in a forest stand in the Dry Mixedwood Natural Subregion of the Boreal Natural Region in central Alberta. ....	51
Figure 6.	An example of a reclaimed well pad in a peatland.....	75
Figure 7.	Illustration of a mineral soil footprint and its potential impact on vegetation, hydrology, chemistry and carbon balance of surrounding peatlands. ....	84
Figure 8.	Distribution of interviewee responses.....	122
Figure 9.	The IPAD site during site work and MLTT and field performance as of 2018 and 2019. ....	200
Figure 10.	Pad-22 during a visit in July 2018.....	202
Figure 11.	Burial of Wood Chips under Peat.....	203
Figure 12.	SKEG pad 12. ....	204
Figure 13.	Partial Pad Removal + MLTT. ....	205
Figure 14.	Partial Removal, Planting, and Natural Regeneration .....	207
Figure 15.	Partial Pad Removal and Natural Regeneration – Cold Lake.....	208
Figure 16.	Partial pad removal, site adjustment, donor transfer and planting. ....	210
Figure 17.	Partial Mineral Fill Removal – JACOS Road.....	211
Figure 18.	A peatland complex in northwestern Alberta. ....	228
Figure 19.	Illustration of peatland microtopography along a hydrological gradient.....	229

---

## LIST OF ACRONYMS

---

AEP	Alberta Environment and Parks
AER	Alberta Energy Regulator
ASRD	Alberta Sustainable Resource Development

---



ATV	All-terrain Vehicle
AUPRF	Alberta Upstream Petroleum Research Fund
C&R	Conservation and Reclamation
CNT	Consultative Notation
CRBP	Conservation and Reclamation Business Plan
CRR	<i>Conservation and Reclamation Regulation</i>
DBH	Diameter at Breast Height
DOC	Dissolved Organic Carbon
DSA	Detailed Site Assessment
EFR	Environmental Field Report
ELC	Equivalent Land Capability
EPEA	<i>Environmental Protection and Enhancement Act</i>
ERA	(University of Alberta) Education and Research Archives
FMA	Forest Management Agreement
GHG	Greenhouse Gases
iFROG	Industrial Footprint Reduction Options Group
LARP	Lower Athabasca Regional Plan
LAT	Landscape Analysis Tool
LFH	Litter, Fibric, Humic
NAIT CBR	Northern Alberta Institute of Technology Centre for Boreal Research
NPP	Net Primary Productivity
PDA	Pre-disturbance Assessment
PLCRCP	Project-Level Conservation, Reclamation, and Closure Plan
PNT	Protective Notation
PTAC	Petroleum Technology Alliance Canada
OSE	Oil Sands Exploration (operation)
RCAG	Reclamation Criteria Advisory Group
SAR	Sodium Adsorption Ratio
SED	Specified Enactment Direction
UTV	Utility Vehicle

# Evaluation of Reclamation Practices on Upland and Peatland Sites

TOKAY, H., POWTER, C.B., XU, B., DROZDOWSKI, B., MACKENZIE, D., LEVY, S.

---

## 1.0 INTRODUCTION

---

### 1.1 BACKGROUND

In 2018, the Petroleum Technology Alliance Canada (PTAC)<sup>1</sup> put out a request for proposals entitled *Reclamation Practices on Upland and Peatland Well Sites* (PTAC AUPRF RRRR 1801). The project was established in response to challenges experienced by practitioners, regulators and industry stakeholders related to reclamation certification of legacy sites. In the context of this project, the term **site**<sup>2</sup> is defined as an upstream oil and gas wellsite and the associated facilities requiring reclamation to meet Alberta's reclamation criteria for peatland and/or forested sites, and a **legacy site** is defined as sites constructed and abandoned and/or reclaimed prior to establishment of the current relevant upland reclamation criteria. The specific sites in question are legacy sites that were constructed using imported mineral soil pads in peatlands, and upland sites that have had natural vegetation encroachment. These sites present one or more reclamation deficiencies according to the applicable wellsite criteria, and cannot receive a reclamation certificate without additional scrutiny and justification under current regulatory criteria and policies.

When dealing with these sites, the question arises of whether to remove mineral soil pads in peatlands or whether to disturb existing vegetation to modify soil and landscape features to meet reclamation criteria. There has been inconsistency in how decisions about these sites are being made (i.e., different levels of reclamation effort have been applied) and in how reclamation criteria is interpreted and applied in terms of defining what are acceptable conditions for certification.

Historically, industry and regulators have agreed that in certain site-specific circumstances, forested sites that have natural vegetation encroachment can be certified without removing existing vegetation and re-starting the traditional reclamation process. Similarly, sites with mineral pads in peatlands have been certified without the removal of the pad or with partial removal of the pad. There has been a recognition that sites can be deemed to be on a trajectory towards developing a sustainable plant community from an ecological perspective (keeping in mind some grandfathering of what is acceptable with regards to

---

<sup>1</sup> Acronyms used in this report are provided in the List of Acronyms at the front of the report.

<sup>2</sup> Definitions for terms used in this report are provided in section 1.4.

species such as seeded grasses), without further disturbance/reclamation. A consistent and standard method to define and address these circumstances has been difficult to discern within the current regulatory and policy framework.

The purpose of this project is to document the basis for current industry practices and regulatory decisions for legacy sites, assess measurement criteria for evaluating whether equivalent ecosystems have been established on naturally revegetated and padded peatland sites, and provide regulators, practitioners and industry stakeholders with management options supported by literature review, practitioner interviews, and case studies. Subsequently, recommendations for an acceptable policy framework/decision support tool to assist in making decisions around appropriate management and certification of these sites will be developed. The goal is to ensure that functioning ecosystems are developed with an appropriate level of activity, and that there is a process that outlines eligibility for reclamation certification.

InnoTech Alberta, NAIT and Vertex will be carrying out the project in three stages from 2018 to 2020. The first stage of the project, which is summarized in this document, focused on desktop review (current guidelines and literature), assembly of case studies and an outreach program to identify the site characteristics (i.e., site categories or classes) that have led industry and regulators to agree that no or minimal further disturbance was required. To establish case studies and document practitioners' perspectives, select representatives identified by project champions were interviewed. Stage 2 will include field visits to select sites with relevant stakeholders, and Stage 3 will provide recommendations and conclusions based on learnings from previous stages.

## **1.2 SCOPE AND OBJECTIVES**

### **1.2.1 Scope**

As previously stated, in the context of this project, the term 'site' is defined as a legacy<sup>3</sup> upstream oil and gas wellsite and the associated facilities requiring reclamation per Alberta's reclamation criteria for peatlands and/or forested lands. Sites included in this project are restricted to those on public land at which the well has been properly and fully abandoned, and where contamination is absent or has been remediated.

The discussion, analysis and conclusions drawn by this report and the recommendations provided apply only to the legacy sites that have been defined. This document is not intended to inform reclamation

---

<sup>3</sup> In the context of this project, "legacy" refers to sites constructed and abandoned and/or reclaimed prior to establishment of the current relevant reclamation criteria.

practices on newer sites, although it will consider newer reclamation practices in the discussion of leaving certain parameters in place that do not meet specific guidelines. This document is not intended to eliminate the need for reclamation for newer sites. This document is also not intended to prescribe reclamation practices for legacy sites, it will still be up to the individual's, company's and regulator's professional judgement what should be done at a particular site.

### 1.2.2 Objectives

The goal of the project is to ensure that legacy sites that developed functioning ecosystems can proceed through the reclamation certification process with an appropriate level of reclamation activity. The specific objectives of the project are as follows:

- Evaluate the benefits and drawbacks of removing mineral soil pads in peatlands and disturbing established upland vegetation to modify soil and landscape features required to meet reclamation criteria.
- Identify and validate considerations required to make the decision that no further disturbance on legacy sites is required.
- Provide regulators, practitioners and industry stakeholders with support tools to assist in making decisions around the appropriate level of reclamation to achieve certification on legacy sites.

## 1.3 METHODOLOGY

For this review, relevant regulatory and policy documents were reviewed and summarized to provide context for the project. Detailed searches through multiple resources including conference proceedings; electronic journals; industry, government and public reports; and, the Internet were completed to find literature related ecological function on reclaimed upland forested and peatland wellsites. A significant body of knowledge exists regarding ecological function and reclamation of upland and peatlands [to a lesser extent] therefore emphasis was placed on the collection of recent literature from peer-reviewed journal articles and industry publications where the research/case studies were conducted in forests and peatlands of western Canada and from disturbances other than conventional oil and gas to leverage learnings from other industries. Searches on the Internet included the use of general search terms encompassing Boolean and iterative search strategies to capture a broad swath of literature. Once collected, resources and abstracts were reviewed to determine whether documents met the inclusion criteria.

*Inclusion criteria:* Due to the range of topics considered within this report, no specific key words were required as inclusion criteria. Documents discussing topics including, but not limited to, wellsite reclamation, forest reclamation, forest ecology, boreal ecosystems, natural regeneration, forestry

practices, noxious weeds, peatland initiation and succession, wetland classification, disturbance ecology, bryophyte biology were included within the review.

*Exclusion criteria:* Documents that were not in English; patents and conference abstracts were excluded from all searches. No documents were excluded based on the date of publication; however, where literature was abundant, an emphasis was placed on the collection of literature from the most recent years (2015 to 2019).

The Internet and the Google scholar search engine were used to conduct general searches of peer-reviewed publications, reports, and industry-related publications. More specific searches were conducted using the University of Alberta's Education and Research Archives (ERA).

A list of interview questions was developed and circulated amongst the project team, industry champions, Alberta Energy Regulator and Alberta Environment and Parks for comments and suggestions (Appendix A). A project statement which articulated the scope and objective for the project was included with the interview questions to provide context for respondents (Appendix A). A list of potential interviewees was developed by the project team and industry champions and expanded through initial consultations. Initially, interview questions were emailed to all potential participants, who were then given the option to either provide feedback in writing or to schedule a one hour phone interview. The majority of respondents (80%) selected the phone interview option, which allowed for additional follow-up questions and for additional context and clarity to be provided when requested. Feedback from individuals was recorded and compiled into a single document and responses for individual questions were then categorized based on common themes (Appendix A). A summary of the interview responses is provided in Appendix A and individual comments are used to support technical statements in the body of the report. Interviewees were asked to provide case studies applicable to the project which were integrated into a database detailing site specific information regarding site history, characteristics, and certification status. Case studies will be used in subsequent project stages.

## **1.4 DEFINITIONS**

### **Borrow Site (Pit)**

An excavation created to provide construction material for well pads, access roads and other infrastructure.

### **Change in Land Use**

For the purposes of this report it is a change from a peatland site (peatland criteria apply) to an upland site (forested land criteria apply).

**Ecosite**

Ecological units that develop under similar environmental influences (climate, moisture and nutrient regime). [...] It is not tied to specific landforms or plant communities [...], but is based on the combined interaction of biophysical factors that dictate the availability of moisture and nutrients for plant growth. Thus, ecosites are different in their moisture regime and/or nutrient regime (Beckingham and Archibald, 1996).

**Forested Land Criteria**

The *2010 Reclamation Criteria for Wellsites and Associated Facilities for Forested Lands (Updated July 2013)* (Alberta Environment and Sustainable Resource Development, 2013a).

**Land Manager**

The Forest Officer, Lands Officer, Land Management Specialist, and/or Lands Approval Team Lead in Alberta Environment and Parks for a specific Region. For Provincial Parks and Protected Areas, it is an Alberta Environment and Parks staff member from the Parks Division.

**Legacy Site**

Refers to sites constructed and abandoned and/or reclaimed prior to establishment of the current relevant upland reclamation criteria.

**Site with Natural Vegetation Encroachment**

Legacy site where vegetation naturally established (i.e., no tree planting occurred though some may have been seeded to grass mixes). The site may have had some landscape and soils replacement work done, but often have had no traditional reclamation work done.

**Mineral Soil Pad in Place**

A well pad or access road that is constructed in a peatland, consisting of mineral soils, usually clay-based, that is left in place after decommissioning of the well rather than being removed. Geotextile or corduroy (logs) are typically placed on the surface of the wetland prior to the addition of the mineral soil fill; these are also left in place below the fill.

**Mineral Soil Pad Removal (Full)**

Excavation and removal of a well pad constructed in a peatland.

**Mineral Soil Pad Removal (Partial)**

Excavation and removal of a portion of a well pad constructed in a peatland. The portion removed may be vertical (e.g., shave a layer off the top of the pad, usually to get the surface at or below the surrounding water level), or it may be horizontal (e.g., the overall pad size is reduced by excavating a portion, usually from the edge).

**Peatland Criteria**

The *Reclamation Criteria for Wellsites and Associated Facilities for Peatlands* (Alberta Environment and Parks, 2017).

**Peatland Site**

A site located in a peatland. A peatland is defined as lands covered by peat to a minimal depth of 40 cm, as in the *Reclamation Criteria for Wellsites and Associated Facilities for Peatlands* (Alberta Environment and Parks, 2017).

**Reclamation (Modified)**

Any reduction in all or part of the reclamation steps required to meet the forested land or peatland criteria without applying for a variance to criteria or a change in land use. In the case of upland sites modified reclamation is practiced due to the presence of naturally encroached vegetation. In the case of pads in peatlands, modified reclamation is practiced (de-compaction, partial re-contouring, etc.) due to a decision to leave all or part of the pad in place.

**Reclamation (Traditional)**

The recontouring of a wellsite to meet the Landscape Criteria, the replacement of salvaged soils to meet the Soil Criteria and the revegetation of the site to meet the Vegetation Criteria, predominantly in reference to upland sites.

**Site**

An upstream oil and gas wellsite and the associated facilities requiring reclamation to meet Alberta's reclamation criteria for peatland and/or forested sites.

**Upland Forested Site**

Any treed land, whether or not the forest vegetation is utilized for commercial purposes.

**Topsoil**

In the context of forests, the topsoil includes all of the organic horizons (L, F, H and O) *and* the Ae, Ahe or Ah horizons, as defined in the *Canadian System of Soil Classification – Third Edition* (Soil Classification Working Group, 1998). On reclaimed sites, the topsoil is the replaced surface soil layer created by the mixture of these horizons during salvage, stockpiling and replacement. Topsoil is not limited to solely the organic L, F, H and O horizons.

**Variance to Criteria**

A request to change the criteria or the assessment process described in the relevant wellsite criteria document.

## **Vegetation Override**

A specific type of variance to the wellsite certification criteria, where reasonable forest cover (i.e., amount, species and distribution) is present, and where additional activities required to meet the conditions described in the criteria pose a risk to existing ecosystem function.

## **Well Pad**

The surface area upon which the well and associated facilities are located. The well pad is generally constructed by removing upper soil materials to expose a level mineral soil surface and/or by importing fill to create a level surface. NOTE: this report focuses on the reclamation requirements for well pads, but similar issues arise for the access roads to these well pads. Rather than repeat the phrase “well pad and access road” throughout the document we have used well pad unless there are specific issues related to access roads.

## **1.5 STRUCTURE OF THIS REPORT**

Section 2 of the report provides a review of the relevant legislation and policies related to the project. Section 3 summarizes the key factors that control functional ecosystems and the components used to evaluate functionality. Section 4 provides detailed discussions about sites with natural vegetation encroachment, including key challenges, common site conditions, traditional reclamation approaches, processes and factors affecting the decision to apply for and grant a variance, justification rationale for a variance and reclamation options for sites granted a variance. Section 5 provides detailed discussions about sites with mineral soil pads in peatlands, including key challenges, reclamation approaches, processes and factors affecting the decision to apply for and grant approval to leave a mineral soil pad in place and to obtain a change in land use, justification rationale leaving a pad in place and for a change in land use, and reclamation options for sites where the pad is fully or partially removed. Section 6 lists current knowledge gaps and recommendations.

Section 7 provides the references cited in the report. Appendix A summarizes the stakeholder interviews and Appendix B summarizes some case studies from the literature. Appendices C and D provide detailed versions of the material summarized in Section 3.

Throughout the document the **blue highlighted text** identifies key findings from the literature review and outreach interviews.



---

## 2.0 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR RECLAMATION AND CHANGE IN END LAND USE

---

This section provides an overview of the regulatory and policy requirements related to reclamation of industrial disturbances in Alberta, with emphasis on wellsites and associated facilities (wellsites). Rather than a complete review, the following sections highlight regulations and policies that relate specifically to those circumstances where forested sites with natural vegetation encroachment and padded sites in peatlands can be certified without further disturbance (as defined in Section 1.4).

### 2.1 BACKGROUND

Three documents in particular are key in this review: the *2010 Reclamation Criteria for Wellsites and Associated Facilities for Forested Lands (Updated July 2013)* (forested land criteria; Alberta Environment and Sustainable Resource Development, 2013); the *Reclamation Criteria for Wellsites and Associated Facilities for Peatlands* (peatland criteria; Alberta Environment and Parks, 2017); and, the *Specified Enactment Direction 002: Application Submission Requirements and Guidance for Reclamation Certificates for Well Sites and Associated Facilities* (SED 002<sup>4</sup>; Alberta Energy Regulator, 2018). There are some terminology differences between the documents that create potential for confusion – the terms used in the source documents are used here with notes about the differences provided for clarity. In particular, **SED 002 uses the term variance to refer to formal requests for deviations from applicable criteria – this term is not used in either the forested land criteria or the peatland criteria. In addition, SED 002 doesn't use the forested land criteria term vegetation override; it is presumed to be a specific type of a variance.** All variances require justification (Alberta Energy Regulator, 2018):

*An operator may provide justification as to why a site should be permitted to vary from the criteria and still receive certification. Operators should first discuss options with the AER prior to conducting the detailed site assessment. If a variance is being requested, the operator must provide the rationale for its decision, supported by acceptable references.*

Both the peatland criteria (Alberta Environment and Parks, 2017) and SED 002 reference *change in land use* when discussing requests for a change from peatlands to forested lands (i.e., leaving a pad in place); rather than being called a variance, SED 002 refers to this as a request for a “change to the assessment

---

<sup>4</sup> SED 002 (Alberta Energy Regulator, 2018) came into effect June 21, 2016, replacing Government of Alberta 2010 Reclamation Criteria for Wellsites and Associated Facilities: Application Guidelines (Alberta Environment, 2011). SED 002 did not change the wellsite criteria but did align some of the application submission process requirements with the online submission tool (OneStop).

criteria". Such changes must be approved by the AEP Land Manager. This is discussed in further detail in later sections.

Under the *Environmental Protection and Enhancement Act* (EPEA; Government of Alberta, 2000):

137(1) An operator must

- (a) conserve specified land,
- (b) reclaim specified land, and
- (c) unless exempted by the regulations, obtain a reclamation certificate in respect of the conservation and reclamation.

EPEA Section 1(l) defines "conservation" as:

... planning, management and implementation of an activity with the objective of protecting the essential physical, chemical and biological characteristics of the environment against degradation;

**While conservation generally applies to the construction phase (e.g., soil salvage, minimum disturbance) it can equally apply to the operation and reclamation phases. Thus, when planning reclamation strategies for sites with natural vegetation encroachment, conservation of the existing vegetation (biological characteristics) should factor into decisions on the best reclamation strategy. Similarly, where pads have been in place in wetlands for many years and have become an integral part of the "new" wetland system, conservation of the pad (physical characteristics) should also be factored into reclamation decisions.**

The objective of reclamation for wellsites is the return of equivalent land capability (*Conservation and Reclamation Regulation*, section 2; CRR; Government of Alberta, 1993). The Regulation (s. 1(e)) defines equivalent land capability as:

... the ability of the land to support various land uses after conservation and reclamation is similar to the ability that existed prior to an activity being conducted on the land, but that the individual land uses will not necessarily be identical<sup>5</sup>;

This definition is intentionally broad to allow for a variety of landforms and land uses following reclamation. For example, the Lower Athabasca Regional Plan (LARP; Government of Alberta, 2012) notes that reclamation can "help achieve regional objectives relating to biodiversity, recreation and forestry."

---

<sup>5</sup> Note that the *Public Lands Administration Regulation* (s. 1(1)(l); Government of Alberta, 2011) defines equivalent land capability differently: ... in respect of land that is the subject of a disposition, a condition in which the ecosystem processes on the land are capable of producing goods and services of a quality and in a quantity that is at least equivalent to that which existed before the disposition was issued to the holder;

More specifically, LARP notes (emphasis added) that “Implement[ing] the progressive reclamation strategy ... will provide mechanisms to define, measure and report on the return of equivalent capability – the objective for reclamation – *including the return of a suite of acceptable land uses, such as commercial forestry, wetlands, wildlife and biodiversity, traditional use, and recreation*”. Similarly, the Fort McMurray-Athabasca Oil Sands Subregional Integrated Resource Plan (emphasis added; Alberta Sustainable Resource Development, 2002) notes that “Sites will be reclaimed to a level of capability equivalent to the pre-disturbance level, *optimizing the values of watershed, timber, wildlife, fish, recreation or other resources.*”

While in most cases the return of landforms and vegetation similar to the pre-disturbance conditions is desired, the government has recognized that land use may need to change following reclamation of a wellsite (Alberta Energy Regulator, 2018; emphasis added):

In some cases, a change of land use at a site from the original use may require the applicant to apply using different assessment criteria from the original pre-existing conditions to the current surrounding or adjacent end land use (e.g., from forested lands to cultivated lands).

*Requests for changes to the assessment criteria must be approved in advance by the AER.* A copy of the written acceptance must be submitted with the application. Documentation demonstrating discussions with the landowner, land manager, or occupant about the implications of this assessment criteria change must be included, along with signed acceptance of the criteria changes by the landowner, land manager, or occupant.

**On public land, AEP is the land manager following reclamation certification and thus must be in agreement with any criteria use change.** Approval by AEP is required. Additionally, where there is an occupant on public land, their consent must be received as well. A copy of the approval from AEP and the occupant must be submitted with the application.

For example, Public Land Management Policy No. 7 regarding borrow activities<sup>6</sup> on public land (Alberta Environment and Parks, 2018) notes (emphasis added):

Approval must be received for any reclamation outcomes that are not the pre-disturbance land use on public lands. This approval is typically referred to as a “change in land use” or “alternate end land use”. A request for a change in end land use should reflect an ecological community

---

<sup>6</sup> One of the common changes in larger-scale disturbances is the creation of pit lakes, ponds or dugouts (see Alberta Environment, 2004; Alberta Sustainable Resource Development, 2002; Alberta Sustainable Resource Development, 2010; Alberta Transportation, 2013; Hrynyshyn, 2012).

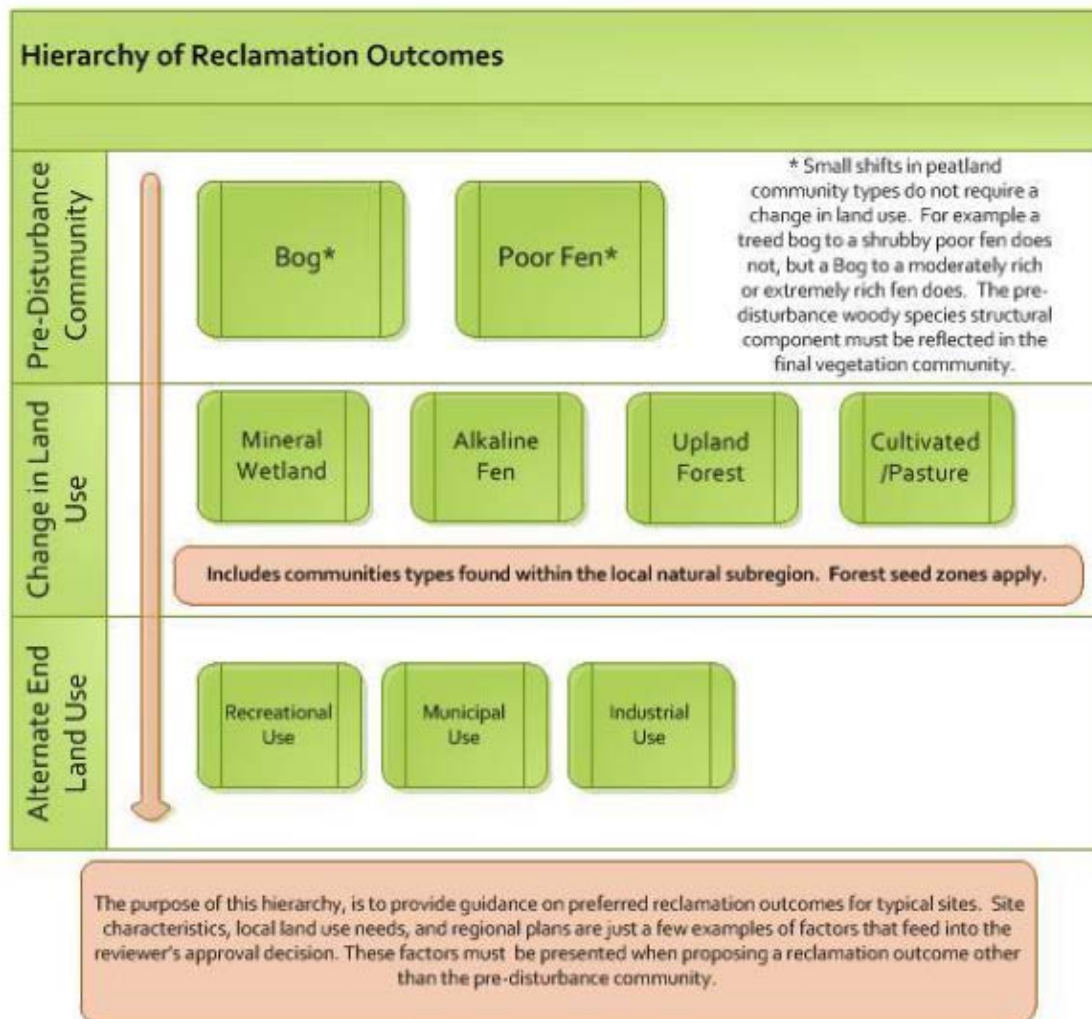
found in the natural sub region of the site ... The rationale for changes in land use or an alternate end land use must be provided with the request for regulatory approval. The request should occur prior to commencing the activity, recognizing that the land use may later change.

For peat operations, “The preferred outcome ... is to return land to its pre-disturbance condition, including replacement of salvaged mineral soils, presence of pre-disturbance moisture regimes and establishment of the pre-disturbance vegetation community (eco-site phase or wetland type).” (Alberta Environment and Parks, 2016). Alternate land uses are an option (emphasis added):

Site characteristics, historical practices, and/ or subsequent land uses may result in requests for a change in end land use. This change is referring to cultivated, forested, and wetland types ... *A request for a change in end land use should reflect an ecological community found in the natural subregion of the site.* For example, if a peatland was approved to be reclaimed to an upland, the preferred upland eco-site phase would be present within the natural subregion for the area.

The selection of an end land use should consider adjacent land uses and the needs of the community and landowner or land manager. The end land use must be discussed and approved with AEP on public land, and with the municipality on private land.

Alberta Environment and Parks (2016) provides a hierarchy of preferred outcomes to aid in decisions related to change in land use for peat operations (Figure 1).



**Figure 1. Hierarchy of reclamation outcomes for peat operations.**  
From Alberta Environment and Parks (2016).

Alberta Sustainable Resource Development (ASRD; Alberta Sustainable Resource Development, 2010) provides additional guidance on land use changes relative to aggregate operations (emphasis added) and a table showing possible end land-uses by natural region (Table 1):

**End land-uses are site specific and will depend primarily on the pre-disturbance condition. The choice of an end land-use will depend on the following factors:**

- **Regional Limitations – The natural environment surrounding a site will strongly influence the types of end land-uses that are attainable.** Climate, soil type, and landforms available in the region will influence the plant types that can grow in the region. Vegetation on reclaimed land must be self-sustaining under normal management, which means plant communities becoming

established and mature without an ongoing, external source of nutrients, water, seeds or seedlings.

- **Surrounding Land Uses** – The end land-use should be compatible with adjacent lands.
- **Costs** – **The overall cost may dictate the type of landuse.** Applicants must work with ASRD prior to obtaining a licence or lease to determine the final end land-use. Costs for conservation and reclamation should be identified in the [Conservation and Reclamation Business Plan] (CRBP). It is not appropriate to re-evaluate costs at the end of a pit life and determine that conservation and reclamation plans are cost prohibitive. Pit end land-uses must be identified in the CRBP and adhered to at the end of a pit life.

**Table 1. Possible end land uses based on natural region.**  
From Alberta Sustainable Resource Development (2010) (adapted from Green et al. (1992)).

	Native Grassland	Forestry	Wildlife Habitat	Waterbody	Wetland
Grassland	✓		✓		✓
Aspen Parkland	✓		✓	✓	✓
Boreal Forest		✓	✓	✓	✓
Foothills		✓	✓		

Reclamation certification is based on published reclamation criteria where available (e.g., the forested land criteria (Alberta Environment and Sustainable Resource Development, 2013a) and peatland criteria (Alberta Environment and Parks, 2017)). These documents generally require comparison with adjacent land or pre-disturbance assessment information, but do provide the option for using alternate controls (e.g., an upland site for a pad left in place) if the application provides acceptable justification (Alberta Environment and Sustainable Resource Development, 2013; emphasis added):

Given the complexity of the different land use types, soil zones and landscapes, it is acknowledged the 2010 Criteria may not be applicable to all sites under all circumstances. *The assessor, operator, inspector, Land Manager or reviewer is not limited to the methods identified in the criteria to draw his/her conclusion on ‘equivalent capability’.* Where such circumstances occur and the operator is satisfied that the site is ready to certify, an application can be submitted but must be accompanied

*with a detailed justification as to why the methodologies in the criteria do not support certification yet the site does meet 'equivalent capability'.*

Where published criteria are not available but an activity has an EPEA approval issued<sup>7</sup>, the terms and conditions of the approval will govern (e.g., Alberta Energy Regulator, 2015a; b). In both cases, the conditions of a public land disposition will also be considered.

Reclamation planning (both conceptual at the Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) or pre-development stage, and with greater detail as the project is built, operated and prepared for decommissioning) is required for larger disturbances<sup>8</sup> (e.g., Alberta Energy Regulator (2016) for in-situ projects; emphasis added):

A Project-Level Conservation, Reclamation, and Closure Plan (PLCRCP) is required under EPEA approval terms and conditions for commercial in situ facilities. It depicts the approval holder's conservation and reclamation plans following project approval. The PLCRCP is updated through the life of the project and is to incorporate research findings, monitoring results and best practices, which reflect an adaptive management approach to conservation and reclamation. The *PLCRCP is a project-level plan for achieving equivalent land capability* and long-term sustainable reclamation outcomes after closure. The *PLCRCP is a tool for evaluating the alignment of site-specific conservation and reclamation activities with project-level goals and objectives*. It acts as an update to the conceptual conservation and reclamation plan submitted with the EIA and the EPEA application for the project.

The PLCRCP must be implemented as authorized in writing by the AER. Once the plan has been authorized, the approval holder is expected to conduct all conservation and reclamation activities in accordance with the authorized plan.

## **2.2 UPLAND SITES WITH NATURAL VEGETATION ENCROACHMENT**

The term *natural recovery* is generally applied to a planned revegetation strategy that relies on a site being minimally disturbed and the presence of an adequate vegetation propagule source (in minimally disturbed soil, or in lands adjacent to the site, or both) to allow for revegetation of desired plant species. The term applies to both forested and grassland sites, but has historically been a more common revegetation

---

<sup>7</sup> Note, regulators have also specifically identified the wellsite criteria as the relevant criteria for use with other disturbance types (e.g., for coal and oil sands exploration sites – (Alberta Environment and Parks, 2015).

<sup>8</sup> Other information is required for activities such as wellsites on public land that do not require EPEA approvals (Alberta Environment and Parks, 2018b).

strategy in the latter. **In this document we refer to sites with natural vegetation encroachment to distinguish a planned strategy from sites with minimal reclamation action taken (i.e., site not recontoured or soils not replaced in accordance with the criteria) that have developed a vegetative cover that includes the desired plant species. Sites with natural vegetation encroachment may occur in upland forest areas or in padded sites in peatlands.**

The forested land criteria (Alberta Environment and Sustainable Resource Development, 2013a) describes the basic requirements for assessing the landscape, soil and vegetation characteristics of a site for certification and provides the pass/fail criteria to be used. However, there are specific provisions for natural recovery sites<sup>9</sup>. Of particular relevance for this project, natural recovery sites have different vegetation requirements than planted sites (s. 8.1; Alberta Environment and Sustainable Resource Development, 2013):

(a) Sites Reclaimed Prior to June 1, 2007 must meet the following:

- (i) If a site seeded with grasses: Minimum 80% compatible vegetation cover based on seed mix.
- (ii) If a Natural Recovery Site: A minimum of 25% canopy cover of herbaceous species; and, a minimum 25% canopy cover of woody species or a minimum stem/plant count of 5.
- (iii) If a Planted Site: A minimum of 25% canopy cover of herbaceous species; and, a minimum 25% canopy cover of woody species or a minimum stem/plant count of 2.

(b) Sites Reclaimed On or After June 1, 2007, sites must meet the following:

- (i) If a Natural Recovery Site: A minimum of 25% canopy cover of herbaceous species; and a minimum of 25% canopy cover of woody species or a minimum stem/plant count of 5 stems per assessment point area (1.78 m radius assessment area; 10 m<sup>2</sup>).
- (ii) If a Planted Site: A minimum of 25% canopy cover of herbaceous species; and a minimum of 25% canopy cover of woody species or a minimum stem/plant count of 2 stems per assessment point area (1.78 m radius assessment area; 10 m<sup>2</sup>).

---

<sup>9</sup> Note that the criteria document defines the term “natural recovery” as: Long term re-establishment of diverse native ecosystems (e.g., prairie, forest) by establishment in the short-term of early successional species. This involves revegetation from soil seedbank and/or natural encroachment and no seeding of non-native agronomic species.



Section 8.2 of the forested land criteria provides for a vegetation override “where reasonable forest cover (i.e., amount, species and distribution) is present” (emphasis added):

**Where reasonable forest cover (i.e., amount, species and distribution) is present, and where additional activities required to meet the conditions described in this criteria pose a risk to existing ecosystem function, a vegetation override may be appropriate. Equivalent capability for forested landscapes must be demonstrated.** The use of a vegetation override will result in a Non-Routine Application and will result in greater scrutiny by the Regulator.

Section 12.2 of the forested land criteria also provides guidance for sites where desirable vegetation is present (emphasis added):

*Although not recommended, at times where additional topsoil is desirable (e.g., to avoid re-stripping a site where desirable vegetation is already established), it shall be described (e.g., source, texture, volume, weed count) and shall have similar or as close as possible chemical and physical properties as the control topsoil (e.g., addition of Orthic Black Chernozem to Orthic Black Chernozem). The date and method of application and incorporation, and documentation showing Land Manager acceptance are required.*

EPEA approvals for large facilities such as mines and in-situ oil sands operations generally require replacement of subsoil and topsoil unless otherwise authorized in writing by the Director (Alberta Energy Regulator, 2015a).

Section 7.1.1 of the forested land criteria describes the requirements for peatland sites that have been reclaimed to forested land (emphasis added):

*On former peatland sites that have been reclaimed to a forested ecosystem, the soils quantity criteria does not apply, however the site must be assessed for soil stability, vertical processes and vegetation. The area must not cause off-site impacts. *Vegetation may not be representative of the adjacent off-site (wetland) but must be on the same trajectory as a corresponding off-site upland eco-site based on the eco-site guide for the region.**

**There is no clear guidance provided in the forested land criteria as to the type of information/justification required by the Regulator or Land Manager to accept a change in reclamation practice and certification requirements. Furthermore, there is no clear indication in either the forested land criteria or SED 002 (Alberta Energy Regulator, 2018) if the Land Manager must approve the variance request for a vegetation override, or if the AER can make that determination on its own – stakeholder interviews noted this as well.**

## 2.3 MINERAL SOIL PAD REMOVAL

General reclamation requirements focus on removing pads and access roads to ensure a return of pre-pad hydrology: contouring the site to conform to, or blend into, the surrounding topography unless otherwise approved; restoring surface and subsurface drainage to conform to the adjacent drainage system; and, employing procedures that do not divert, block or impound natural surface or subsurface drainage (Alberta Environment and Parks, 2018b; Alberta Environmental Protection, 1994). Access roads are expected to have water crossings and culverts removed unless otherwise authorized by the Director (Alberta Energy Regulator, 2015a; Alberta Environment and Parks, 2015).

**Alberta’s Wetland Policy (Alberta Environment and Sustainable Resource Development, 2013b) manages impacts to wetlands based on the concept of “relative wetland value, which acknowledges the relative contribution of an individual wetland to water quality improvement, hydrology, biodiversity, and various human uses.”** The Policy assesses wetland value based on five functional groups, including *relative abundance* (The relative abundance of wetlands in an area strongly affects the sensitivity of an area to the effects of further wetland loss). The Policy notes (emphasis added):

In keeping with a comprehensive and informed approach to wetland management, the ‘relative abundance’ component of the system incorporates aspects of current abundance/density and historical loss into the value assessment. In areas of low current abundance and high historical loss, the approach will place additional value on existing wetlands and promote both conservation and restoration as wetland management priorities. **In areas of high abundance and low historical loss, the system will continue to acknowledge and promote the importance of wetlands and wetland values on the landscape. At the same time, it will facilitate a considered approach to wetland management, balancing environmental, social, and economic priorities in the execution of management decisions.**

The Wetland Policy incorporates a “*Wetland Mitigation Hierarchy*, which refers to a three stage approach toward achievement of wetland management objectives and/or goals. The three stages, listed in order of descending priority, are: (1) avoidance of negative wetland impacts, (2) minimization of negative wetland impacts, and (3) wetland replacement to account for negative wetland impacts that could not be avoided or minimized<sup>10</sup>.” The Policy notes (emphasis added):

---

<sup>10</sup> Other regulatory documents support the three-tier approach (e.g., Alberta Environment and Parks, 2018c)

Where avoidance and minimization efforts are not feasible or prove ineffective, *wetland replacement is acknowledged as the last resort in the mitigation process*. It will only be considered for residual impacts that were impractical to minimize or avoid and will not apply to temporary wetland impacts. If, after all practicable avoidance and minimization measures have been exercised, permanent loss of a wetland, or portion thereof, is incurred, wetland replacement will be required for the portion that is lost. *Replacement requirements will be established on the basis of a) wetland area lost and b) the relative value of that area*.

*In cases where development that results in wetland loss is subject to a reclamation plan, replacement requirements will be adjusted accordingly, taking into account the area and value of both wetlands lost and wetlands constructed under the reclamation plan.*

Replacement requirements will be established on the basis of replacement ratios. A replacement ratio determines how many hectares of replacement wetland are required per hectare of permanently lost wetland. *The ratio system has been developed on the basis of relative wetland value, taking into account both the relative value of the impacted wetland and that of the replacement wetland.* [The replacement ratio] is based on three key considerations:

1. *A restored wetland is unlikely to achieve the same level of function as the natural wetland it replaces.*
2. *A significant time lag is expected to occur, between the moment a wetland is lost and the point a restored wetland achieves a reasonable level of function.*
3. *Some proportion of restored wetlands is expected to fail over time.*

In 2017, AER Bulletin 2017-19 noted that “Effective January 2, 2018, authorizations under the Water Act, Public Lands Act, and *Environmental Protection and Enhancement Act* (EPEA) for projects that will have permanent or temporary impacts on wetlands will contain approval conditions related to policy. These conditions may capture commitments by the applicant on minimizing wetland loss and reclaiming or replacing wetlands.” (Alberta Energy Regulator, 2017).

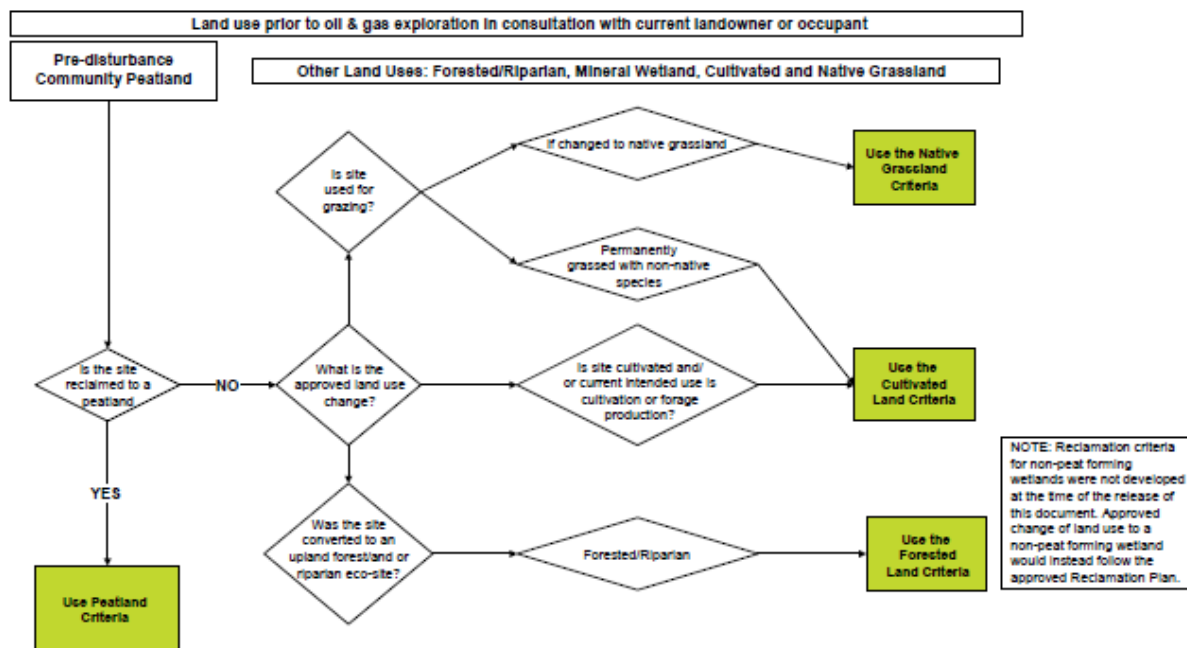
The peatland criteria (Alberta Environment and Parks, 2017) “... provides the reclamation certification criteria for wellsites, access roads, and associated facilities reclaimed to peatlands on Private and Crown lands in Alberta. It is designed for minimal disturbance winter access and all season clay padded sites.” The document further notes that “While not all function will be restored in a disturbed site for decades or millennia, pre-disturbance function such as peat accumulation, carbon sequestration, water storage/filtration and wildlife habitat are the desired reclamation outcomes in the long-term” and “When reclaiming to peatlands, it is acknowledged that due to the slow accumulation of decomposed organic

matter a site may not have the 40 cm of undecomposed peat that defines a peatland. Rather the reclamation will re-establish the landscape and vegetation components that will provide a trajectory to future peatlands.”

Section 2.3 and Figure 1 of the peatland criteria (Alberta Environment and Parks, 2017) acknowledges the potential for leaving pads and access roads in place by providing guidance on the assessment criteria to use when a land use changes (emphasis added):

**Where a site within peatland has been partially or fully reclaimed to another land use, a change in land use is required. If a site changes land use, the Land Manager must be involved in the discussion and any such changes will require their written agreement. If a land use change occurs, the Assessors must refer to the appropriate Criteria to use for conducting the reclamation assessment (Figure 2).**

### Choosing Land Use Reclamation Criteria



**Figure 2. Choosing land use reclamation criteria for peatland sites.**  
From Alberta Environment and Parks, 2017.

The peatland criteria (Alberta Environment and Parks, 2017) also states that:

With written agreement from the Land Manager, they do not apply to facilities or features that are left in place as developed (e.g., roads, pads, dugouts) although these facilities or features must serve a purpose, be stable, non-erosive, nonhazardous and have no impact to off-lease lands.

The AER requires submission of specific information when requesting a change in land use for pads in peatlands (Alberta Energy Regulator, 2018):

- Peatland type
- Presence/absence of subsurface or surface water impacts to vegetation
- Absence/presence of locally common upland communities and type

As noted above for the forested land sites, there is no guidance on how the Land Manager will make the decision to approve the land use change.

In-situ Project-Level Conservation, Reclamation, and Closure Plans (PLCRCP), under an EPEA approval, require an operator to (Alberta Energy Regulator, 2016; emphasis added):

Include a description of proposed strategies or results, or both, for the following topics:

Infrastructure management – Provide a description of the infrastructure management strategies for ... *pads to be removed or left in place and recontoured*; geotextile management, and *any proposal for roads that may be left in place* for stakeholder or Crown use, and say whether formal agreements or authorizations are pending.

Permanent reclamation – Any constraints (e.g., salinity, sodicity, pH) of pad fill materials and how such constraints will be managed during construction operations and final reclamation. Explain how site drainage and surface water hydrology will be restored or maintained at closure and how topography will be integrated with adjacent undisturbed lands (e.g., *recontouring pads left in place to match surrounding topography*; reclaiming pads in peatland in a manner that restores wetland function; removing water management structures). *Describe any permanent changes in site conditions (e.g., conversion of wetland to upland, or fen to marsh).*

In the guide for PDA/C&R plans (Alberta Environment, 2009), the following guidance is provided on creation of post-reclamation topography:

The development of the post reclamation topography is important to the success of the reclaimed development. This section should include a discussion on site preparation methodology as well as *how the pad fill materials and geotextile materials will be handled.*

Information regarding the reclaimed topography should include ... post-reclamation goals regarding drainage including *discussion about wetland restoration (if applicable).*

EPEA approvals require operators to conduct research relative to pad removal and to monitor the potential effects on wetlands ((Alberta Energy Regulator, 2015a); emphasis added):

41. The Wetland Reclamation Trial Program proposal shall include, at a minimum, all of the following:

(a) trial plans for the *removal or partial removal of pad materials* from well pads and roads located in wetland ecosystems with emphasis on dominant wetland ecosystems that have been disturbed;

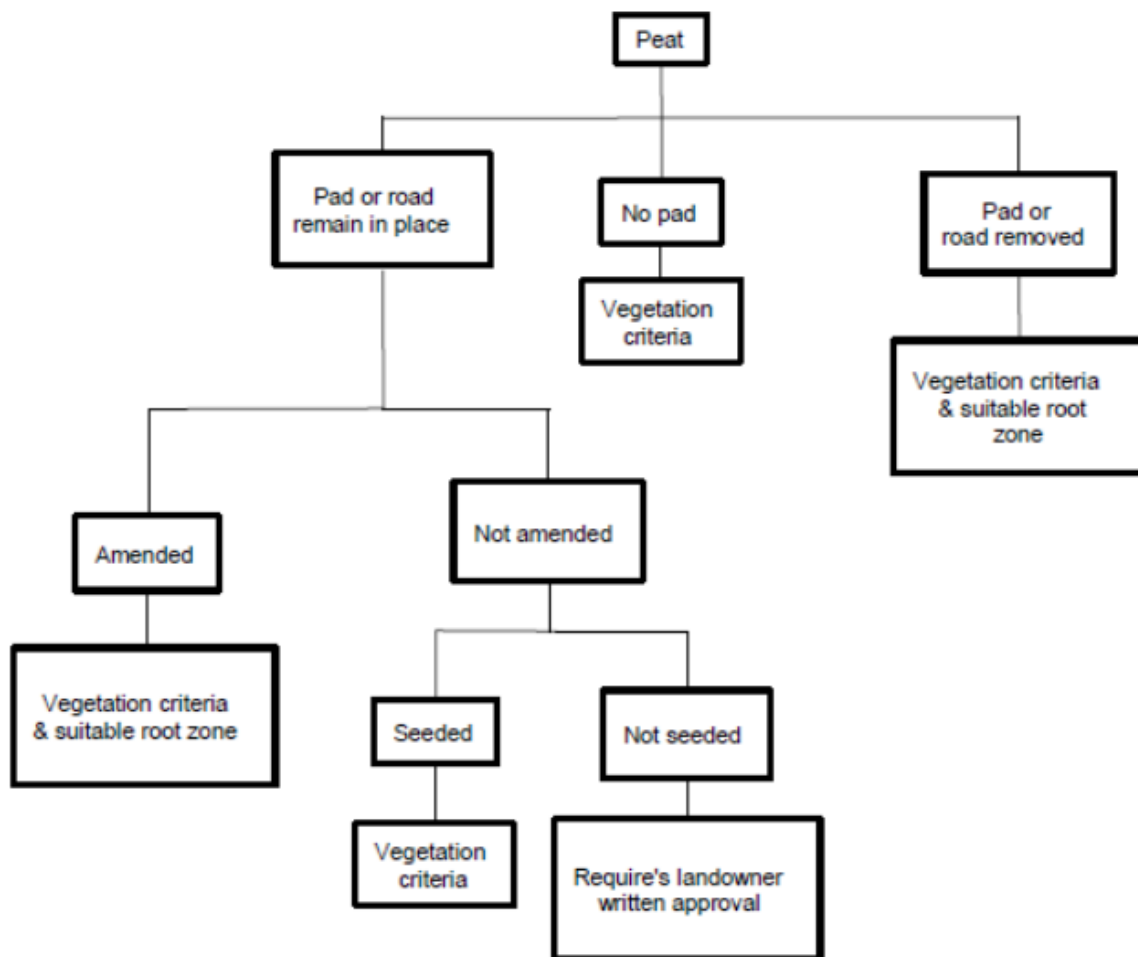
(c) the possible reuse of the bed and fill material removed from the areas specified in (a) as construction or backfill material;

2. The updated Wetland and Water Body Monitoring Program proposal shall include, at a minimum, all of the following:

(e) an updated plan to determine and monitor the potential effects on wetlands from:

(ii) roads, well pads or other infrastructure constructed within wetland and water bodies.

Historically, the wellsite criteria for peatland sites specifically addressed pads and roads left in place (Figure 3; Alberta Environmental Protection, 1995), though the general expectation again was that “Site drainage should be consistent with the original patterns, directions and capacity or compatible with the surrounding landscape” and that “*Facilities or features left in place (e.g., clay pads, roads) may not negatively impact drainage or adjacent forest growth*”.



**Figure 3. Relationship between pad construction / removal and criteria.**  
From Alberta Environmental Protection (1995).

## 2.4 SUMMARY

In general, regulators expect that disturbed sites in the boreal forest will undergo complete reclamation (recontouring, soil replacement and revegetation) with the goal of returning the site to pre-disturbance condition and land use. Legislation and policies provide opportunities to vary from these expectations with written approval from a specified decision maker (Director, Regulator, Land Manager). Alberta's Wetland Policy requires replacement of wetlands lost due to industrial development, but recognizes that the relative value of a wetland (used to calculate replacement ratios) is based, in part, on the relative abundance of wetlands in the region. In areas of high abundance (such as northeast Alberta) and low historical loss, the concept of *relative abundance* will facilitate a considered approach to wetland

management, balancing environmental, social, and economic priorities in the execution of management decisions.

The two specific instances of relevance to this project where a regulatory decision is needed are: a request for a variance based on a site having natural vegetation encroachment rather than complete reclamation; and, a request to leave well pads in peatlands in place. It is clear in the wellsite criteria and SED 002 that the Land Manager (AEP) must approve a change in land use from peatland to upland; it is less clear if the Land Manager or the AER must approve the variance for a vegetation override where a site has natural vegetation encroachment. Furthermore, when a pad in a peatland is partially removed it is unclear if a change in land use approval is required for the remaining upland portion (and if so, if there is a size of remaining upland below which an approval is not required).

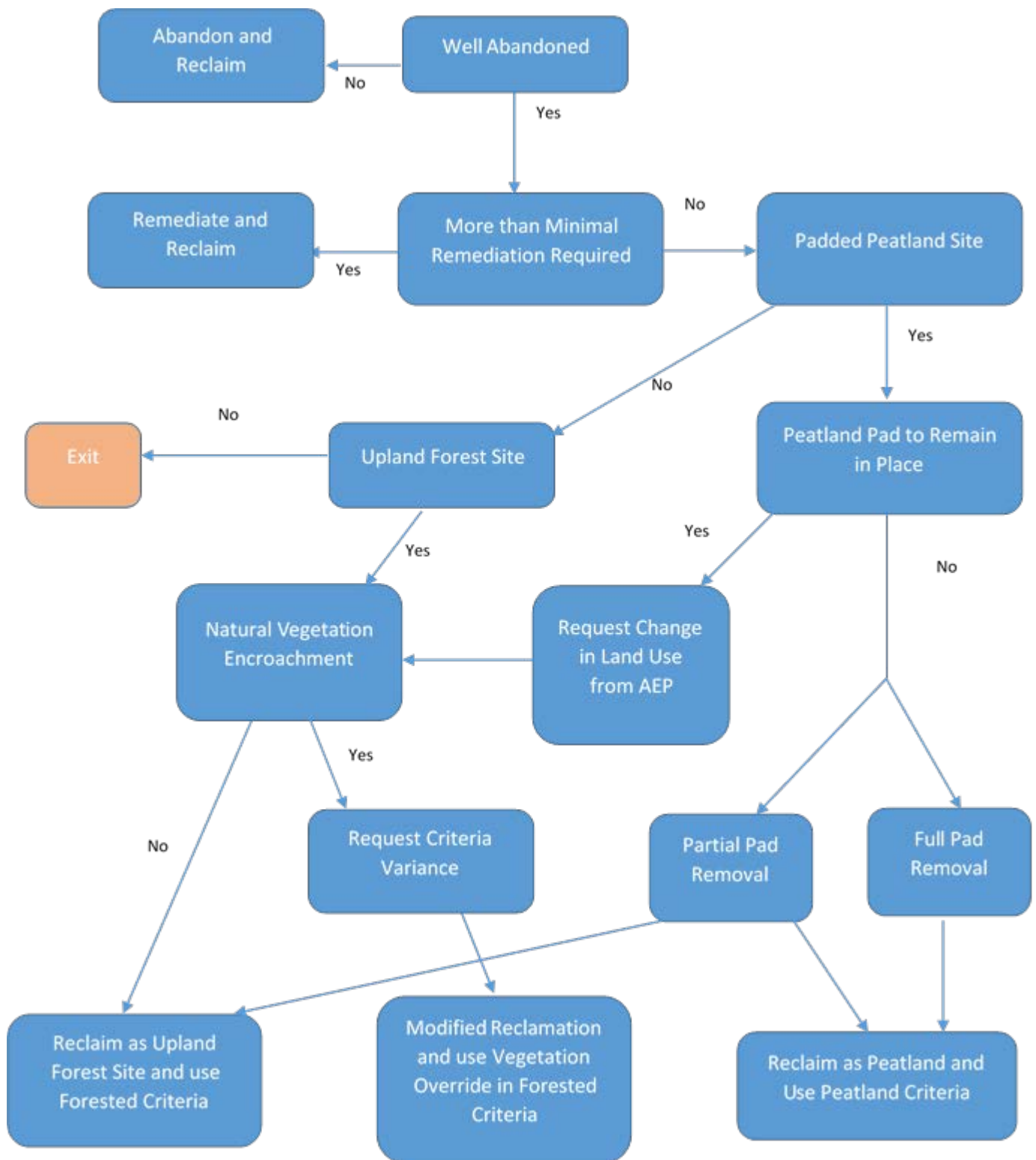
**While there is limited guidance as to what kinds of information would be required to assist the decision maker, the documents reviewed here indicate some potentially influential factors:**

- **For sites with natural vegetation encroachment:**
  - Reasonable forest cover (i.e., amount, species and distribution) is present
  - Additional activities required to meet the conditions described in the certification criteria pose a risk to existing ecosystem function
  - The area must not cause off-site impacts
  - Vegetation must be on the same trajectory as a corresponding off-site upland eco-site based on the eco-site guide for the region
  - Soil additions, while not recommended, shall be described (e.g., source, texture, volume, weed count) and shall have similar or as close as possible chemical and physical properties as the control topsoil
- **For pads left in place:**
  - Confirm that the end land use will reflect an ecological community found in the natural subregion of the site and considers adjacent land uses and the needs of the community and landowner or Land Manager
  - The overall cost may dictate the type of land use; determine costs for conservation and reclamation [for different options] and work with the Land Manager to determine the final end land-use
  - Obtain approval from Land Manager for a change in land use
  - Provide information showing that the pads do not negatively impact drainage or adjacent forest growth (at a minimum remove culverts and crossings)
  - Describe any recontouring of pads to match surrounding topography
  - Provide the AER information on peatland type, presence/absence of subsurface or surface water impacts to vegetation, and absence/presence of locally common upland communities and type
  - Provide information on constraints (e.g., salinity, sodicity, pH) of pad fill materials and how such constraints will be managed during construction operations and final reclamation



Figure 4 presents a preliminary decision tree for selecting reclamation options and criteria for reclamation evaluation based on the regulatory requirements described above. This figure, and the modified forested criteria referenced within it, will be further developed through the various stages of the project.

It is important to note that change in land use decisions are made as a result of a site-specific application and consultations with the Land Manager. At the site level, the impact of such a change may appear to be significant but when considered at the local or regional scale the impact may become innocuous. At the same time, the cumulative effects of multiple applications for change in land use could become significant at the local or regional scale, even if individually the changes are innocuous. Thus, if cumulative impacts are to be considered in change of land use decisions there will need to be an agreement on the appropriate scale and threshold for impacts.



**Figure 4. Preliminary decision tree for selecting reclamation and criteria options.**  
Based on the regulatory requirements reviewed in this section.

---

## 3.0 ECOLOGICAL FUNCTIONALITY OF RECLAIMED WELLSITES

---

During the reclamation certification process, professional justification is required for sites requiring a change in land use and/or a variance to criteria for one or more reclamation deficiencies according to the applicable wellsite criteria. To prepare an appropriate professional justification which describes why the specific deficiencies will not have long term adverse environmental impacts and/or ultimately influence equivalent land capability, one must understand the factors influencing the ecological function of a site. Key drivers influencing ecological function of upland forested sites is summarized below in Section 3.1 and in more detail in Appendix C. Similarly, when considering the implications of a mineral soil pad and/or access road within a peatland and ultimately the factors affecting the decision to remove it or not, it is essential to understand the ecology and function of peatlands. The key factors that control functional peatland ecosystems are summarized in Section 3.2 and described further in Appendix D.

### 3.1 UPLAND FORESTS

#### 3.1.1 *Peer-reviewed and Grey Literature Discussing Ecological Function of Upland Ecosystems*

Upland forest ecosystems in Alberta operate through a complex web of abiotic and biotic factors and are made up of three main components: forest soils, understory plant communities and overstory trees. Forest soils and vegetation layers interact internally and with each other and provide essential forest functions including nutrient and hydrologic cycling, carbon storage and sequestration and wildlife habitat (Frerichs, 2017; Lupardus et al., 2018; Nilsson and Wardle, 2005). **Functional forest ecosystems are self-sustaining and are resilient to stressors and disturbance** (Brandt et al., 2013; Welham, 2013).

Forest soils are characterized by a surface organic litter layer overlying two or three mineral soil horizons; development of mineral soil horizons varies with soil forming factors: climate, organisms, relief, parent material, and time (Jenny, 1941). The litter layer can be divided into three horizons (L, F, H) based on degree of decomposition of the litter material (and is often referred to collectively as the LFH horizon or as the forest floor). Forest floor and mineral soil horizons provide the physical medium for plant roots to grow. They also provide water and nutrients for plant uptake, and support microbial populations (including mycorrhizal fungi) important in ecosystem biogeochemical cycling which occurs in the forest floor where litter inputs are mineralized into plant available nutrients.

Typically a functional ecosystem in the boreal region of Alberta can be characterized by multiple structural layers; overstory (trees), shrub (woody vegetation), herbaceous (non-woody; also called the field layer) and ground cover (moss, lichen, small herbs and shrubs, seedlings etc.) (British Columbia Ministry of

Forests and Range and British Columbia Ministry of Environment, 2010). The species that make up these layers varies considerably across the landscape, based on climate, site and soil properties, biotic interactions between layers, and then how previous disturbance impacted how the community assembled during regeneration (the latter is discussed in more detail in Appendix C) (reviewed in Macdonald and Fenniak (2007) and Macdonald et al. (2012)). It is important to understand the patterns and processes that drive existing structure and composition of forest plant communities to understand the targets for reclamation and whether ecosystem function has been restored. Forest soil properties as well as abiotic site and climate conditions (precipitation, temperature, slope, aspect, topographic position, drainage) can be integrated into the concepts of soil moisture and nutrient regimes (Alberta Environment, 2010; Beckingham and Archibald, 1996). Site and soil characteristics vary across the landscape, creating gradients in nutrient and moisture regimes (the term ecosite is used to describe the position of a site along nutrient and moisture regime gradients). These site conditions then affect vegetation establishment as plant species respond to moisture and nutrient regimes differently, because different plant species have developed different strategies to respond to abiotic limitations (e.g., drought tolerance) (Alberta Environment, 2010). Although individual plant species may have a wide range of tolerances (Hart and Chen, 2006), each ecosite is characterized by a slightly different assemblages of species capable of establishment and co-existence.

Plant community development and trajectories are further influenced by interactions between structural layers and between vegetation and soils. These associations are key for ecosystems to be self-sustaining and maintain their function over time. In earlier stages of development (and in canopy gaps that form in late successional forests when trees senesce, or as a result of small scale disturbances such as windthrow) understory communities can modify microclimate conditions of the forest floor and impact recruitment of tree species (Lieffers et al., 1993; Nilsson and Wardle, 2005), while in later successional stages the canopy affects microclimate conditions which impacts growth of understory species and drives plant community composition and diversity (Chávez and Macdonald, 2010; Hart and Chen, 2006; Macdonald and Fenniak, 2007). For example, conifer forests have lower light transmission, soil temperature, soil nutrients, pH, litter depth and litter quality and thus lower herbaceous plant diversity than deciduous forests (Hart and Chen, 2006; Macdonald and Fenniak, 2007). Conifer forests do have higher bryophyte diversity than deciduous forests and more low nutrient demanding, shade tolerant species (Chávez and Macdonald, 2010; Hart and Chen, 2006). Deciduous forests on the other hand favour vascular plants and inhibit mosses and lichens and have more shrubs and shade intolerant forbs (Chávez and Macdonald, 2010; Macdonald and Fenniak, 2007). Mixedwood forests have both shade tolerant and shade intolerant,

nutrient demanding species, but are more similar in composition to conifer forests (Macdonald and Fenniak, 2007). Many of these understory/overstory patterns are regulated by the forest floor. In addition to parent material and stand age, forest floor properties are dependent on the vegetation growing on site (Lamarche et al., 2004). Forest floors under aspen dominated stands have a distinct chemical composition and microbial community, compared to forest floors developing under spruce dominant stands; distinctions are influenced by differences in pH and litter inputs (reviewed in Macdonald et al., (2012)). Differences in litter properties from understory species can also impact forest floor processes, including soil microbial decomposition rates, and soil carbon and nitrogen, which can ultimately impact vegetation productivity and species composition (Nilsson and Wardle, 2005). **Biogeochemical cycling between soils and plant communities is considered critical in ensuring that the ecosystem is self-perpetuating and sustainable** (Macdonald et al., 2012).

On a practical level, forest ecosystem diversity created through these processes of interactions between soils, understory and overstory layers can be organized and understood through ecological classification systems. Ecological units like those described below are commonly used by practitioners to describe pre-disturbance plant communities and end land use targets. In Alberta, forested regions include the boreal forest, foothills and rocky mountain natural regions, which are subdivided into natural subregions (e.g., dry mixedwood and central mixedwood natural subregions) based on climate and landscape. Natural subregions are then subdivided into ecosites based on moisture and nutrient regimes. Ecosites are subdivided into ecosite phases based on overstory species composition. There are three main broadleaf tree species that dominate Alberta forests: trembling aspen, balsam poplar and white birch, and six main conifers: jack pine, lodgepole pine, balsam fir, white spruce, black spruce, and tamarack. Each species has different ecological properties, growth rates and tolerances for shade, moisture and nutrient regimes (reviewed Bergeron et al. (2014) and Macdonald et al. (2012)). Overstory species composition are often used to define stand types across the landscape (e.g., pine vs. mixedwood aspen-spruce forests) and have traditionally been the focus of forest research (Nilsson and Wardle, 2005).

Ecosite phases are then subdivided into plant community types based on understory species composition. Understory plant communities typically have a much higher species richness and diversity than the overstory. The forest understory is an important but often underrated component of the forest ecosystem (Nilsson and Wardle, 2005). Forest function is enhanced by species diversity in the understory layer, which results in a range of functional types and traits that can support a wider variety of wildlife species at multiple trophic levels (Chávez and Macdonald, 2010; Melnik et al., 2018). Additionally, through

competitive interactions, understories can discourage invasion by undesirable species, and can influence succession of desirable species (Osko and Glasgow, 2010).

Ecosites, ecosite phases and plant community types are described in the *Field Guide to Ecosites of Northern Alberta* (Beckingham and Archibald, 1996) and the *Field Guide to the Ecosites of West-Central Alberta* (Beckingham et al., 1996). The *Guide to Range Plant Community Types and Carrying Capacity for the Dry and Central Mixedwood Subregions in Alberta* uses a related but slightly different system that takes into account plant community response to disturbance (Moisey et al., 2016). The terms ecological sites and ecological site phases replace ecosite and ecosite phase; the term plant community type is used in both systems (Moisey et al., 2016). The *Guidelines for Reclamation to Forest Vegetation in the Athabasca Oil Sands Regions* uses site types as target end land uses instead of ecosites or ecosite phases (Alberta Environment, 2010). A site type is a broader vegetation unit that encompasses two or three ecosites based on similarity in soil moisture and nutrient regimes and overlap in dominant and subdominant species (e.g., moist rich site type encompasses the d and e ecosites). These guides and classifications provide references for the natural range of variability within and among ecosites in a region, which can be used for evaluating restoration of ecological function.

Sustainability of functional upland forests can be measured as resilience. Resilience refers to “the capacity of an ecosystem to resist and recover from a perturbation or disturbance, [and return to the pre-disturbance state and maintain] its essential characteristics, taxonomic composition, structures, ecosystem functions, and process rates” (Welham, 2013). Natural, undisturbed forests have resilience because they have a historical legacy (seed and propagule bank, litter, coarse dead organic matter and natural capital), which act as sources for ecological recovery and influences patterns of self-organization after a disturbance in a manner that regenerates the ecosystem’s previous structure, composition and function (Welham, 2013).

**Ecological restoration literature suggests that measurement of whether a restored site has recovered and is self-supporting should focus on three components: vegetation structure, species diversity and ecosystem processes; measures of vegetation alone are not sufficient** (Ruiz-Jaén and Aide, 2005).

Ruiz-Jaén and Aide (2005) specify that (citations removed):

“Measures of vegetation structure provide information on habitat suitability, ecosystem productivity, and help predict successional pathways [...]. Measures of species diversity provide information on susceptibility to invasions (e.g., proportion of native and exotic species), and trophic structure necessary for ecosystem resilience [...]. Measures of ecosystem processes

provide information on biogeochemical cycles and nutrient cycling necessary for the long-term stability of the ecosystems [...].”

Some examples of vegetation structure measures include vegetation cover, tree height and diameter at breast height (DBH) while species diversity measures include vegetation species composition and also insect and wildlife composition, and ecosystem processes include litter production, litter turnover, nutrient content and nutrient cycling (Ruiz-Jaén and Aide, 2005).

Forest ecosystem recovery for reclaimed wellsites in Alberta is currently assessed using the forested lands criteria, in the context of determining whether a reclaimed wellsite meets equivalent land capability and can receive a reclamation certificate. A recent study on ecological recovery on previously certified forested wellsites suggests the addition of three additional components to the forested lands criteria: (a) desirable plant species diversity (particularly shrubs) or the conditions that promote this diversity (e.g., microtopography and bulk density), (b) growth and stocking of tree species on natural recovery sites and (c) coarse woody material (Dewey et al., 2017).

In the mineable oil sands industry, instead of the forested land criteria, a very detailed framework was developed to identify the appropriate criteria and indicators to evaluate the success of oil sands mining reclamation and readiness for certification (Alberta Environment and Sustainable Resource Development, 2013c). Oil sands reclamation occurs on a much larger scale than wellsites, which may warrant a more complex framework for evaluation.

This framework distinguishes three reclamation objectives:

- Reclaimed landscapes are established that support natural ecosystem functions
- Natural ecosystem functions are established on the reclaimed landscape
- Reclaimed landscapes support an equivalent land capability appropriate to the approved end land uses

Within each objective, several criteria and indicators were developed to assess whether objectives have been achieved. Indicators relevant to wellsite reclamation (and therefore excluding those related to geotechnical stability, end pit lakes, wetlands) include soil depth, soil pH, soil salinity, plant community composition, weed species richness, foliar nutrients, ecosystem net primary productivity (or site index as a proxy), ecosystem health (or leaf area index, foliar chlorophyll content or foliar nutrients as a proxy), resilience (or weed species richness as a proxy), species diversity, richness, evenness and abundance, species and community diversity, tree regeneration, tree health and vigour, tree height, as well as several indicators related to wildlife and wildlife habitat, and land use (wildlife habitat, traditional use, and recreational use).

### 3.1.2 Outreach Responses Related to Ecological Function of Upland Ecosystems

Outreach participants were asked two questions relevant to ecological function: (1) how do you define and evaluate ecosystem function and (2) how do you determine if a site is on an appropriate trajectory for natural revegetation to achieve equivalent land capability. Answers to both questions were related and are summarized here; discussions pertain to both upland sites and sites that have had mineral soil pads left in place in peatlands but have been reclaimed to upland forests.

**There was a considerable difference in views of respondents relative to the key factors determining equivalent land capability.** Outreach responses generally suggest that achieving equivalent land capability means re-creating a functioning ecosystem able to support, in this case, a forested land use that may include wildlife utilization, recreational users and/or merchantable timber. This acknowledges that ecosystem function and equivalent land capability go hand in hand, although equivalent land capability also incorporates current and future land use and trajectories, while ecosystem function is usually described in terms of current state (and does not include land use). End land use goals were noted as a key factor in determining what the expectations of the site should be.

Outreach respondents defined a functioning upland forest ecosystem as an assembly of the typical biotic components of a forest ecosystem (i.e., flora and fauna species) and suitable abiotic components that support those biotic components, and that provides wildlife habitat, carbon sequestration, nutrient and water cycling, pedogenesis, and temperature regulation.

Resilience to disturbance was also included in responses as a characteristic of a functional ecosystem. One respondent noted that sites with a history of grasses and weeds may respond differently to a disturbance. They may become dominated by grasses and weeds after disturbance and may not recover to a functioning forest. Evaluation of the propagule bank would be helpful in assessing the potential of this occurring. **Respondents also noted that another aspect of determining whether ecosystem function and equivalent land capability have been replaced was that a site should not be impacted by limitations imposed by site conditions, which can include (but are not limited to) soil rooting restrictions, erosion, slumping, drainage issues (ponding), or debris (noting that site limitations that are inherent qualities of the site and were not impacted by disturbance and reclamation would not be included in this, such as dry moisture regime or poor nutrient status).** One respondent suggested that the goal (over potentially a 100 to 200 year timeframe) is that the wellsite is indistinguishable from the surrounding area on an air photo. That being said, several respondents referred to situations where ecosystem function can be deemed to be re-established even if it does not match the pre-disturbance or off-site ecosystem function (e.g., pads left in place).



A few respondents commented on the relevance of larger regional implications in evaluating return of ecosystem function and equivalent land capability. Responses differed, with one respondent suggesting that function can be assessed on a site by site basis, with the exception of land use changes which must be considered in a regional context, while another respondent was of the opinion that we cannot simply think of the function of individual sites, we need to consider the ecosystem function of the region as a whole and the net environmental benefit. One respondent did note that they had doubts about whether meeting the criteria was truly an indication that pre-disturbance ecosystem function was returned. Several respondents had concerns about the effects of landscape, vegetation and soils requirements in the criteria potentially limiting (setting back) achievement of natural recovery and equivalent land capability and/or creating unnecessary work, which is discussed further below.

**Vegetation composition was a focus for many respondents in defining ecosystem function and equivalent land capability.** Some suggested that trees were the most important component, as the establishment of a tree canopy is believed to direct the development of all other species. Several others considered vegetation more broadly than solely trees, and suggested that if forest vegetation recovery occurs, the other components will “equilibrate.” For example, woody vegetation was believed to drive the trajectory of the site through forest floor development, soil temperature and moisture regulation and attraction of wildlife which results in the spread of propagules and nutrient cycling. Others viewed soils as the foundation of the ecosystem, and vegetation merely the response. Respondents had several specific comments about vegetation, soils, landscape, and wildlife components of ecosystem function and equivalent land capability which are discussed below.

Several were of the opinion that functional upland ecosystems have several structural layers (ground cover of mosses, lichens, ericaceous shrubs; herbaceous plants; tall shrubs; trees), and that each structural layer should have a variety of species (species richness and diversity; one respondent suggested that there should be 2 to 3 tree species, 2 to 3 shrub species, 3 to 5 herbaceous species and 3 to 5 non-vascular species, depending on the ecosite) that are comparable to the species found off site (or at least in stands with similar moisture/nutrient regimes), noting that vegetation composition must be considered in the context of the stage of succession of the site. As noted above, there were different views on the importance of trees, woody vegetation or vegetation as a whole in the return of function and equivalent land capability. One respondent suggested that, beyond the structural layers, the presence of leaf-litter forming species was important for development of self-sustaining nutrient cycling. A few scenarios were mentioned in which species composition may be less important, including transition sites between

wetland and upland (peat is less than 40 cm deep) and sites with partial pad removal where the focus is primarily on preventing erosion and weed establishment.

Some respondents suggested that species composition can include early successional species, but that agronomic species should be limited as they can outcompete native forest species. **Most agreed that some noxious weeds could be present, but the ecology and long-term impact needs to be considered on a species by species basis.** Noxious weeds were considered acceptable if they were not out competing desirable vegetation or impacting natural vegetation succession, or if they were declining over time. Respondents observed that small populations of some species (such as perennial sow-thistle) tend to decline as the canopy closes, noting that while noxious weed species may still be present in the seed bank, canopy closure has an overriding effect in directing weed population dynamics. One respondent pointed out that weed species can have positive effects as they facilitate the development of suitable soil conditions.

Current forested land criteria requirements for noxious weeds and herbaceous cover were criticized as respondents have observed that not only are these parameters not essential drivers of site recovery, but also that management practices to correct them simply to meet the criteria are detrimental to site recovery. For example, weed control that destroys woody vegetation in the attempt to remove noxious weeds.

Woody vegetation density (stem counts; currently a component of the forested land criteria) was also noted by respondents as a means of evaluating ecosystem function and equivalent land capability. One respondent noted that the stem counts required by the forested land criteria are not site specific and are not relative to the pre-disturbance or off-site conditions. They perceived that the stem counts in the criteria are based on averages that describe the majority of sites (i.e., mesic, open stands typical of the dry mixedwood natural subregion), but may not be appropriate (too high or too low) for other site types. Another respondent noted that they thought the stem count criteria were based on sufficient research and consultation to provide a sound basis for evaluation.

Additional measures of vegetation were also suggested by respondents, including tree and vegetation health as well as productivity, including tree height, tree diameter, mean annual increment and site index. These values could be compared to off-site or baseline information and would be used as indicators of growth limitations on site. One respondent suggested that mean annual increment would not necessarily have to be comparable to the control, but could be used to confirm that trees are growing.

In terms of soil components of ecosystem function and equivalent land capability, many respondents focused on the soil's ability to support productive and desirable vegetation, with some specifying that

soils should be able to support vegetation productivity and composition similar to pre-disturbance or the surrounding area. Measures of vegetation productivity including site index, tree height and tree diameter were suggested as indicators that the soil quality has been replaced. Another respondent suggested the need to examine soil nutrient cycling, which is not currently captured in the forested land criteria, to determine if the site is self-sustaining.

**The extent to which soil reclamation criteria are needed to assess ecosystem function was not consistent among respondents.** One respondent believed the most important requirement should be that soils are not limiting vegetation growth, such as through rooting restrictions (compaction) in the upper 50 to 100 cm, and that further criteria requirements were secondary and often not necessary. Topsoil depth replacement criteria were criticized because, similar to noxious weed and herbaceous cover criteria, it has been observed to lead to reclamation practices (i.e., importing topsoil) that can be detrimental to site recovery without necessarily providing any benefit to site recovery. In contrast, replacing topsoil to a depth comparable to pre-disturbance or off-site conditions was considered by some respondents to be crucial for returning ecosystem function and achieving equivalent land capability, and they suggested that if soils were not replaced properly (i.e., at a similar depth and distribution as prior to disturbance), the site cannot be considered equivalent as there is too much uncertainty in terms of the long-term capability of the site, even if the vegetation meets the forested land criteria. Yet others suggest that topsoil depth is only relevant if there are limitations to vegetation growth.

**On the topic of landscape components, respondents generally agreed that to achieve equivalent land capability and ecosystem function there can be no limiting factors affecting the landscape,** meaning that the site is stable, non-erosive, and no slumping is occurring. Bare areas were noted to be an indication of limitations that can impact equivalent land capability. One respondent noted that microtopography and woody debris on the forest floor are part of the landscape component and contribute to return of ecosystem function and equivalent land capability. It was suggested that landscape components must also be considered in context of adjacent lands; contours on site should be similar to the adjacent topography and drainage on site should be conducive to supporting the vegetation species that are present in surrounding forest communities. The extent to which landscape contours should match adjacent topography was inconsistent among respondents, with some suggesting that perfectly smooth transitions should not be required (despite current criteria requirements) as long as the site is stable and does not present a safety hazard. Again, reclamation efforts to correct transitions (cut and fills) were deemed harmful to site recovery and unnecessary as vegetation establishment is not impacted by these irregularities in landscape contours.

In the case of mineral soil pads left in place in peatlands that are reclaimed to upland ecosystems, the response was similar. Respondents said that the key landscape components are that natural surface and subsurface drainage are not impeded (no ponding), slopes are stable, no excessive runoff or soil erosion is occurring, and vegetation trajectory is not affected by the landscape conditions (e.g., drainage and soil moisture conditions are compatible with desirable upland species). On the topic of contour, the focus is not on matching the topography of the pad to the adjacent land as is required on upland sites, but respondents suggested that the contour of pads should blend into existing landscape, meaning the edges should be re-contoured to create a more natural transition to the surrounding peatland (and resemble other upland areas in the region). One respondent suggested several swales could be cut through the pad, with the material removed formed into small hills.

Although not a component of the forested land criteria, provision of wildlife habitat and evidence of wildlife use of the wellsite, at levels comparable to off-site use, were considered factors in evaluating the functioning of upland ecosystems. One respondent suggested a species-specific approach that considers whether the expected wildlife species are using the site.

**Respondents brought up site age and time since the last disturbance or activity occurred on site as an important factor in evaluating re-establishment of ecosystem function and equivalent land capability.**

One respondent pointed out that forest silviculture uses an 8 to 10 year benchmark and suggested that the risks of using a shorter timeframe for wellsites (e.g., three years of growth) are not known. Another respondent brought up the *Reforestation Standards of Alberta* (Alberta Agriculture and Forestry, 2018a), which specify that an establishment survey be conducted at 4 to 8 years after planting, and was of the opinion that when applying for a variance to criteria or a land use change that at least 4 years since planting are required to examine tree recovery. Site age and time since the last activity occurred was suggested to be especially important on sites where vegetation recovery meets forested land criteria despite site and soil characteristics that are deficient (e.g., topsoil depth, rooting restrictions). In these cases, a longer monitoring period is thought to be required to show sustainability of the vegetation trajectory, and lack of potential long-term adverse effects. One respondent has observed cases where soil limitations led to ecosystem “failures” with time, even on certified sites where the vegetation was considered acceptable. That being said, there was also a general sense from some respondents that site age may alter reclamation expectations; that sites that have been revegetating for 30 years would be given more leeway, and might be considered acceptable as long as they have some level of ecosystem function, even if the productivity is not quite equivalent to off-site areas.

## 3.2 PEATLANDS

### 3.2.1 *Peer-reviewed and Grey Literature Discussing Ecological Function of Peatland Ecosystems*

Peatlands have unique ecological significance in Canada, where they are defined as terrains covered by greater than 40 cm of organic material formed and accumulated in place due to incomplete decay of plants and animals under water saturated conditions (National Wetland Working Group, 1997). They cover approximately 12% of Canada's land area, with most of them occurring in the boreal and subarctic regions (Tarnocai et al., 2009). At the regional and landscape scale, peatlands regulate water supply, buffer against floods and droughts, supply natural resources (e.g., peat), and function as important habitat for many unique boreal flora and fauna (Benscoter and Vitt, 2008; Bonn et al., 2016a). The development and functioning of boreal peatlands depends on many interacting factors including climate, topography, hydrology, chemistry, and vegetation. Understanding these factors is crucial for evaluating the implications of reclamation activities within peatland ecosystems.

The majority of boreal peatlands in western Canada formed through cycles of paludification or swamping of previously dry mineral soil vegetated with non-wetland species (Kuhry and Turunen, 2006). After initiation, development of a peatland usually proceeds along two pathways (Kuhry and Turunen, 2006; Yu, 2006). First, newly formed wetlands (e.g., marshes) develop into either poor or rich fens that can persist on the landscape for thousands of years under the influence of overriding effects of allogenic (external) factors of climate and local water chemistry with little successional change. Secondly, early marshes and fens undergo successional changes driven by autogenic (internal) factors including the isolation of the growing peat surface from local groundwater as peat builds up, acidification, and oligotrophication, which leads to the eventual formation of bogs (Bauer et al., 2003). Ombrotrophic bogs and poor fens are late successional communities shaped by autogenic processes (true mosses to *Sphagnum* mosses transition) under unique hydrological and chemical regimes (pH less than 5.5). Understanding the type of peatland a mineral pad and/or access road is within is important when considering the implications for pad removal.

**Hydrology is by far the most important factor for the development and functioning of natural peatlands.**

Broadly speaking, boreal peatlands can be divided into ombrogenous bogs and minerogenous fens based on topography, hydrology, and chemistry (Halsey et al., 2003; Vitt et al., 1994).

**Bogs are different from all other types of peatlands in that bogs receive water and nutrient inputs only from precipitation (snowfall and rain) and the live growing surface is isolated from mineral rich water.**

**They are usually dominated by oligotrophic (low nutrient demanding) species of peat mosses (genus**

***Sphagnum***). Fens can be topogenous (influenced by stagnant waters pooled in depressions), soligenous (influenced by seepage), or limnogenous (influenced by flood waters from water courses) (von Post and Granlund, 1926; Rydin and Jeglum, 2015). As such, **fens are supplied with water that had contact with mineral rich soils from the surrounding area. These minerogenous waters have nutritional and buffering effects and can support the development of a wide range of fen types, from sedge-dominated open fens to larch- or birch-dominated wooded fens** (Bragazza and Gerdol, 2002; Tahvanainen, 2004; Wood et al., 2016).

Calcareous rich fens are characterized by the large number of species of high fidelity (e.g., true mosses) to base cation-rich, basic to slightly acid environments. Poor fens have relatively few differential species in comparison. They are acid, have low base cations, little or no alkalinity, and are dominated by *Sphagnum* mosses.

Within each peatland type, vegetation can vary greatly, both structurally and compositionally. All peatlands can be dominated by a combination of species in the tree layer (black spruce, larch), the shrub layer (birch, willow), the field layer (sedges, forbs, and grasses), and the ground layer (mosses) (Zoltai and Vitt, 1995). Therefore, vegetation of a peatland is usually not a good indicator of basic peatland types (bogs, poor fens, and rich fens), unlike non-peat forming wetlands that can be easily distinguished by species in the tree layer (swamps) or the field layer (marshes). In Alberta, mature bogs are usually wooded with an open canopy while fens vary greatly from open to wooded. **A ground layer of bryophytes, often covering 80-100% of the surface, is a unique and defining characteristic of the majority of boreal peatland ecosystems. Bogs and poor fens are dominated by *Sphagnum* spp. while moderately rich and rich fens are dominated by true mosses (*Bryopsida*)** (Rydin and Jeglum, 2015).

The development and succession of different vegetation as a peatland evolves is not only a result of local hydrology and water chemistry but also a self-regulated process driven by highly adapted vegetation, particularly mosses. Unlike higher plants, bryophytes lack vascular tissues to transport water and nutrients over long distances (Glime, 2009). Germination and growth of bryophytes are highly sensitive to moisture and temperature (Glime, 2007). This is critical for the introduction of suitable peatland vegetation, particularly bryophytes, in reclamation.

Peatlands, particularly bogs, have varying ground surface topography with high hummocks and low hollows. Hummocks are usually dry, while hollows range from dry (lichen dominated in mature bogs), to wet in fens. At the site level, peatland ground surface can be further divided into pools (small bodies of open water filled with submerged vegetation), carpets (areas where the mosses have emergent upper

parts and form unconsolidated substrates), lawns (low, relatively level, moist habitats of consolidated peat), and hummocks (Rydin and Jeglum, 2015).

In most cases, reclamation cannot directly create conditions necessary for the establishment of a bog community on either peat or mineral substrates, regardless of how much mineral material is removed (Nwaishi et al., 2015; Rochefort et al., 2016; Vitt et al., 2011b). However, **microtopography is one feature of a natural peatland that could be replicated through site preparation such as mounding and scarification either on an entire site and/or to help blend the site into the natural landscape.**

Creating a variable ground surface will likely contribute to the overall vegetation diversity and resilience against environmental uncertainties. Higher microsites are critical for woody vegetation establishment in both uplands and wetlands.

For forested ecosystems, trees are widely used as a key indicator of achieving equivalent land capability and overall ecosystem functions. The rationale is that if the site can support the growth of a healthy tree canopy, it is a good indication that appropriate site conditions and processes are in place to support all other functions and vegetation layers. Similarly, a healthy, well developed ground layer dominated by *Sphagnum* and true mosses should be used when assessing peatlands.

**The growth of ground layer mosses is both a result of suitable hydrologic and edaphic conditions and a contributing factor to the internal regulation of chemistry, succession, and overall ecosystem functions.**

Therefore, when considering the impacts of activity within a peatland, the ground layer can be assessed as an indicator of ecosystem health.

### 3.2.2 *Key Components for Evaluating Ecosystem Function of Reclaimed Wellsites Within Peatlands*

Peatland reclamation of oil and gas infrastructure built with borrowed mineral soil is relatively new in Alberta. Much has been learned about peatland restoration over the past 30 years: see reviews in Bonn et al. (2016b) and Chimner et al. (2017); however, research on reclaiming peatlands disturbed by oil and gas activities has just begun (Gauthier et al., 2018). To date, no research studies have been identified that focus on the implications of leaving a mineral soil pad in place within a peatland, therefore the majority of the information available on reclamation activities within peatlands is related to full or partial removal of mineral material.

Over the last decade, several studies have attempted to reclaim oil and gas well pads to functional peatlands or wetlands across Alberta. Projects have been initiated where mineral soil was either

completely removed to expose and decompact buried peat (P-Pad approach<sup>11</sup>) which then received vegetation transferred from a donor site, or the mineral soil was partially removed to lower surface elevation (M-Pad approach) and the site was revegetated with either planted wetland species or left to naturally recolonize. Results indicated that both approaches were able to support the development of peatland vegetation and a net uptake of CO<sub>2</sub> driven by primary productivity of vascular species such as *Salix* spp. and *Carex* spp. (Borkenhagen and Cooper, 2016; Engering, 2018; Gauthier et al., 2018; Nwaishi et al., 2016; Shunina, 2014; Vitt et al., 2011b).

As indicated previously, research has shown that reclamation cannot directly create conditions necessary for the establishment of a bog community on either peat or mineral substrates, regardless of how much mineral material is removed. Instead, when removing a pad from within a bog, a fen type of community with a true moss dominated ground layer should be targeted initially with the assumption that these systems will either remain as fens or evolve towards poor fens and bogs following natural peatland development pathways. However, in some instances full or partial removal of mineral soil material may cause adverse environmental effects off site through repeated access by heavy equipment and disturbance of existing established borrow areas, which warrants further investigation into the feasibility and long term success of modified reclamation practices such as the initiation of peatland vegetation on remnant mineral substrate (partial removal) or leaving pads in place under appropriate conditions. Based on results of early field trials, initiation of the paludification process (initiation of fen vegetation on mineral substrate) after partial removal of mineral soil may be a very practical solution to reclaiming well pads and associated access roads to ensure the recovery of critical peatland functions.

A summary of the key factors affecting peatland function and thus considerations for the factors to evaluate when assessing reclaimed sites within peatlands is provided in Table 2. For a detailed summary of peatland development, bryophyte ecology, and ecosystem functions, refer to Appendix D. There are still many knowledge gaps when it comes to removing mineral fill and introducing suitable fen vegetation. See Appendix D for a list of characteristics a functional peatland or a reclaimed site on the trajectory towards becoming a functional peatland should have and Appendix B and D for detailed case studies of full and partial pad removal approaches to reclaim in-situ features to peatland.

---

<sup>11</sup> The “P” in P-pad approach refers to peat being present at the surface; the P-Pad approach can also include pad inversion techniques where pad material is placed below (buried under) the peat. The “M” in M-Pad approach refers to mineral material being present at the surface.



**Table 2. Summary of key factors affecting peatland function.**

Factor		Natural Peatland	
		Bogs	Fens
Hydrology	Local	precipitation/rain fed (ombrogenous)	multiple sources/inputs, flow through
	Regional	perched growing surface isolated from groundwater or mineral water	topogenous, soligenous, limnogenous, contact with mineral soil ground water exchange
	Water Table	20 cm below surface	at, near or above surface
	Drainage	drain away from bog surface to surrounding	poorly drained, pooling of water
Topography		overall flat, hummocky terrain	relatively flat, microtopographic features; patterned
Vegetation	Trees	black spruce	larch
	Shrubs	Labrador tea, small bog cranberry	birch, willow, leatherleaf
	Herbaceous	cloudberry, cotton grass, pitcher plant	sedges, buckbean, Solomon's seal
	Bryophytes	<i>Sphagnum</i> mosses	<i>Sphagnum</i> to true mosses to low moss
Chemistry	Acidity/ Alkalinity	acidic (pH 3-5), no to low alkalinity	acidic to neutral to alkaline
	Nutrient	low alkalinity, low available nutrients (N, P), low base cations	mid- to high alkalinity, elevated nutrients and cation
Soil		thick organic, moss peat	thick organic, moss to sedge to woody peat
Carbon Dynamics		low productivity and slow decomposition, recalcitrant plant biomass, net uptake of carbon and storage as peat	low to high productivity, slow to moderate decomposition, labile carbon, net uptake of carbon and storage of peat

---

## 4.0 UPLAND SITES WITH NATURAL VEGETATION ENCROACHMENT

---

This section describes the factors that would lead an operator to request a variance to criteria, and the Alberta Energy Regulator to grant approval. The section also provides information on the implications of the variance to criteria in terms of the range of landscape and soils conditions that would likely be present, summarizes the reclamation options for a variance to site criteria, and the certification criteria that are applied.

A site with natural vegetation encroachment is a site where vegetation has become established, but which presents one or more deficiencies in terms of current regulatory criteria. The common reclamation deficiencies encountered at these sites include:

- Cut and fills
- Subsidence
- Soil stockpiles/windrows left in place
- Topsoil not conserved
- Coarse woody material piles left in place
- Noxious weeds and undesirable species

### 4.1 KEY CHALLENGES

**In the management of upland sites with natural vegetation encroachment, challenges arise when vegetation parameters meet the forested land criteria while soil and landscape parameters do not, but neither has hindered the establishment of forested site conditions.** In these cases, there is room for interpretation within current legislation, policies and criteria as to what the acceptable conditions are for approval of a variance, and whether the site qualifies for a variance to criteria and therefore a reclamation certificate. As a result, operators, practitioners and regulators have difficulty in deciding whether a site requires further reclamation or whether the current conditions can be justified. More clarity is needed in terms of defining the acceptable conditions for determining when a site meets equivalent land capability and the requirements of a reclamation certificate application, including justifications for reclamation deficiencies.

The following are examples of reclamation deficiencies which require consistent definitions of the range of acceptable conditions:

- Height and size of cut and fills
- Size and depth of subsided areas

- Presence and size of soil stockpiles/windrows or coarse woody material piles left in place
- Lack of soil conservation
- Allowable quantity of noxious weeds and definition of when noxious weeds are considered to be controlled
- Presence and allowable quantity of undesirable species

Without a formal definition of acceptable conditions, operators, practitioners and regulators in different offices or regions may have differing views on what constitutes a reclamation deficiency and what the acceptable conditions are for professional justification, resulting in different levels of reclamation effort being applied by operators. To inform decisions on the acceptable conditions, more analysis is needed on the implications and trade-offs of correcting the reclamation deficiencies compared to any environmental implications associated with correcting them.

#### 4.2 CONDITIONS ON SITES WITH NATURAL VEGETATION ENCROACHMENT

This section describes the range of conditions that are likely to be found at sites with natural vegetation encroachment, where vegetation meets the vegetation component of the criteria for forested lands in terms of desired plant species for the site’s reclamation date, but (1) may not meet the criteria for weeds; and, (2) the site may fail to meet landscape or soil components of the forested land criteria (Alberta Environment and Sustainable Resource Development, 2013a). Table 3 provides the current forested lands criteria for the common reclamation landscape, soil and weed deficiencies that are discussed in this report.

**Table 3. Current criteria requirements for common reclamation deficiencies.**

Deficiency	Current Criteria	Section <sup>‡</sup>
Cut and fills	Landscape criteria (operability): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Macro- and meso-contours on site are comparable to off site</li> <li>• Macro- and meso-contours are not affecting site management</li> <li>• Macro- and meso-contours shall not result in excessive erosion, slumping/wasting or altered water flow patterns</li> </ul>	9.5
Subsidence	Landscape criteria (stability): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Areas of subsidence are &lt; 4m<sup>2</sup> and unlikely to risk the site’s stability</li> <li>• Any subsidence &gt;4 m<sup>2</sup> occurring on site is consistent with that observed off-site</li> </ul>	9.3.2

Deficiency	Current Criteria	Section <sup>‡</sup>
Soil stockpiles left in place	Landscape criteria (operability): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Macro- and meso-contours on site are comparable to off site</li> <li>• Macro- and meso-contours are not affecting site management</li> <li>• Macro- and meso-contours shall not result in excessive erosion, slumping/wasting or altered water flow patterns</li> </ul> Soil criteria (depth and distribution): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Topsoil has been adequately replaced as per topsoil depth and distribution requirements by construction date</li> </ul>	9.5, 11.1.3.1 and Table 3
Coarse woody material piles left in place	Landscape criteria (debris): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Coarse woody debris shall be spread over the site and may not be piled, windrowed or concentrated in one area as this may pose a fire-hazard, particularly in areas near settlements</li> </ul>	9.6.1
Noxious weeds	Vegetation criteria (weeds): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Noxious weeds must be controlled as per the <i>Weed Control Act</i></li> <li>• Presence on site must be comparable to off site or must be from a single point source off site</li> </ul>	10.4 and Table 3
Undesirable species	Vegetation criteria (weeds): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Undesirable/problem species should be controlled and should not require species management of the site (i.e., herbicide application)</li> <li>• Presence on site must be comparable to off site or must be from a single point source off site</li> </ul>	10.4 and Table 3
Lack of soil conservation (no topsoil)	Soil criteria (soil depth and distribution): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Topsoil has been adequately replaced as per topsoil depth requirements by construction date</li> </ul>	11.1.3.1 and Table 3

<sup>‡</sup>Refers to the section of the *2010 Reclamation Criteria for Wellsites and Associated Facilities for Forested Lands* where the criteria for that parameter can be found (Alberta Environment and Sustainable Resource Development, 2013a).

Cut and fill is a construction technique for wellsites and access roads located on slopes whereby soil material is excavated from the upper slope portion of the site and used on the lower slope portion of the site to create a level surface for the drill rig and associated work areas. During reclamation it can be challenging to replace the excavated material correctly to match the off-site topography, particularly if snow gets mixed in with soils during replacement and settling (subsidence) of the placed material occurs. Best practice is to over build cut and fills with the expectation that the over built material will settle (Cenovus Energy, 2016; Osko et al., 2018b); however, it is difficult to predict actual settling rates. The height of cut and fills (i.e., the difference in elevation between on-site and off-site areas) varies with material type, but typically ranges from 0.2 to 1 m; in rarer cases can be greater than 3 m and up to 10 m in mountainous regions (Acden Vertex Limited Partnership, personal communication 2019).

Subsidence is defined as “lowering of the soil surface due to a reduction in volume through settling or other means” (Powter, 2002) and occurs in localized areas where soil settling occurs unevenly (e.g., at well centre, or in association with cut and fills). The presence of snow mixed in with soil materials during reclamation can result in subsidence. Subsided areas can typically range in size from 1 m<sup>2</sup> to 10 m<sup>2</sup> on well centres and over 100 m<sup>2</sup> on sumps or pits, and typically range in depth from 0.2 m to 0.6 m, although can be up to 1 m deep (Acden Vertex Limited Partnership, personal communication 2019). Slopes leading to subsided areas can range from gradual to abrupt. Subsided areas can be associated with slumping and erosion, or ponding.

Soil stockpiles that are left in place may include topsoil and subsoil stockpiles and are often less than 1 m tall but can range in height up to 3 m (Acden Vertex Limited Partnership, personal communication 2019). Soil stockpiles on wellsites are typically shaped as long, narrow windrows. Similarly, coarse woody debris piles left in place are often less than 1 m tall but have been observed to range up to 2 to 3 m high (Acden Vertex Limited Partnership, personal communication 2019). Piles are typically along the edges of wellsites, at the edge of the active work area, or on log decks.

Older sites may have been constructed and operated without first salvaging and stockpiling topsoil for reclamation, and management and use of the site has resulted in loss of the topsoil layer. This also occurs on sites that were constructed by placing a mineral soil pad on top of undisturbed peatlands or transitional soils, and that mineral soil pad is to remain in place at closure, the implications of which are discussed in Section 5. Another scenario that may have occurred on legacy sites is that topsoil and subsoil were salvaged together during construction, resulting in an admixed soil with lower organic matter, altered soil texture and other modified properties no longer consistent with the original topsoil.

Prohibited noxious and noxious weeds are those listed in the *Weed Control Regulation* (AR 19/2010) (Government of Alberta, 2010) under the *Weed Control Act* (Government of Alberta, 2008), while undesirable species are incompatible species as defined by the forested land criteria (Alberta Environment and Sustainable Resource Development, 2013a) to be species that are not appropriate for the target/representative forest ecosite and/or are not seeded species that were part of a seed mix that was appropriate to the time period in which reclamation took place. Prohibited noxious weeds are not commonly found in the boreal forest in Alberta (Small et al., 2018), and are not typically a concern for wellsites. Noxious weeds are more common, and occurrences can range from a single patch with less than 10 plants to site wide infestations with thousands of plants. Similar to what was found by Small et al. (2018) for oil sands operations, the typical noxious weed species on forested wellsites include perennial

sow-thistle, scentless chamomile, Canada thistle, oxeye daisy, and common tansy (Acden Vertex Limited Partnership, personal communication 2019).

### **4.3 TRADITIONAL RECLAMATION APPROACH**

Sites that fail to meet forested land criteria require active reclamation to correct the deficiencies (e.g., recontouring, spreading soil or woody material stockpiles, importing topsoil). Reclamation typically requires that heavy equipment be mobilized to, and used at the site, resulting in the removal of trees and other existing vegetation on the access road and on all or part of the wellsite, and potential soil compaction. Site access may also require creek crossing and ice road construction.

To correct landscape contour (cut and fill) and subsidence issues, topsoil that was replaced during original reclamation must be re-stripped from the area to allow subsoil to be recontoured. Recontouring is conducted to re-shape the on-site contours to match the surrounding topography and ensure that drainage patterns do not cause ponding or erosion on or off site. For subsided areas, recontouring may require the addition of material (typically imported peat, sand or clay or potentially material sourced from an elevated area on site) to fill the void and match the grade to the remainder of the site. Topsoil is then replaced once re-contouring is complete.

If there was insufficient topsoil conserved on the wellsite to meet the soil replacement depth criteria for the site's construction and reclamation date, or if topsoil was admixed with subsoil, topsoil must be sourced from an alternate location and transported to the wellsite to meet the forested land criteria without applying for a variance to criteria. Imported topsoil must be characterized before use (e.g., texture, lab analyses, volume, weeds) and be comparable to the control topsoil quality (e.g., chemistry, structure, texture) (Alberta Energy Regulator, 2018; Alberta Environment and Sustainable Resource Development, 2013a). Topsoil is often not locally available to import, in which case amendments or fertilizers can be applied to support vegetation re-establishment; a variance to criteria is required to allow for the insufficient topsoil depth. Use of amendments or fertilizers results in a delay to certification due to the required two year waiting period post-amendment/fertilization (Alberta Environment and Sustainable Resource Development, 2013a).

After soil recontouring and placement is complete, some operators choose to actively revegetate the site, typically through tree and/or shrub planting, while others opt to leave the site for natural vegetation recovery. Seeding grass and/or forb species is not currently a common practice on forested wellsites as current criteria require that species on site be matched to representative ecosites of control areas (Alberta

Environment and Sustainable Resource Development, 2013a); however, more proactive vegetation strategies to prevent weed establishment in weed prone areas (e.g., areas with higher levels of nearby activity) or erosion on steep slopes are employed in site-specific circumstances.

Sites that fail to meet forested land criteria in terms of noxious weeds require noxious weed control. Typically weed control is conducted through chemical herbicide application. Application strategies range from spot-spraying with back-pack sprayers to broadcast spraying with an ATV (all-terrain vehicle), UTV (utility vehicle) or truck mounted sprayers. Additionally, as with active reclamation practices, truck, ATV or UTV access to the site is required for weed control, resulting in vegetation removal or disturbance on the access road. Desirable vegetation on the site is also removed or disturbed by spray equipment as well as by herbicide overspray, particularly with broadcast spraying. Four to six years of herbicide application is common for heavily infested sites. Aggressive noxious weeds and non-native species can be difficult to manage when they are well established and a substantial seed and propagule bank has developed in the soil (Mihajlovich et al., 2014).

#### **4.4 PROCESS AND FACTORS AFFECTING THE DECISION TO APPLY FOR A VARIANCE TO CRITERIA**

A site with natural vegetation encroachment which presents one or more reclamation deficiencies in terms of current certification criteria can be eligible for a variance to criteria. Some sites may be eligible for a specific type of variance referred to as a vegetation override if the following conditions are met (Alberta Environment and Sustainable Resource Development, 2013a):

*Where reasonable forest cover (i.e., amount, species and distribution) is present, and where additional activities are required to meet the conditions described in [the forested lands criteria] pose a risk to existing ecosystem function, a vegetation override may be appropriate. Equivalent capability for forested landscapes must be demonstrated.*

The definition for *reasonable forest cover* is not explicitly defined in the forested lands criteria, but could be assumed to refer to the current criteria for desired plant species density and cover. Sites that do not meet the criteria for reasonable forest cover, but that do meet the vegetation criteria specified for their construction and reclamation dates (e.g., 80% cover), while not eligible for a vegetation override, are still eligible for a variance to criteria.

Many outreach respondents largely agreed that criteria variances are applied for when the vegetation meets criteria but landscape, soil, or weed parameters have deficiencies. In particular, the stem density requirement is most often used to determine if a variance to criteria is warranted; industry may seek

variances where woody stem density passes (regardless of composition of woody vegetation), but the herbaceous component does not, because woody vegetation is seen as the main driver of succession. One participant noted that the variance request can be denied if the vegetation is not desirable and lacks species diversity and evidence of structural layers, even if the woody stem density requirements are met, indicating that, as outreach participants also noted, variances are poorly defined and there is uncertainty in the thresholds that will be accepted by the regulator. From a regulatory point of view, the intent with a variance is still to ensure that the site will be on a trajectory towards a functional forested ecosystem, providing appropriate ecosystem services such as wildlife habitat as opposed to an anomaly which sticks out in the middle of a forest.

While some outreach respondents were firm that vegetation establishment is more important than other considerations, many acknowledged that there can be factors in addition to vegetation to consider in determining whether to apply for a variance to criteria, which in the context of this report is referred to as using a modified reclamation approach (i.e., leaving landscape, soil and/or weed deficiencies in place).

**There are two main categories of factors to consider: the first is consequences of leaving the deficiencies in place (and whether the deficiency is impeding equivalent land capability and ecosystem function), and the second is consequences of conducting traditional reclamation practices.**

Consequences of leaving the reclamation deficiencies in place may include:

- On- and off-site impacts related to landscape, soils, and weeds
- Safety hazards
- Cumulative effects

Additionally, the negative consequence of leaving deficiencies in place must be considered in terms of the actual size and scale of the deficiency; deficiencies can be quite localized, and may not impact the ecological function of the wellsite as a whole.

Consequences of conducting traditional reclamation practices to correct deficiencies may include:

- Removal of existing trees and other vegetation
- Slowed ecological recovery
- Potential for weeds
- Weed control

Remoteness and access considerations are factors in both the consequence of leaving deficiencies in place and of conducting traditional reclamation practices to correct deficiencies.



#### 4.4.1 *Consequences of Leaving Deficiencies in Place*

Based on outreach responses and an analysis conducted by the authors, the on- and off-site impacts of leaving deficiencies in place are as follows:

- Cut and fill can result in slumping, erosion, and altered drainage pathways on and off the site (e.g., damming, ponding)
- Subsided areas can result in slumping soils, erosion or ponding of water
- Soil windrows left in place can alter drainage pathways
- Woody debris piles left in place can prevent vegetation establishment within the area occupied by the pile and can be considered a fire hazard if they encroach into the surrounding undisturbed forest and act as a ladder fuel (Alberta Environment and Parks, 2018b)
- Subsidence, cut-and-fills and soil and woody material stockpiles left in place can all have impacts on the trafficability/operability of the site, restrict or alter wildlife movement and can be an aesthetic concern (appear unnatural) for recreational and traditional users
- Failure to re-distribute topsoil results in lack of topsoil on portions of the site. Lack of topsoil can result in delayed vegetation establishment due to lack of propagules and/or lack of organic matter and nutrients to support plant growth
- Noxious weeds can compete with desirable vegetation on site and slow vegetation recovery to targeted forest ecosystems and have the potential to spread off site into adjacent undisturbed areas and require weed control

Several outreach respondents agreed that whether or not these impacts occur as a result of the deficiency should be a key point in evaluating whether the deficiency is acceptable to be left in place. The presence of the deficiency itself may not necessarily be a problem if on- and off-site impacts do not occur as a result of the deficiency being left in place and vegetation recovery, ecosystem function and equivalent land capability are not impeded. For example, some respondents have observed that cut and fills that are up to 2 m high do not have an impact on the ecosystem function, provided that the cut and fill area is stable and not slumping or eroding. Deficiencies must also be considered in the context of natural forested conditions, as well as regulatory requirements and conditions created by reclamation practices in other industries that operate in forested areas, which will be discussed throughout the following sections.

##### 4.4.1.1 *Landscape Issues*

Relevant literature related to landscape deficiencies and the potential consequences of leaving them in place and/or modified reclamation was reviewed; a summary of the information is provided, supported by interview responses.

**It was determined that the main considerations for landscape deficiencies left in place include:**

- **Whether impacts result from deficiencies, and the severity of these impacts: presence of slumping, erosion, altered hydrology and drainage pathways (damming, ponding), impaired trafficability/operability of the site, restricted wildlife movement, aesthetic concerns for recreational and traditional users**
- **Height and/or depth of the feature relative to the surrounding area (scale), and how it compares to similar features in undisturbed forests and reclamation in other industries**
- **Actual fire hazard of woody debris piles based on location of pile on site (edge, centre), surrounding timber type (deciduous vs. coniferous) and on-site vegetation (dense vs. sparse grass)**

Site stability was viewed among many respondents as an important factor to determine whether landscape deficiencies were acceptable to be left in place. The extent to which impacts caused by landscape features were considered acceptable was variable among respondents. While some respondents felt that any level of impact was not acceptable, others felt that there could be allowable levels. For example, one respondent suggested that only those deficiencies that are unstable require additional reclamation while others can be left in place. Other respondents implied that some levels of erosion could be considered acceptable, and only substantial erosion that does not stabilize itself through vegetation encroachment would be a concern for reclamation certification. The same view, though not explicitly stated, may apply for slumping or ponding.

Soil stockpiles left in place can be considered from a landscape and a soils perspective. From a landscape perspective, some would argue that if they are stable they can be left in place. From a soils perspective, the impact of stockpiles is on the topsoil depth and distribution on the remainder of the site, which is discussed in Section 4.4.1.2.

End land use is another factor to consider in evaluating landscape features left in place. One respondent pointed out that in the forestry industry, landscape features are considered in the context of operability for commercial forest equipment. As long as a cut and fill does not impede operability of commercial forest equipment, it would be deemed appropriate to be left in place for a commercial forest production end land use.

Many of the landscape deficiencies are comparable to landscape conditions created in other industries during reclamation, indicating that ecosystem function is likely not negatively influenced. For example, creation of a rough and loose microtopography (Polster, 2011) is a common practice during soil replacement at coal mines and oil sands mines; microtopography is created by progressively digging holes with an excavator bucket and dumping the material beside and partially inside the hole across a reclaimed area (Polster, 2011), or by spreading topsoil unevenly during replacement using either an excavator (Osko

et al., 2018b) or a bulldozer that makes very few passes (Alberta Environment and Water, 2012; Archibald, 2014; Mackenzie and Naeth, 2010). Recent reclamation trials on reclaimed oil sands mining areas created microtopographic features (hills) up to 1.5 m tall, 3.5 to 5 m wide and spaced 1 to 2 m apart; these features promoted increased species diversity and plant abundance during natural vegetation establishment, particularly on east facing aspects (Melnik et al., 2018). Microtopographical diversity (size of microtopographical features not quantified) also promoted natural regeneration of aspen from seed in coal mine reclamation (Schott et al., 2014).

Similarly, although in a peatland, after removal of an oil sands in situ well pad, the underlying peat and approximately 10 cm of the remaining pad were reclaimed to a rough surface with mounds up to 1 m tall; transplanted woody vegetation had increased survival on upper portions of mounds and the microtopography was considered beneficial to mitigate a fluctuating water table (Shunina et al., 2016).

Mounding is used as a site preparation technique in the forestry industry to improve survival and growth of planted trees as well as natural regeneration of trees (e.g., white spruce) from seed due to warmer soil temperatures and reduced seedling smothering by leaf litter (several authors reviewed in Gärtner et al. (2011)). Mounds in the forestry industry range from 30 to 40 cm tall and approximately 0.5 to 0.6 m<sup>2</sup> in size (DeLong et al., 1997; Gradowski et al., 2008). Microtopographical variation is similar in height to the depths observed with subsidence, although subsided areas are typically larger than an individual mound. Mounding has also been used in the oil and gas industry in the context of caribou habitat restoration trials on seismic lines, access roads, pipelines and well sites in peatlands and forested areas, to create microsites to promote revegetation and limit human use of corridors. Recommended mounding practices are to dig holes approximately 75 cm deep and place the excavated material directly beside the hole at an application rate of 600 to 2,000 mounds/ha (Bentham and Coupal, 2015). Mounding at this scale successfully deters recreational use of linear features (e.g., ATVs).

Subsidence at well centre can be comparable to pit and mound microtopography created by windthrow in undisturbed forests (Figure 5), although the area occupied by subsided areas is often larger. Windthrow pits can be up to 55 cm deep and mounds up to 100 cm tall in pine dominated forests (Kuuluvainen and Juntunen, 1998), and in (28 year old) aspen dominated forests pit depths can range from 15 to 25 cm and mound height can range from 44 to 53 cm with total disturbed area of 1.6 to 2.1 m<sup>2</sup> (Lee and Sturgess, 2002). Pit and mound microtopography plays an important role in maintaining tree and understory populations and in increasing species and structural diversity in undisturbed forests (Kuuluvainen and Juntunen, 1998; Ulanova, 2000).



**Figure 5. Windthrow in a forest stand in the Dry Mixedwood Natural Subregion of the Boreal Natural Region in central Alberta.**

Coarse woody material piles left in place on wellsites may be comparable to conditions created by reclamation practices in other industries. Coarse woody material management on OSE sites can include a variety of spreading and windrowing techniques. In recent literature on OSE reclamation, coarse woody debris windrows are proposed as an alternative to spreading for dealing with coarse woody material at some sites (especially sites with high wood volumes) because windrows reduce the total area of soil in direct contact with coarse woody material (Frerichs, 2017; Frerichs et al., 2017). Open soils are warmer which may stimulate soil productivity and aspen suckering (Frerichs, 2017).

There are concerns that coarse woody material piles left in place are a fire hazard. Current requirements of the *Master Schedule of Standards and Conditions* (Alberta Environment and Parks, 2018b) are to ensure that (a) coarse woody material storage piles do not encroach into the surrounding undisturbed forest, (b) coarse woody material is spread during reclamation, (c) the amount of slash and coarse woody material within 5 m of the site edge is not to be greater than that found on the surrounding undisturbed forest floor, and (d) coarse woody material coverage is less than 50% of the ground surface. All of these are meant to minimize the creation of ladder fuels to undisturbed timber. Fire risks are considered to be higher in coniferous forests (Alberta Environment and Parks, 2018b), if the vegetation on site is grass dominated, particularly tall, dense grass populations as opposed to shorter and less dense grasses (Canadian Association of Petroleum Producers, 2008), and if the pile of woody material is located on the edge of the site vs. a more central location. The risk of fire spread presented by coarse woody material piles on wellsites is lower than on linear features as linear features can act as a wick and wildfire can

spread long distances along them (Canadian Association of Petroleum Producers, 2008). Risk of fire spread from piles on wellsites is also considered to be lower than in forestry cutblock settings due to the small size of wellsites; cutblocks are much larger and windrows of woody material are more likely to contribute to fire spread (Frerichs, 2017).

For forest operations in Alberta, the *Alberta Timber Harvest Planning and Operating Ground Rules Framework for Renewal* require that residual slash be disposed of, typically through burning, within 24 months (Government of Alberta, 2016); however, the *Debris Management Standards for Timber Harvest Operations* (Alberta Agriculture and Forestry, 2018b) allow for debris retention provided that piles meet the following guidelines: height is less than 2 m, base diameter less than 3 m, distance between piles is greater than 15 m, distance from standing timber is greater than 25 m, and the pile is not intended for disposal.

#### 4.4.1.2 Soil Issues

Relevant literature related to soil deficiencies and the potential consequences of leaving them in place and/or modified reclamation was reviewed; a summary of the information is provided, supported by interview responses.

**It was determined that the main considerations regarding soil deficiencies left in place include:**

- **Whether impacts result from deficiencies: evidence of delayed vegetation growth, reduced vegetation productivity, altered species composition or delayed successional pathways due to lack of topsoil**
- **The actual topsoil deficit: topsoil is present but the depth is reduced compared to the control vs. a complete lack of topsoil**
- **Site and soil conditions (soil moisture and nutrient regime (ecosite) and local availability of propagules)**

In terms of soil deficiencies or limitations that may or may not be acceptable to be left in place, topsoil depth and rooting restrictions (compaction) were brought up most frequently by outreach respondents. Rooting restriction was generally not considered by respondents to be acceptable to be left in place due to potential effects on vegetation growth and productivity; limitations to equivalent land capability in the longer term related to compaction and rooting restrictions have been observed. However, one respondent stated that rooting restrictions could be justified if the stem density was acceptable, although another respondent noted that site age would be a factor in these types of justifications, with long-term vegetation data required to show that there were no impacts.

There was significant disagreement among respondents on the issue of topsoil depth. Some felt that topsoil must be replaced to a depth (and variability) similar to what existed prior to disturbance or off-site in order to meet equivalent land capability, regardless of whether the vegetation has met the criteria. Others felt similarly, and noted that it was an issue of confidence and certainty in the long term trajectory of the site. On the subject of spreading topsoil piles left in place, one respondent suggested that the benefits that could be derived from spreading topsoil piles that were left in place should be a consideration, pointing out that current vegetation may be adequate, but excellent vegetation could be achieved if the topsoil was spread. In contrast, another respondent questioned whether topsoil that had been stockpiled for many years during the operational phase of the wellsite had retained its value as a topsoil material. Alternatively, others felt that reduced topsoil or lack of topsoil (whether through lack of or insufficient soil salvage, quality reduction over time, or failure to spread topsoil piles) could be justified if the vegetation meets the criteria, with one respondent noting that trees are capable of growth in a wide variety of conditions. Many felt that the effort required to correct topsoil depth issues were not worth the damage to the existing ecosystem that would occur as a result (discussed further in Section 4.4.2).

There is literature to suggest that the seed and propagule viability in the topsoil would be negatively impacted by stockpiling even after 1 to 2 years, depending on the size of the pile (discussed in Section 5.4.2.1). Research on impacts to organic matter and nutrient contents in long term stockpiles are inconclusive. Some studies show declines in organic matter over 10 years (e.g., Ghose (2001)), while others show no negative impact of stockpiling on organic matter over 5 to 10 years (e.g., Anderson et al. (2008); Gupta (2019)), but there are confounding factors. Some studies do not examine the effects on the same materials over time, rather samples were collected from materials of different ages; observed trends could be related to natural differences between these soils (e.g., if they came from different ecosites). One study measured total carbon and mineralizable nitrogen in a 22 year old topsoil stockpile in British Columbia and found that the values were higher than in situ mineral soil, but changes over time since stockpiling occurred were not measured (Bulmer et al., 2007). The impacts at multiple depths within the stockpile are not well studied; studies that do examine different depths exist, but are not long term (e.g., MacKenzie (2013); Visser et al. (1984)).

Research on vegetation recovery on sites with no topsoil (and on the use of amendments or soil enhancing techniques to correct topsoil deficiencies) has shown various results depending on the soil conditions and the targeted ecosite; further research specifically on wellsites is needed to validate outreach respondents views on topsoil depth. One study in northwestern Alberta looked at revegetation on forested wellsites

with no topsoil. Some of the study sites were padded and others had topsoil stripped during construction (Schoonmaker, Dewey and Schreiber, unpublished data)<sup>12</sup>. Survival after four growing seasons ranged from 71 to 96% for both conifer (white and black spruce) and hardwood (trembling aspen and red-osier dogwood) species after decompaction (Schoonmaker, Dewey and Schreiber, unpublished data). Growth of planted species was positively impacted by decompaction treatments, especially for hardwoods (Schoonmaker, Dewey and Schreiber, unpublished data).

Another revegetation study conducted on a mineral soil pad with no topsoil, left in place in a treed poor fen in northern Alberta found that while jack pine and white spruce had higher survival, birch and balsam poplar survival was sufficient and are also considered candidates for planting under these conditions (Osko and Glasgow, 2010). Decompaction treatments improved growth of tree species (Osko and Glasgow, 2010). A peat amendment salvaged from a treed poor fen had a negative effect on survival and growth of planted balsam poplar and birch but had no effect on white spruce survival and growth, and positively impacted jack pine growth over five years; potential factors for negative effects of the amendment were suggested to be related to soil temperature, water retention and microbial activity (Osko and Glasgow, 2010). Neither of these revegetation studies included a comparison to a treatment with forest topsoil placement, and thus reduction in growth rates due to lack of topsoil was not quantified.

Planted lodgepole pine growth after 6 years on decompacted forest landings (forest floor removal during construction; A horizon may be partially or completely intact) was compared to cutblock areas (no soil disturbance) in northeastern BC. Sixty percent of studied forest landings had stem densities greater than 1,000 stems/ha (forested lands criteria for stem density is 2,000 stems/ha); height of lodgepole pine on forest landings was lower than on cutblock areas (Bulmer and Krzic, 2003). Tree growth was not impacted by reduced soil nutrient status as a result of forest floor removal in this study, but authors noted that long term growth may benefit from increased soil nutrients (Bulmer and Krzic, 2003).

A study on forest landings in interior B.C. found that lodgepole pine height was not enhanced after 8 years by decompaction or the application of wood waste amendments or 22 year old stockpiled topsoil<sup>13</sup> compared to untreated areas and was similar to expected height of lodgepole pine on cut blocks in the area; however, researchers noted that other species would likely respond differently as lodgepole pine

---

<sup>12</sup> Some sites were noted to have admixed soils, with remnants of LFH and A horizon material at the surface (Schoonmaker, Dewey and Schreiber, unpublished data).

<sup>13</sup> As was noted previously for forest landings, during construction the forest floor is typically removed prior to/during construction and the A horizon is left partially or completely intact; removed forest floor and any portions of A horizon that were removed is referred to as topsoil in these studies

can thrive in disturbed soils (Bulmer et al., 2007). Planted tree survival on the stockpiled topsoil after 8 years, while not statistically significant, was reduced compared to most of the amendment treatments, but researchers noted that this may be related to rodent damage rather than soil conditions (Bulmer et al., 2007). Researchers also noted that prior to reclamation treatments, the landings were dominated by grasses with minimal tree regeneration 22 years after construction, despite mature trees in the surrounding area that could have provided a source of seed; whether the site was seeded after construction was not specified.

Another study on forest landings in interior B.C. found that growth of planted lodgepole pine after 2 years was improved by the combination of decompaction and the application of 1 year old stockpiled topsoil and burn pile debris (10 cm application; topsoil applied first and then decompacted, which resulted in incorporation into the underlying soil) compared to the use of decompaction alone (no topsoil replacement); growth with the combination of treatments was superior to lodgepole pine growth on adjacent cutblocks, while growth with decompaction alone was lower than on adjacent cutblocks (with undisturbed soils) (Campbell et al., 2008)<sup>13</sup>. Increased growth with the decompaction-topsoil treatment combination compared to decompaction alone was thought to be due to decreased bulk density and increased soil nitrogen and phosphorus. Decompaction alone did not result in reduced bulk density in this study, possibly due to soil texture (sandy loam) or low organic content. The relative influence of soil physical vs. soil chemical factors on growth could not be determined by this study. Increased growth on the landing compared to the cutblock can be explained by reduced grass competition and increased soil temperatures due to reduced shading on the landing.

While the use of amendments on forested wellsites has not been well studied, one project on a wellsite on agricultural land in Alberta showed that it is possible to create a functional topsoil and get a reclamation certificate using an amendment to compensate for lack of topsoil (Canada's Oil Sands Innovation Alliance, 2019). The amendment that was used was a combination of biochar or humalite (low grade weathered coal) and a mix of conventional organic amendments (saw dust, wheat straw and alfalfa), with adequate supplemental fertilizers (particularly nitrogen and phosphorus) (Bekele et al., 2013; 2015). Biochar or humalite provide a stable source of carbon that decomposes more slowly and was a surrogate for recalcitrant soil organic matter fractions that decompose over decades to centuries while the conventional organic amendment was a source of labile organic carbon which decomposes more quickly (days to several years or decades) (Bekele et al., 2013; 2015). Researchers did note that, depending on the application rate, use of either biochar or humalite can have unintended, detrimental soil effects



(e.g., elevated boron, reduced phosphorus), but these effects depend on the texture and chemistry (e.g., pH) of the receiving subsoil and can be mitigated through appropriate pairing of amendment to the soil conditions.

On a reclaimed oil sands mine, two studies compared the vegetation cover on treatments with and without topsoil placement. With coarse textured Brunisolic soils salvaged from an *a* ecosite, vegetation cover in the third or fourth growing season ranged from 0.03 to 2% on treatments with no forest topsoil, but was only 6% on treatments with forest topsoil (Jones (2016)<sup>14</sup>; MacKenzie (2013)<sup>15</sup>). While statistically significant, the increase in vegetation cover provided by forest topsoil was almost trivial. The MacKenzie (2013) study also included several other topsoil materials. Total vegetation after three growing seasons on another coarse textured treatment with topsoil from a *b* ecosite was slight higher than for *a* ecosites, ranging from 2 to 17%. Coarse textured scenarios contrast significantly with a fine textured treatment with soils from a *d* ecosite; vegetation cover in the third growing season was substantially higher on topsoil treatments (20 to 60%) compared to treatments with no topsoil (2%) (Mackenzie, 2013). Species richness was higher for all topsoil treatments compared to the subsoil treatments, indicating that viable propagules were present in the material, but the more limiting soil conditions on the coarse textured treatments (e.g., lower water holding capacity) likely limited the growth of vegetation from these propagules. It is also likely that the density of propagules in the coarse textured topsoils from *a* and *b* ecosites was more limited than in the *d* ecosite; seed banks tend to be larger in richer, wetter upland ecosites (Mackenzie, 2013), which is discussed further in Section 4.4.2.1. Overall it appears that soil conditions had a more predominant effect on vegetation recovery for *a* ecosites scenarios than any benefit gained from the topsoil (i.e., organic matter and propagules). On the fine-textured site, the difference in vegetation cover between treatments with and without topsoil was either driven by a difference in propagules or a difference in soil nutrients and organic matter for growth; which was more influential was not quantified by the study.

On a wellsite with no topsoil, the availability of propagules would be different than on a reclaimed mine site, as wellsites are situated much closer to the surrounding forest, which allows for increased dispersal onto the site. Recovery on wellsites with no topsoil will depend on the inherent quality of the subsoil

---

<sup>14</sup> The Jones (2016) study used directly placed topsoil (15 cm salvage depth and 20 cm placement depth) with an organic matter content of 2.6% and two subsoil materials with an organic matter content ranging from 0.77 to 0.98%. Vegetation data excluded the cover of planted trees. Slope of the reclamation area was <5%

<sup>15</sup> The MacKenzie (2013) study examined multiple salvage and placement depths for topsoil materials; topsoils were briefly stockpiled between from 6 months in the winter. Data presented here is for 10 and 30 cm salvage depths placed at 10 cm. Trees were not planted in this study. Slope of the reclamation area was 10 to 20%.

material for plant growth as well as how disturbance and reclamation impacted subsoil properties. Sites where subsoil was left in place during the life of the wellsite may have different soil physical properties than sites where subsoil was disturbed (i.e., salvaged and replaced). Soils left in place may have been compacted by prolonged exposure to vehicle and equipment traffic, or these effects may have been mitigated through decompaction treatments during reclamation. Soil structure of disturbed soils may have been damaged during excavation and replacement. The ability of the site to recover with little or no topsoil will likely depend on the soil moisture and nutrient regime and the availability of species to invade the site from the surrounding area as, without topsoil, there will be no residual propagules available to vegetate the site. Sites with limiting moisture or nutrient conditions will be less capable of supporting vegetation growth than richer, wetter sites. Recovery will be swifter for sites surrounded by ecosystems with species available to invade the site that are tolerant to a wider range of conditions. The ability of upland sites to develop and support ecosystem function without topsoil will be discussed further in the context of mineral soil pads left in place and reclaimed to upland forests in Section 5.5.3.

Effects of topsoil placement depth on vegetation response on forested wellsites in Alberta has not been studied in the scientific literature. Current forested land criteria requirements are to replace 80% of the pre-disturbance topsoil depth, although criteria varies with age of construction and reclamation (Alberta Environment and Sustainable Resource Development, 2013a). However, topsoil placement depth in forested ecosystems has been studied in the oil sands mining industry. Vegetation recovery was studied after three years on a 2 cm placement depth. While an improvement was observed compared to some but not all treatments with no topsoil, vegetation recovery was reduced in comparison to treatments with 5 and 10 cm placement depths in multiple placement scenarios of coarse and fine textured topsoils from different ecosystems (*a*, *b* and *d*) placed on mineral substrates (Mackenzie, 2013). Most 5 and 10 cm placement scenarios met the 2 stems/10 m<sup>2</sup> woody stem density requirement of the forested land criteria after three years while the 2 cm placement depth scenarios did not. The 25% canopy cover criterion was met on some of the 5 and 10 cm treatments with fine textured soils from *d* ecosystems, but on none of the coarse-textured *a* and *b* ecosystem scenarios. Differing recovery trends from soils of different ecosystems were linked to differences in seed and propagule bank abundance and composition between ecosystems, as noted above and discussed further in Section 4.4.2.1 (Mackenzie, 2013). Differences between placement depths with the same soil is presumed to be related to topsoil organic matter and nutrient content and available water (Mackenzie, 2013).

Placement depths of 10 cm of forest topsoil has been found to be comparable to a 20 cm placement depth in terms of vegetation response after 5 to 7 years, on richer ecosites with finer textured substrates; however, with topsoil from *a* and *b* ecosites with poorer nutrient regimes and coarse textured substrates, placement depth did impact vegetation response in some studies (Archibald, 2014; Mackenzie and Naeth, 2010), but not others (Jones, 2016). Regardless of differences in vegetation response, all treatments met the 25% canopy cover criterion in the forested land criteria (Alberta Environment and Sustainable Resource Development, 2013a), with the exception of one of the *a* ecosite topsoil studies (Jones, 2016). Placement depths of 10 and 20 cm of coarse textured forest topsoil from a Brunisolic soil also had comparable planted aspen, pine and spruce seedling growth performance in the third year (Bockstette, 2018). From a soils perspective, 10 and 20 cm placement depths of forest topsoil from an *a* ecosite had similar bioavailable nutrient profiles in the first two years after placement (Howell and MacKenzie, 2017).

#### 4.4.1.3 Weed Issues

The forested land criteria currently allows noxious weed and other undesirable/problem weed populations to be present on sites provided that weed populations on site are comparable to or smaller than off site, or if weed populations on site are greater than off site, the following conditions must be met: (1) the site is on public land, (2) all other forested land criteria are met, and (3) weeds are from a single off-site point source<sup>16</sup> (Alberta Environment and Sustainable Resource Development, 2013a). If these conditions are not met, a variance to criteria would be required.

**It has been determined that the main considerations regarding weed populations left in place include:**

- **Whether impacts result from deficiencies: desirable vegetation (natural recovery and planted) is outcompeted by weed populations or movement of noxious weeds into undisturbed areas**
- **Competitiveness of the noxious weed populations, which is impacted by the size and height of noxious weed populations (scale), species of noxious weeds present and its competitive ability, and the stage of development at which weed invasion occurs**

While some respondents believe that there can be no exceptions to the above criteria and others have noted that there is no tolerance from the regulator for deviation from those criteria, many respondents feel that there are instances of noxious and undesirable/problem weed occurrences above and beyond those allowed in the current forested lands criteria that should be considered acceptable to be left in place.

---

<sup>16</sup> Prohibited noxious weeds are treated differently than noxious weeds in the forested land criteria; prohibited weeds are not permitted on-site under any circumstances and must be destroyed as per the *Weed Control Act*. The discussions of weeds in Section 4.4.1.3 and in the remainder of the document concern noxious weeds only.)

From the literature, weed populations are considered to be a concern due to the potential for the following outcomes (Small et al., 2018), excluding the effects of weed control:

- Suppression of desirable native forbs, shrubs and trees through competition with weeds and subsequent impacts to natural vegetation succession
- Mortality of planted trees
- Spread into nearby areas
- Altered natural habitats and reduced diversity
- Changes to local nutrient cycling, water chemistry and hydrological regimes
- Non-compliance with the *Weed Control Act*

Outreach respondents were most concerned about the first two outcomes in the list, and most acknowledge that if these outcomes occur on site, weed control and removal, including control and removal of agronomic species, would be required before reclamation certification. Some respondents noted that agronomic species can have greater negative impacts on growth of desirable species than noxious weeds as they often become dominant more quickly.

Respondents felt weeds could be left in place in cases where these negative outcomes were not occurring, or if noxious weed populations were declining over time. According to one respondent, a demonstration that weeds were obviously being outcompeted by desired species lends weight to the application for a variance.

Outreach respondents suggested that the ecology of each noxious weed species and long-term impacts be considered in assessing weed outcomes and determining control requirements. Respondents have observed that small populations of some species (such as perennial sow-thistle) tend to decline as the canopy closes, noting that while noxious weed species may still be present in the seed bank, canopy closure has an overriding effect in directing weed population dynamics.

Practitioners in the oil sands mining and in situ industry have also expressed uncertainty around noxious weed best management practices for reclamation of forested areas and have been deliberating on whether long term management of all noxious weed species through chemical and manual methods is truly necessary. A literature review and risk analysis were undertaken to examine the issue (Schoonmaker et al., 2018; Small et al., 2018).

The weed literature indicates that the impact of noxious weeds on developing plant communities on the reclaimed site depends on the stage of development of the site (age), the height and extent of the weed population, the specific species in question and how well weed populations compete for nutrients, water

and light (Small et al., 2018). If the height and extent of the weed infestation is small, it is unlikely that weeds will have a competitive advantage over trees or result in inhibited tree growth and development; whereas the opposite would be true if weed populations occupy a large area and/or are taller than the developing trees (Small et al., 2018). Juvenile vegetation is more at risk of being outcompeted by weeds as desirable vegetation is shorter and root system development is still in progress (Small et al., 2018). The literature review concludes that assessing the risk of weeds must consider impacts; if weeds are not competing with desired vegetation and are not acting as a limiting factor to the growth of desired vegetation, then removal of weeds would have a minimal impact.

Oil sands industry reclamation practitioners have observed perennial sow-thistle and scentless chamomile to be of low risk to the developing forest community as they are not aggressive and tend to disappear once other vegetation becomes established (Small et al., 2018). This was supported by a retrospective case study, which found that there was limited evidence of noxious weeds (perennial sow-thistle, scentless chamomile and Canada thistle) having a negative impact on woody vegetation development on six reclaimed oil sands in situ and mining sites in the first 4 to 10 years of development (Schoonmaker et al., 2018).

In terms of the potential for spread of noxious weeds on reclaimed sites into nearby adjacent areas, boreal forests have been presumed to be resistant to noxious weed invasion due to “harsh climates, low light levels, poor soil nutrient availability, low soil pH, low productivity, and dense covering of the ground by plants, especially bryophytes” (Langor et al., 2014). Non-native and invasive plants have typically not been observed, or have been found in low numbers, more than 20 to 30 m from boreal forest edges (Small et al., 2018). This suggests that weed growth and development is not supported by the mature forested environment edges (Small et al., 2018), which does support the theory that canopy closure would reduce weed populations.

Like outreach respondents for this study, a common theory among oil sands practitioners is that once trees achieve canopy closure on a reclaimed site, this will result in a reduction of noxious weeds due to shading and insufficient resources for growth; however, the literature review concludes that **further study is required to validate this theory, including a long term study that shows empirical evidence of noxious weed presence or absence after canopy closure** (Small et al., 2018).

In addition to ecological discussions on weed control, respondents also commented on regulatory requirements for weed control. Several noted that there were inconsistencies between industries in terms of weed control requirements. The weed control literature review for the oil sands industry also identified

differences in weed policy and guidance for wellsite reclamation certification compared to public lands, forestry and oil sands mining and in situ operations (Small et al., 2018). The forested land criteria mainly refers to the *Weed Control Act* requirements to eradicate prohibited noxious weeds and control noxious weeds, but does have acceptable limits for noxious weeds on site, as described above.

Weed management in the forestry industry, through the *Weed Management in Forestry Operations Directive* (Alberta Sustainable Resource Development, 2001), allows for flexibility in weed management (Small et al., 2018) and takes into account the size of the land base, the type of weed species (prohibited noxious vs. noxious), the isolation of the weed occurrence, the size of the infestation, abundance of the species in question on a regional basis and the ecological impact of that species.

On public lands, the *Master Schedule of Standards and Conditions* (Alberta Environment and Parks, 2018b) describes several circumstances in which weed management is restricted and specifically states that these restrictions apply regardless of the requirements of the *Weed Control Act* (Government of Alberta, 2008). For example, vegetation control is not permitted during certain periods between May and August.

Weed management requirements for in situ oil sands operations (i.e., approval conditions) allow for different noxious weed management strategies for reclaimed sites (i.e., sites with vegetation that has established and is self-sustaining) as opposed to active sites (Alberta Energy Regulator, 2015a), which takes into account the interaction between native plant communities and noxious weeds (Small et al., 2018).

Outreach respondents also raised concerns about the consequences of weed control, and many felt that the damage to desired vegetation was an important consideration in the decision of whether weed populations should be controlled, which will be discussed further in Section 4.4.2.3.

#### 4.4.1.4 Safety

In addition to ecological impacts of leaving deficiencies in place, irregular features such as steep slopes from cut and fills, subsided depressions prone to collapse or large industrial debris could be a physical hazard to recreational and traditional users and wildlife. Some outreach participants noted that safety would be considered a determining factor in the decision to leave features in place.

#### Factors that influence the safety of deficiencies left in place include:

- **Height and/or depth of the feature relative to surrounding area (scale). Greater depths or heights of features present increased hazard levels**

- **Slope of the feature. For example, gradual slopes into subsided areas present less of a safety hazard than abrupt drops**
- **Remoteness and access to the site (discussed in Section 4.4.3)**

#### 4.4.1.5 Cumulative Effects

Another aspect to consider in terms of leaving deficiencies in place on upland sites with natural vegetation encroachment is the cumulative impact on the site, regional and landscape scale. While individual deficiencies can be justified and negative consequences deemed acceptably low to allow them to be left in place, there may be a cumulative impact if the same deficiency is left in place on many wellsites and access roads within the same area or if multiple deficiencies are left in place on an individual site.

**Factors to consider in the discussion of cumulative effects include:**

- **The actual negative impact of the deficiency left in place**
- **The cumulative impact of multiple deficiencies on overall ecological function**
- **Number of other sites in the local and regional area that had the same deficiency left in place**
- **Size of the local or regional area over which cumulative effects are determined**
- **Scale and impact of other human impacts in the local or regional area**
- **Sensitivity of the ecosystem, or receptors within that ecosystem to cumulative effects**

Note that this discussion on cumulative effects is focused on deficiencies left in place in upland forests, and does not include mineral soil pads left in place and the implications of a land use change to convert the site to upland forest which is discussed in Section 5.4.

#### 4.4.2 Consequences of Correcting Deficiencies through Traditional Reclamation Approaches

As a counterpoint to the consequences of leaving deficiencies in place, the impacts of reclaiming these deficiencies must also be considered. There was significant concern among respondents that the environmental cost of implementing traditional reclamation practices to fix deficiencies would be higher than the benefits that would be gained in ecosystem function. Respondents referred to the concept of net environmental benefit to rationalise these trade-offs between environmental costs and benefits. The main costs emphasized by respondents were disturbance to established vegetation, delayed ecological recovery and alteration of the recovery trajectory in terms of plant community type and composition (including the introduction of weeds), lengthened reclamation certification timelines, and damage caused by herbicide application. There was some inconsistency among respondents in terms of what constitutes delayed ecological recovery; one respondent suggested that 5 to 10 years would only be considered a

minor setback on the scale of the 200+ year planning horizon that government is focused on, while others were concerned about setbacks regardless of their time frame.

#### 4.4.2.1 *Removal of Existing Vegetation and Impacts to Ecological Recovery*

Removal of vegetation and topsoil was studied in boreal Norway; different severities of disturbance were examined: removal of vegetation; removal of vegetation and the L horizon layer (undecomposed litter); removal of all of the forest floor layers; and removal of vegetation, forest floor and the Ae horizon (i.e., this treatment is equivalent to typical full disturbance construction practices on wellsites) (Rydgren et al., 2004). Vegetation recovery on each of the treatments proceeded at different rates; none of the treatments, including the vegetation removal only treatment, had recovered to pre-disturbance levels after 7 years and recovery was expected to take an additional 5 to 25 years. Disturbance severity changed the types of species that recovered: in the 'litter removal only' treatment there was better recovery of species that regenerate from roots and rhizomes, while in treatments that removed the forest floor, species that regenerate from seed and that have an abundant seed bank were favoured.

Several studies have shown that recovery on sites reclaimed with topsoil that was stripped, stockpiled and replaced (i.e., full disturbance construction) is slower than on sites where topsoil was left in place (i.e., minimal disturbance construction). On wellfields on grassland and sagebrush lands in Wyoming, negative impacts to soil (particularly soil organic matter, total nitrogen, mycorrhizal spores and microbial biomass carbon) were more pronounced after soil removal and stockpiling, and effects were more long lasting (greater than 7 years) than when topsoil was left in place and exposed to development activities (primarily heavy vehicle traffic) (Stahl et al., 2002). On OSE wellsites in northeastern Alberta, vegetation community recovery after 5 years was significantly different on full disturbance sites (topsoil was stripped, stockpiled less than 3 weeks in the winter and replaced) compared to minimum disturbance sites where topsoil was left in place (Jones et al., 2018); differences were more apparent in year 1 than in year 5<sup>17</sup>. In another, longer term study of OSE wellsites in northeastern Alberta, vegetation recovery on minimum disturbance (topsoil left in place) and full disturbance (topsoil stripped, stockpiled for three to four weeks and replaced) wellsites remained different after 10 years<sup>18</sup> (Frerichs et al., 2017). Recovery differences in

---

<sup>17</sup> Total vegetation cover and richness were similar after 5 years; however, the proportion of forest species, tree height and aspen regeneration was still much lower on full disturbance sites (Jones et al., 2018).

<sup>18</sup> Understory species composition differed significantly between treatments and vegetation on minimum disturbance sites was more similar to species compositions on 10 year old clear cuts. Aspen density and height were higher on low disturbance wellsites than full disturbance wellsites after 10 years, although total deciduous tree density was comparable on both sites types (Frerichs et al., 2017).



both studies were attributed to be damage to propagules (severing, wounding, fragmentation), dilution and burial of propagules, and altered expression of propagules through mixing the layers in the seed bank (Frerichs, 2017; Jones et al., 2018; Landhäusser et al., 2015; Osko and Glasgow, 2010; Wachowski et al., 2014).

Propagule losses during salvage, stockpiling and placement of forest topsoil have been documented in several studies in the mining industry. In oil sands mining reclamation, a 90 to 95% loss of propagule density was observed after soil salvage, soil storage in a stockpile for 4 to 6 months in the fall and winter and placement in a reclamation area (Archibald, 2014; Mackenzie, 2013; Mackenzie and Naeth, 2010; Naeth et al., 2013). Similar losses have been reported in Australian jarrah forests (Koch et al., 1996). Longer term stockpiling (greater than 8 months) has additional negative impacts on soil propagules banks. Seed and propagule viability can decline substantially within the first 8 months and by 16 months there may be no viable propagules and few viable seeds at depths exceeding 1 m (Archibald, 2014; Mackenzie, 2013; Mackenzie and Naeth, 2010; Naeth et al., 2013). Loss of viability is due to anaerobic conditions (Archibald, 2014; Mackenzie, 2013; Mackenzie and Naeth, 2010; Naeth et al., 2013), high temperature and moisture (Rokich et al., 2000), in situ germination (Mackenzie, 2013; Rivera et al., 2012) and decay or rotting (Archibald, 2014; Mackenzie, 2013; Mackenzie and Naeth, 2010; Naeth et al., 2013)<sup>19</sup>. While not relevant to the discussion of re-disturbing sites for reclamation as sites that would be re-stripped would not have this material stockpiled for more than a few days, stockpiling effects are important to note as soils would have been stockpiled during the original disturbance to the wellsite when it was constructed. Propagule survival and expression at the placement (reclaimed) site is further affected by salvage depth. In the context of forest reclamation, topsoil is ideally salvaged as the LFH and the underlying Ah, Ahe and Ae mineral horizons; however, if the A horizons are greater than 15 cm, best practice is to limit the salvage depth to 15 cm and any additional Ae material below 15 cm should be salvaged separately (Alberta Environment and Sustainable Resource Development, 2013a). The actual depth at which salvage occurs affects the ratio of the litter layer to mineral soil. Increased mineral content may result in dilution of the propagule bank found in the litter layers, resulting in fewer propagules at the surface at placement; effects of differences in salvage depths on vegetation response may become more pronounced with deeper

---

<sup>19</sup> Despite propagule losses, these and other studies still conclude that use of forest floor material in oil sands mining reclamation is beneficial and that this material does perform better in terms of native plant establishment than other cover soil options (Archibald, 2014; Mackenzie, 2013; Mackenzie and Naeth, 2010; Naeth et al., 2013); however, this work is in the context of not having topsoil at all or using topsoil that has been stockpiled or that has been sourced from peatlands. In the context of wellsites and access roads, there may be a benefit of leaving topsoil in place rather than removing it and saving it for use at the end of reclamation (Frerichs et al., 2017).

salvage depths (Archibald, 2014; Mackenzie, 2013; Mackenzie and Naeth, 2010; Naeth et al., 2013)<sup>20</sup>. Deeper salvage depths (e.g., greater than 20 or 30 cm), while they tend to have negative impacts on propagule availability overall, may be beneficial for aspen regeneration from root propagules as the greater salvage depth can provide greater soil contact for root fragments (Wachowski, 2012)<sup>16</sup>.

The effect of the number of passes used during salvage and whether materials were piled separately or together was studied on OSE wellsites in northeastern Alberta; results were collected after 10 years of development. When the LFH and upper Ae horizon were salvaged together in one pass (although they were piled separately from lower Ae and portions of the B horizon), wellsites had greater balsam poplar density than when the LFH and Ae horizon (with some B horizon) were salvaged as two separate passes (densities of other tree species were not affected), and greater total deciduous tree density than when just the LFH horizon was salvaged (Frerichs et al., 2017)<sup>16</sup>. When LFH and Ae horizons were salvaged in two separate passes but piled together, wellsites had greater aspen and birch density and greater survival of planted spruce than when LFH and Ae horizons were salvaged in two separate passes but piled separately; differences were presumed to be due to the smaller surface area to volume ratio of the single pile which reduced root exposure to desiccation and freezing (Frerichs et al., 2017).

Propagule losses during salvage, stockpiling and placement may have more severe consequences for sites that had lower total abundances of propagules before disturbance. Outreach respondents noted that sites with shallow topsoil and sites with coarse textured soils and may be slower to recover from a second disturbance. Literature indicates that slower recovery on coarse textured sites is likely related to more limiting environmental conditions as well as lower propagule density. More productive stands on fertile soils have seed bank densities from 1,010 seeds/m<sup>2</sup> (Fyles, 1989) to 9,108 seeds/m<sup>2</sup> (Mackenzie and Naeth, 2010), whereas seed densities in coarse textured soils can be lower (e.g., 505 seeds/m<sup>2</sup> in a pine-alder forest (Fyles, 1989)). Propagule density and species richness of the propagule bank has been found to be positively correlated to soil water (Grandin, 2001). Propagule density also declines with forest age in some forests (Hills and Morris, 1992), although there have been noted exceptions (Granstrom, 1982).

Not only is excavation, stockpiling and replacement of soil relevant to the re-disturbance of the site for reclamation, but it is also pertinent in the context of understanding the previous history of site recovery. Once topsoil salvage and replacement during reclamation has occurred on a wellsite, the soil quality and

---

<sup>20</sup> These studies on salvage effects were conducted using topsoil materials that were only stockpiled for a short period of time, whereas on forested wellsites topsoil is stockpiled throughout the active life of the wellsite, which can vary widely; therefore, the studies are not necessarily representative of the conditions that would be

propagule bank is unavoidably reduced from the original undisturbed forest, and while the site can still recover into a functioning forested ecosystem after disturbance, its ability to recover a second time from a second disturbance may be more limited. Recruitment from the seed and propagule bank after the second disturbance will likely be reduced compared to the first disturbance as the site has not had as much time to re-develop the same propagule bank it had prior to initial disturbance.

Literature on recovery and succession after disturbance suggests that the frequency of disturbance is an important factor; when a second high intensity disturbance (i.e., soil re-stripping) occurs before the site has recovered from the first high intensity disturbance (i.e., initial construction and reclamation), the residual species that were present after the first disturbance (including species in the seed and propagule bank) may not be the same as after the second, and if the residual species required to direct succession along the desired pathway towards upland forest are not present after the second disturbance, recovery to upland forest may be delayed or may not be possible (Turner et al., 1998). Sites with natural vegetation encroachment may not be resilient to the kind of damage that would be required to correct landscape and soil deficiencies. This concept has been discussed in the context of oil sands reclamation; natural ecosystems have resilience in the early stages of development after disturbance due to an inherent historical legacy (i.e., seed and propagule bank, litter, coarse dead organic matter and nutrient capital), while reclaimed ecosystems have low resilience due to a lack of this historical legacy, although reclamation practices can be used to supplement the historical legacy and therefore increase resilience (Pyper et al., 2013; Welham, 2013). It is important to note that this lack of resiliency is not an indication that these sites are not ready to be issued a reclamation certificate – certification is achieved when it can be reasonably concluded that a site is on a trajectory to equivalent land capability.

**In summary, the effect of vegetation removal and soil disturbance on the rate of site recovery can be influenced by several factors, including:**

- **Extent of vegetation removal and soil disturbance (scale)**
- **Site history and construction practices (i.e., minimal vs. full disturbance)**
- **Ecosite, which is an indicator of the environmental conditions, but also the type of species that make up the plant community and their ability and strategies for ingress onto the site**
- **Composition of the propagule bank, and how it was impacted during the original disturbance (salvage depth, stockpiling duration) and during reclamation**
- **Time since original disturbance, diversity of the recovered plant community and resilience of the recovered site**

#### 4.4.2.2 *Potential for Weeds*

Another potential negative consequence of conducting traditional reclamation practices to correct deficiencies is weed invasion. Heavy equipment and vehicles that access the site to conduct reclamation work can be vectors for weed seeds and propagules. As previously discussed in Section 4.4.1.3, there are several potential negative outcomes of weed invasion. At newly disturbed sites, the primary concern is that weeds may establish before desirable native forb, shrub and tree seedlings and as a result out-compete, suppress and exclude their establishment. As noted earlier, desirable vegetation is more susceptible to weed invasion in its juvenile state due to height and root system development, and weeds would likely have the competitive advantage, particularly if they are able to occupy a large area and achieve taller canopies than desirable vegetation (Small et al., 2018). The potential for weeds is compounded at newly disturbed sites by the removal of vegetation and disturbance to soil which eliminates the competitive pressure exerted by existing vegetation and creates an open seed bed for weed establishment. Weed seeds that are present in the seed bank from prior disturbances and that have remained viable have the opportunity to germinate, establish and spread. Growth and spread of rhizomatous weed species that are present on site may be stimulated by soil disturbance through fragmentation and re-sprouting of rhizomes.

The potential problems discussed around weeds within the context of this report are specifically in reference to weeds invading sites that are disturbed to correct reclamation deficiencies. Previously (Section 4.3.1.4), weeds were discussed in the context of fully vegetated sites where weeds have persisted over time, and where the dynamics between weeds and desirable vegetation would be different.

**The potential for weed invasion after reclamation will be influenced by several factors:**

- **Extent of the vegetation removal and soil disturbance (scale). A smaller disturbance area reduces the potential for weed establishment**
- **Presence of weed populations currently on site and presence of weed seeds and propagules in the seed bank from previous weed populations**
- **Species-specific traits of weed species on and near the site related to dispersal (e.g., seed vs. rhizomes) and competitiveness**
- **Proximity of the site to other active sites, industrial traffic or agricultural areas, (discussed further in Section 4.4)**

#### 4.4.2.3 *Weed Control*

Weed control is another component of traditional reclamation practices required to meet the forested land criteria (Alberta Environment and Sustainable Resource Development, 2013a). The negative

consequences of the use of herbicides for weed control, based on outreach responses and on a recent literature review of weed control in the oil sands industry (Small et al., 2018), are as follows:

- Removal of and disturbance to vegetation on access roads
- Damage and mortality of desirable native vegetation from herbicide overspray, particularly as a result of broadcast spraying
- Impacts to ecological recovery. The removal of native forbs, shrubs or trees from the plant community through herbicide mortality impacts the composition, structure and function of the plant community and can alter the successional pathway of the site as a whole, which then has impacts on habitat provision and biodiversity (Alberta Sustainable Resource Development, 2004). Herbicide mortality can result in the loss of one to many species. When larger areas of vegetation are damaged, these large gaps are susceptible to invasion by another invasive non-native species
- Delay in reclamation certification application by at least one growing season (Alberta Environment and Sustainable Resource Development, 2013a)
- Time and resources spent on weed management

**The negative consequences of herbicide application will be influenced by several factors:**

- **Extent of weed population (scale)**
- **Choice of application method: broadcast vs. spot spraying**
- **Weed species and difficulty of control by herbicide**
- **Availability and composition of propagules to replace vegetation destroyed by herbicide application**

#### 4.4.3 *Remoteness and Access Considerations*

Several outreach respondents noted that remoteness of the site and access considerations must be taken into account in the decision to implement traditional reclamation approaches to correct deficiencies. In terms of potential negative consequences of implementing reclamation activities, disturbance to the access road was the primary focus point. To access remote sites, longer access roads must be cleared of vegetation, and the additional environmental impacts associated with this activity must be considered when weighing the net environmental benefit of reclamation to correct deficiencies. The number of creek crossings that are required to access a site was also raised as a factor to consider in the environmental cost of reclamation, especially as these areas are considered more sensitive to disturbance. The remoteness of the site also affects the exposure of the site to weed propagules. Sites that are closer to other active sites, industrial traffic or agricultural areas will likely receive more weed propagules through wind dispersal than more remote sites.

In terms of the impact of foregoing reclamation and leaving deficiencies in place, respondents noted that the remoteness of the site affects the potential use of the site by recreational users. At remote sites that are distant from populated areas or industrial facilities, the potential risk for recreational and traditional users is much lower. Access to the wellsite is another related factor. Wellsites with conspicuous, straight access roads that are accessible from public highways present a higher risk than wellsites with less visible access roads or those with access deterrents such as woody debris or other obstacles.

#### 4.4.4 Location Land Use Considerations

Outreach respondents noted several specific considerations related to where the site is located and the land use of the site, including:

- Species at risk habitat (most notably caribou). Reclaimed wellsites in species at risk habitat have the additional requirement of supporting the species at risk; the tolerance for deficiencies may be lower in species at risk habitat
- Pre-existing agreements and conditions with an overlapping tenure holder or stakeholders such as an FMA, grazing lease disposition or traditional users. Forest productivity and operability of the site for forestry equipment should be considerations when wellsites are located in FMAs. For grazing leases, the suitability of the wellsite for livestock grazing becomes a factor. Traditional users have requirements related to safety and compatibility of the site for their traditional use. One respondent noted that if there are multiple stakeholders that may be impacted, then it is generally harder to justify leaving deficiencies in place.
- White Area. Reclamation of forested sites in the White Area should consider the potential for cultivation.
- Timber value. From a forestry perspective, more productive timber areas are valued differently than marginal ones, and end goals for the site should take this into account
- Integrated land management. For example, the potential for the site for be used for recreational purposes (camping, staging for off-road vehicles, etc.)

#### 4.5 FACTORS AFFECTING THE DECISION TO ALLOW A VARIANCE TO CRITERIA

This section discusses the process for applying and approving a variance request, the information that must be submitted and factors affecting the decision to grant approval. This section does not discuss the technical (ecological) aspects of requests for variances as this was discussed in Section 4.4. This section assumes that when a mineral soil pad in a peatland is to be left in place the site becomes an upland forest site and the variance to criteria provisions in the forested criteria applies; considerations related to the change in land use are discussed below in Section 5.5.

The current guidelines for applying for a variance to criteria are provided in SED 002 (Alberta Energy Regulator, 2018). Several respondents noted that communication with the decision makers early in the

process to discuss the potential site limitations (ideally before a complete DSA or any reclamation work is done) is critical to gaining acceptance. Applicants have the option of getting variance requests pre-approved by the AER, before they apply for a reclamation certificate, which enables the reclamation certificate application to go through the “Baseline Review” process. Consultation with the AER indicated this is the preferred option and will ensure a site progresses through the certification process as efficiently as possible. Alternatively, applicants submit the request for variance with the reclamation certification application, and it goes through the “Additional Review” application process, which involves additional scrutiny from the regulator. Several respondents, including reclamation practitioners, industry and within government, noted that that it was not clear whether the Land Manager (i.e., AEP for public lands) must also approve the variance request or whether the AER makes this determination on its own. The outreach response suggests that the AEP is not involved in the variance request process and AER is responsible for making the decision.

The forested land criteria and SED 002 specify that a variance request must include a justification explaining why the site should be permitted to vary from the criteria and a rationale for the request, supported by acceptable references (Alberta Energy Regulator, 2018). As was noted earlier in Section 2.2, there is no clear guidance as to the specific types of information required by the AER to accept a variance request. **Outreach respondents generally agreed that the key focus of the justification is to provide a strong argument as to why the limitation or deficiency will not have adverse effects or impede equivalent land capability and ecosystem function in the long term. Site specific supporting information was also emphasized as an important component of the variance request. Respondents noted that applications that are not approved are those with a poor rationale, departing from the normal process and criteria, and have a lack of, or poor quality of, supporting information.**

Respondents provided a number of information types that could be used to support applications/decisions, ranging from simply providing a detailed site assessment (DSA) to very specific examples of application content including site photos, aerial photos, remote sensing, survey plans, construction records, disturbance details, pre-disturbance biophysical information (if available), site history of recreational use and pre-existing trails/access roads, regional information such as reports from the landscape analysis tool (LAT reports), as well as any information related to current and future overlapping land uses related to those factors identified in Section 4.4.4. Additional biophysical data collection not required by the forested lands criteria, but which demonstrates ecosystem function and equivalent land capability such as annual increment, wildlife use of the site, or comparisons of vegetation

composition (ecosites) on and off site were recommended. Comprehensive packages of information are generally well received. Some respondents suggested that information from literature or case studies has not generally been part of applications in which they were involved and that they preferred to focus on site-specific information. Others suggest that scientific literature and case studies are important for providing context.

Several respondents mentioned the importance of time and long-term implications as factors in the approval of variance requests. Respondents noted that there could be a minimum amount of time required to justify sites on the basis that vegetation is not being affected by deficiencies that have the potential to limit growth and succession (e.g., lack of topsoil), or to assess whether planted tree survival is acceptable; a minimum of 4 years was mentioned by one respondent, others referred to Reforestation Standards of Alberta (Alberta Agriculture and Forestry, 2018a), in which establishment is assessed at 4 to 8 years and performance at 11 to 14 years. Longer term monitoring is considered beneficial as part of a variance request to show the rate of recovery and demonstrate that the site is not limited by the deficiencies. In general, a need for long term certainty (centuries) in recovery trajectories was identified; regulators want to be confident that variances they approve will not become liabilities for the province. Also, in the context of time/site age, there was some acknowledgement that sites that have been revegetating for a long time (30+ years) are more likely to be approved for a variance, even if the vegetation productivity or other factors are not fully equivalent to off-site conditions; the focus is on function in general rather than on the comparison to off-site areas.

Providing an ecological cost/benefit analysis as part of the justification for a variance request was also suggested by some respondents, to compare the potential benefits achieved through additional reclamation compared to any environmental costs that may be incurred (as discussed in Section 4.4). One respondent noted that if there are opportunities to improve the site with minimal effort (e.g., work by hand), the expectation is that these efforts should be undertaken, rather than being justified through a variance request.

There was concern among some respondents that variance requests for sites that meet the landscape, soil or vegetation standards of the day but do not necessarily meet current standards will not be approved. Some of the comments from regulators indicated that the standards of the day may be used as a reference in approval of variances, but if a detailed site history is provided it is weighted higher during the decision process.



**There is uncertainty regarding the decision process as there is little guidance available as to the information required to inform the decision.** The need to develop a standard assessment methodology or framework for approval of variances was identified by practitioners, industry and government, to provide clarity on the type of information required to make decisions, and how this information is evaluated. Several respondents noted that a publicly available database of case studies to provide information on decisions for and against certification that have been made by the regulators to date would be very helpful, to track what conditions have been deemed acceptable and those that are not acceptable. The goal would be to enable more consistent decisions by the regulator and a more streamlined request process for practitioners.

#### **4.6 RECLAMATION OPTIONS FOR A VARIANCE TO CRITERIA**

As an alternative to applying for a variance to criteria to enable certification of deficiencies, there may be site-specific instances where minor additional reclamation work could be conducted to improve landscape, soil and vegetation characteristics that will not significantly affect the existing desirable vegetation. As was noted in Section 4.5, there is an expectation from regulators that opportunities to improve the site with minimal effort should be undertaken.

The following is a list of potential reclamation work to correct deficiencies that could be conducted by hand at sites with natural vegetation encroachment:

- Reducing the height and steep slopes of cut and fills or subsided areas with hand shovels and stabilizing these areas by revegetating them with transplanted woody vegetation collected from surrounding off-site areas or purchased nursery stock
- Re-distribute soil from windrows left in place with hand shovels to reduce the height or to create gaps in the windrow. Soils can be spread across the site in a thin layer or in strategic locations to address any issues with vegetation growth; mounded microsites could be created to encourage ingress of additional species diversity
- Re-distributing woody debris piles across the site to eliminate forest fire risk
- If ponding is a concern, create a small drainage channel through a corner of the site
- Increase species richness and diversity by transplanting woody vegetation collected from surrounding off-site areas or purchased nursery stock
- Add an amendment to supplement small areas of the site with reduced or no topsoil that has poor vegetation establishment and/or growth

#### **4.7 SUMMARY OF MAIN CONSIDERATIONS INFLUENCING VARIANCE DECISIONS**

Table 3 summarizes the benefits and drawbacks of traditional vs. modified reclamation (i.e., leaving features in place) for upland forested sites eligible for a variance to criteria.

**Table 3. Summary of benefits and drawbacks of traditional and modified reclamation for upland forested sites eligible for a variance to criteria.**

<b>Factor</b>	<b>Traditional Reclamation</b>		<b>Modified Reclamation</b>	
<b>Landscape Impacts</b>	<i>Benefit:</i> Corrects landscape deficiencies		<i>Drawback:</i> Landscape deficiencies left in place	
<b>Soil Impacts</b>	<i>Benefit:</i> Corrects soil deficiency, increased confidence in trajectory		<i>Drawback:</i> Soil deficiency left in place, reduced confidence in trajectory	
<b>Weed Impacts</b>	<i>Benefit:</i> Weed reduction and less uncertainty of weed effects on trajectory	<i>Drawback:</i> Herbicide application required	<i>Benefit:</i> Minimize herbicide application	<i>Drawback:</i> No weeds reduction and greater uncertainty of weed effects on trajectory
<b>Safety</b>	<i>Benefit:</i> Safety hazards reduced		<i>Drawback:</i> Safety hazards left in place	
<b>Cumulative Effects</b>	<i>Benefit:</i> No cumulative effects of deficiencies left in place		<i>Drawback:</i> Cumulative effects of deficiencies left in place	
<b>Existing Vegetation</b>	<i>Drawback:</i> Disturbance to vegetation		<i>Benefit:</i> No disturbance to vegetation	
<b>Ecological Recovery</b>	<i>Drawback:</i> Ecological impacts of re-disturbance		<i>Benefit:</i> No ecological impacts of re-disturbance	
<b>Potential for Weeds</b>	<i>Drawback:</i> Higher potential for weeds due to increased disturbance		<i>Benefit:</i> Lower potential for weeds due to reduced disturbance	
<b>Weed Control</b>	<i>Benefit:</i> Forest land criteria is met	<i>Drawback:</i> Damage from herbicide, impacts to plant community development	<i>Benefit:</i> Reduced damage from herbicides and less impacts to plant community development	<i>Drawback:</i> Forested lands criteria is not met

---

## 5.0 MINERAL SOIL PADS IN PEATLANDS

---

### 5.1 KEY CHALLENGES

Leaving mineral soil features (well pad or access road) in place in peatland settings has not been well studied or assessed (Figure 6). Literature review and consultation have indicated that there is a lack of information and case studies available to industry, practitioners and regulators to justify decisions to either leave a mineral soil pad in place or to reclaim it by partial or complete removal of mineral soil material. **Challenges arise in the management of mineral soil pads with natural vegetation encroachment when the site is not causing any adverse impacts off site and the vegetation on site meets the forested land criteria (with or without a variance to criteria).** A change in land use is required when assessing a site with different criteria from the original pre-existing conditions to the current surrounding or adjacent end land use (i.e., from peatlands to forested lands). In these cases, there is uncertainty regarding the process associated with a request for a change in land use, which is further discussed in Section 5.5. There is also uncertainty associated with the main factors to consider when assessing whether a mineral soil pad should be removed or can remain in place (Section 5.4). In addition, if the site is deemed acceptable to leave in place, there is uncertainty associated with the evaluation criteria, and the mechanism required to assess equivalent land capability, and what the implications are in terms of the Alberta Wetland Policy (Alberta Environment and Sustainable Resource Development, 2013b).

It is generally assumed that any effects a well pad or access road have in a peatland will continue over time. Depending on the type of feature construction and/or reclamation and the peatland setting the conditions may change over time. For example, subsidence of well pads in peatlands has been reported due to continued decomposition of peat under the weight of the well pad. Road subsidence can occur if the roads are no longer maintained and continue to lose material during spring melt and run off.

Given the lack of scientific evidence, case studies and the uncertainty associated with the current regulatory process, policies and criteria as to what the acceptable conditions are for a change in land use for a mineral soil pad within a peatland, very few sites are progressing through the certification process. Outreach response indicated that there is a tendency to default to “No” by AEP/AER regarding leaving mineral soil pads in place in peatlands. From the regulator’s perspective, given the uncertainties, it is easier to default to remove the mineral soil pad and return the mineral material to the borrow site (conservative approach), however very little ecological information is available to justify this decision. The ecological implications of pad removal need to be considered and weighed against the potential benefits,

particularly for sites with established vegetation. More clarity is needed in terms of defining (1) the process for a land use change request, (2) considerations required to assess when it would be deemed acceptable for a mineral pad to remain in place and the ecological costs and benefits of removal, and (3) acceptable site conditions to meet equivalent land capability and the requirements of a reclamation certificate application, including justifications for reclamation deficiencies associated with upland sites within peatlands.



**Figure 6. An example of a reclaimed well pad in a peatland.** Showing a naturally regenerated section (natural recovery), a fenced section with site preparation (mounding, ripping) and planting of seedlings, and a peatland section reclaimed by partial pad removal and donor fen moss transfer.

## 5.2 SITE CONDITIONS FOR MINERAL SOIL PADS IN PEATLANDS

Mineral soil pads in peatlands are constructed using fill material (typically clay) from a nearby borrow pit. This material is often unweathered parent material excavated from below the soil profile (i.e., C horizon material or deeper); quality of this material in terms of chemical and physical properties and its suitability as a reclamation substrate is variable across sites. Before mineral soil is placed on the wellsite, a geotextile is laid on the peat surface to act as a barrier between the peat and the pad; in some cases, a layer of corduroy (logs) is used instead of geotextile. Mineral soil pads are typically 0.5 to 1 m thick (though can be up to 1.5 to 2 m thick in rarer circumstances) (Acden Vertex Limited Partnership, personal communication 2019); pad thickness depends on the depth of the peat below the pad and engineering

considerations related to pad material and peat bearing capacity and type of operations/load occurring on pad. The peat below the pad is compressed by the placement of the mineral soil fill. Most consolidation occurs within the first 30 to 50 days following the placement of the fill material (Osisko et al., 2018a); however, additional, smaller scale consolidation occurs over time. The extent of compression and the timeframe over which it occurs depends on the peat physical characteristics, peat depth and the applied load (Osisko et al., 2018a). Padded access roads often have culverts installed to prevent water flow disruptions.

Topsoil was often not salvaged prior to the construction of mineral soil pads; and therefore is not available to be used in reclamation. In some cases, reclamation practices are conducted at abandonment with the intent of setting the site on a trajectory towards an upland ecosystem and can include recontouring, various decompaction techniques (e.g., ripping or discing) and revegetation through planting nursery stock or transplanted vegetation or seeding of grasses to stabilize the site.

Conditions of mineral soil pads and associated access roads left in place can vary from being completely devoid of vegetation to fully functioning upland ecosystems. Outreach response indicated that there are well over 1,000 mineral soil pads within peatlands in the forested region of Alberta that have had natural vegetation encroachment on the well pad and/or access road. Many of these sites would exhibit similar conditions as upland sites described in Section 4.2 and have one or more deficiencies in terms of vegetation composition and/or density, soils and landscape requirements to meet the forested lands criteria (Alberta Environment and Sustainable Resource Development, 2013a), however have established a functioning ecosystem.

### **5.3 RECLAMATION APPROACH FOR PAD REMOVAL**

Reclamation approaches to reclaim mineral well pads and associated features include complete and partial mineral removal, burial/inversion of mineral and peat soil, and various revegetation techniques. Although ground layer vegetation (e.g., bryophytes) are mentioned in the context of evaluating ecological function, outreach respondents focused primarily on revegetation techniques for woody vegetation (e.g., planting of stock seedlings in reference to uplands and leaving pads in place). The following section provides information based on recent research and case studies regarding reclamation of well pads and access roads through complete or partial removal of the mineral material and reestablishment of peatland characteristics.

Outreach respondents indicated that AEP/AER generally recommend partial removal and re-contouring of mineral well pads and/or access roads for transitional areas between uplands and peatlands; however, there was considerable inconsistency in responses as to whether partial removal of mineral material was a viable reclamation option given the uncertainty in meeting either (or both) upland or peatland criteria. Several respondents specified that partial removal and/or alleviation of adverse growing conditions on a mineral soil pad, such as compaction (deep ripping), was required to achieve equivalent land capability in the long term and others indicated that they would prefer to either completely remove the pad or leave it in place unaltered. One of the authors pointed out that there is inconsistency in the term partial pad removal, and that while many use the term to refer to vertical removal of pad material (i.e. reduce the thickness of the pad), the term can also refer to partial removal from a geospatial perspective, (i.e., removal of the entire pad on portion(s) of the site to create drainage channels or swales). In general, there was an overall reluctance to evaluate or adopt new reclamation or management approaches by industry, even when encouraged by the regulator due to the risk of not receiving a reclamation certificate at the end of life. **There is a need for more innovation and applied field trials to evaluate feasibility of different management and reclamation strategies.** Research has shown that complete and/or partial removal of mineral soil pads can effectively result in restoring peatland function in some scenarios and can be ineffective in others. Various reclamation techniques have been trialed and depending on the surrounding peatland and strategies deployed, the sites have either recovered relatively quickly or are on an alternate trajectory (as discussed in Section 3.2.2). A summary of recent case studies evaluating complete mineral soil pad removal (Section 5.3.1) and partial mineral soil pad removal (Section 5.3.2) is provided below and detailed in Appendix B. Based on an evaluation of recent case studies and outreach it can be concluded that **factors that influence reclamation success for mineral pad removal, and thus influence the decision to remove a pad or leave it in place include:**

- **The type of wetland (e.g. bog; treed poor fen, open graminoid fens)**
- **Regional hydrology and topography**
- **The availability of donor materials (Sphagnum mosses vs. fen mosses) for revegetation of mineral or peat substrates**
- **Proximity of a receiving site for borrow material**
- **Ability of equipment to manipulate site topography ('fluff' underlying peat material, scarification of mineral surface)**
- **Trenching to connect water flow and substrate moisture conditions**
- **Natural ingress of trees, shrubs, herbs, and mosses from nearby sources**

A summary of key factors affecting peatland function under different reclamation approaches for mineral soil pads within peatlands is provided in Table 4.

**Table 4.** A summary of key factors affecting peatland function under different reclamation approaches for mineral soil pads within peatlands.

Factor		Reclamation Approach for Mineral Soil Pad		
		Complete Removal	Partial Removal	Left in Place
Hydrology	Local	flow through	flow through and around the pad	flow under and around the pad
	Regional	no blockage to flow	potential blockage to horizontal and vertical water flow	potential blockage to horizontal and vertical water flow
	Water Table	at, near, above or below surface	at or above surface	below surface
	Drainage	easily to poorly drained, seasonally flooded	easily drained, seasonally flooded to dry	easily drained, dry within the root zone
Topography		flat to depressed, can lead to ponding	flat to rough, could be elevated relative to surrounding	flat to rough, elevated relative to surrounding
Vegetation	Trees	black spruce + larch	larch, poplar	upland species
	Shrubs	willow, birch	willow, birch	willow, buffaloberry
	Herbaceous	sedges, buckbean, cattail	sedges, horsetail, cattail	grasses, horsetail, cattail
	Bryophytes	<i>Sphagnum</i> to true mosses	true mosses, liverworts	no to low moss
Chemistry	Acidity/ Alkalinity	highly acidic to neutral	slightly acidic to neutral to alkaline	slightly acidic to neutral to alkaline
	Nutrient	residual mineral influence from clay overburden; low to moderate nutrients and cations	residual mineral influence from clay overburden; variable nutrients, cations, and salinity	variable nutrients, cations, and salinity
Soil		thick to shallow organic, all types of peat	shallow to thick mineral, loose to compacted, with geotextile liner or corduroy	thick mineral, loose to compacted with geotextile liner or corduroy
Carbon Dynamics		low to moderate productivity and decomposition, net uptake of carbon, peat accumulation	moderate to high productivity, high decomposition, net carbon uptake, slow peat accumulation	similar to upland; no to low net carbon uptake, low soil storage of carbon



### 5.3.1 Complete Mineral Soil Pad Removal

Several techniques have been trialed with varying results to completely remove mineral soil pads and restore peatland function (Appendix B provides a summary of recent case studies); peatland ecosystems have successfully been initiated in some but not all cases. The following summary provides insight into the more successful reclamation trials.

In 2012, researchers initiated a trial to examine complete removal of a mineral pad with inversion of the underlying peat substrate with or without burial of some of the mineral soil material (referred to as IPAD) in a treed bog/poor fen complex (Bird et al., 2017b). Heavy equipment was used to remove the layer of mineral fill that was higher than the low points of the hollows in the surrounding natural peatland. The mineral soil was returned to a nearby borrow pit used in the original well pad construction. In areas where peat under the mineral pad was deeper than 1 m, the remaining mineral material and geotextile was completely removed and the buried peat (up to 1 m deep) was ‘fluffed’ with an excavator bucket (Appendix B). The result after site adjustment was the creation of a uniform, flat peat surface with an elevation approximately 10 cm below the adjacent natural peatland hollows at the four corners of the pad. The Moss Layer Transfer Technique (MLTT) developed for harvested peat fields was applied to transfer moss fragments, along with roots, rhizomes, seeds, and spores from the surrounding cutlines to the site. Key learnings to date from the IPAD or inversion technique for complete mineral pad removal include:

- The site is well on its way towards a functional peatland. The site has passed two separate assessments using the provincial peatland criteria, in 2015 and 2018 and thus is considered to be well on its way towards a functional peatland
- The site has excellent vegetation cover. Mosses account for almost half (50%) of all vegetation. *Sphagnum* moss developed in the drier areas while true mosses dominated the low-lying areas
- Cattail was no longer abundant and dominant in wet areas 3 and 5 years after reclamation activities, and overall there was very few weeds present
- There was a good amount of litter accumulating across the site; there was no obvious distinction among different treatment areas and the site was stable without signs of erosion, gullyng or presence of industrial debris

Building on the learnings from the initial IPAD trial a second study was established in 2015 with complete removal of the mineral soil pad utilizing the peat inversion technique in a fen. Materials were returned to the original borrow pit at the time of reclamation. The buried peat was ‘fluffed’ to raise the surface elevation, then smoothed to remove air pockets and create a uniform surface. Donor moss was

immediately transferred from a nearby cutline, and the site was re-vegetated with black spruce (Appendix B). Additional learnings from the fen study include (NAIT CBR, personal communication 2018):

- Complete pad removal in a fen led to more flooding in early years
- Donor material from a bog site had little influence on revegetation within the fen; there was very low establishment of *Sphagnum* mosses across the site
- Hydrology and soil chemistry played critical roles in vegetation development
- Vegetation was marsh-like but ground layer is dominated by true mosses
- There was a visible decline in cattail dominance in many areas on the site 3 years after reclamation activities

Another technique trialed was the burial of wood chips under peat within a circumneutral fen (Appendix B). During construction, an average of 1 m of wood chips were placed directly on top of fen peat with a separating geotextile layer to develop an access road. In 2015, wood chips were inverted with buried peat to create a moist surface for fen vegetation reestablishment (Bird et al., 2017a). A similar approach to the IPAD technique was deployed and a dozer track packed the surface to reduce the elevation. The site was planted with black spruce and tamarack but otherwise left to naturally revegetate.

Two years following reclamation activities results indicated:

- The road surface is level with surrounding areas
- Significant increases in overall vegetation cover since 2016, driven by exponential growth of sedges and the establishment of mosses
- Planted tree seedlings are visually healthy although, woody species remain low in abundance and cover

### 5.3.2 *Partial Mineral Soil Pad Removal*

Partial mineral soil pad removal is often considered by researchers and practitioners alike to be a viable solution to cost effectively reclaim mineral soil pads within peatlands when the goal is to establish a functioning peatland ecosystem. Appendix B provides a summary of several case studies which have evaluated various techniques for partial mineral soil pad removal from various peatland complexes. Paludification was first trialed in 2007 (Vitt et al., 2011b) to initiate fen revegetation on re-wetted mineral substrates on in-situ well pads. The majority of mineral soil material was removed and trenches were created to connect the pads with the surrounding peatlands. The lowered soil surface was either 'fluffed' or 'left as is', then amended with various materials including wood chips and stockpiled peat and planted with various wetland species including willow cuttings, sedge transplants, and tamarack trees. Assessments in 2017 indicated that the site would not meet the peatland criteria due to the presence of a high percentage of undesirable species.

Another study by Gauthier et al. (2018) which evaluated mechanical shaving and recontouring of the mineral soil material to the average elevation of the surrounding peatland water table within a fen, followed by revegetation by hand with the MLTT technique found that true mosses such as woolly feather moss (*Tomenthypnum nitens*) and tufted moss (*Aulacomnium palustre*), both typical of fens established quickly, covering up to 58% of ground cover after only one growing season. The origin of the plant community, rather than the substrate type, was the determining factor for vegetation growth. *Sphagnum* mosses were abundant in the donor communities but did not establish successfully on the reclaimed mineral pad. Vascular plant establishment was slow and highly variable. Field observations in 2018, indicated that (1) different soil adjustment and vegetation treatments were no longer discernable from each other (Appendix B); (2) cattail was not the dominant species on site; and (3) shrub cover increased significantly while ground layer cover by true moss was approaching 100% in some areas.

Partial removal, planting, and natural regeneration of a mineral linear feature (airstrip) built in the 1960s through the edge of a peatland complex was initiated in 2014 (NAIT CBR, personal communication 2018). No buried peat or nearby donor peat material could be found so the area was reclaimed as a mineral wetland with a variety of stock seedlings planted in 2015. After four growing seasons, the site hydrology had stabilized, and the wetland was dominated by obligate wetland species (up to 45% percent cover) with a community similar to marshes (sedge and graminoid dominance) typical of the region. True mosses accounted for up to 15% of the total cover in many parts of the site (Appendix B), although they were not introduced in the initial revegetation but had come on site through water flow or wind.

A study in northeastern Alberta included partial and complete mineral soil pad removal from a treed rich fen in 2002, followed by spontaneous colonization by plants (i.e., no active revegetation strategy). Progressive learnings associated with mineral soil removal resulted in several reclamation techniques for evaluation. Key learnings from the trial included:

- Partial pad removal leaving remnant fill in place does not hinder peatland vegetation, particularly moss, development if the surface is suitably saturated
- Open water areas are too deep for most wetland species to establish, although floating moss mats start to occur along the edges in some areas
- Achieving proper surface elevation and restoring hydrological connectivity is critical to reclaim mineral material soil pads and deep open water should be avoided as much as possible
- Remnant fill left during well pad reclamation to peatland does not appear to result in large mineral nitrogen pools or elevated N<sub>2</sub>O emissions indicating that partial pad removal is likely a viable reclamation option considering biogeochemical function

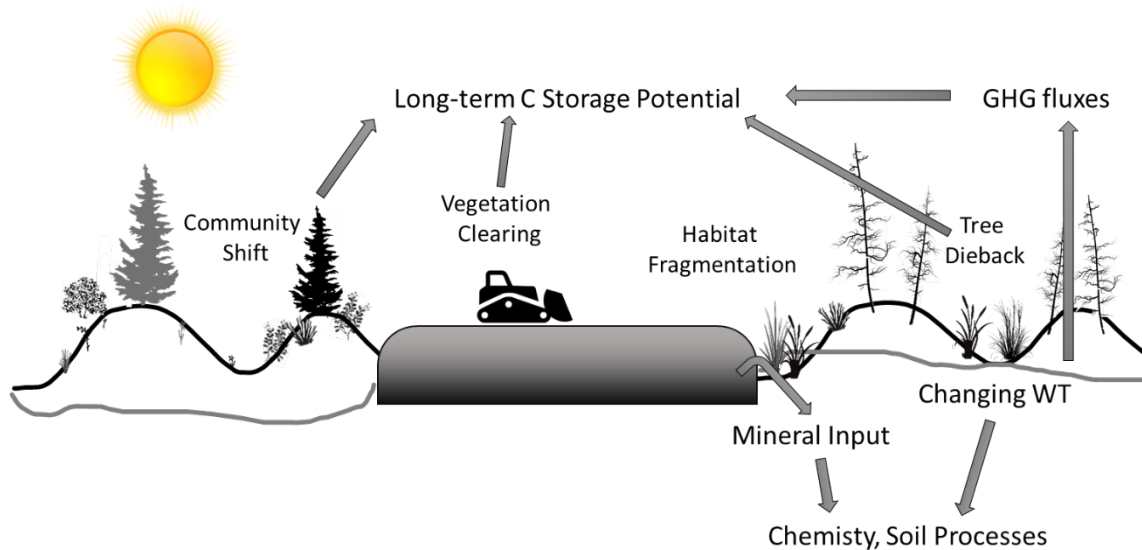
Mineral soil pad construction influences the applicable reclamation techniques and success as was demonstrated by a study evaluating partial pad removal in a treed poor fen (Osco, 2018). The study trialed mounding to bring buried peat to the surface and incorporation of remaining fill underneath resulting in a rough (up to 1 m relief) mounded surface of exposed peat and thin fill veneer across the site (Appendix B). Sub-sections of the site was later compacted to create smooth macroplots (<15 cm relief). Both rough and smooth macroplots were divided into sub-plots to receive live fen moss transfer or left for natural recovery. These sub-plots were further divided to compare natural recovery (with or without moss transfer) to recovery through live transplants of black spruce, Labrador tea, and sedges from adjacent fens. Shunina et al. (2016) studied early development of vegetation in 2012 and 2013, one and two growing seasons after reclamation. Rough areas had higher species richness through natural recovery of trees, shrubs, and perennial herbs. Survival of transplanted woody species were also greater at the top and mid positions. Acrotelm (fen donor) application had no impact on overall vegetation growth during the first two seasons. By 2017, there was no difference in species richness and diversity among different surface roughness or moss application. Natural regeneration of larch, willow, birch was common across the site regardless of surface treatment or moss application; however, in 2017, the entire site was dominated by herbaceous species such as *Carex* spp. and cattail. Bryophyte species richness was higher in plots which received moss application. Typical fen mosses such as common hook moss (*Drepanocladus aduncus*), rusty hook moss (*Drepanocladus revolvens*), small red peat moss (*Sphagnum capillifolium*), and wooly feather moss (*Tomenthypnum nitens*) were commonly associated with plots that received moss application (Osco, 2018).

Partial removal of an access road was completed in northeastern Alberta in multiple phases (Osco, personal communication, 2018). The initial trials were carried out in three blocks in 2010 by removing 80 cm of the mineral fill from each block (Appendix B) followed by the establishment of study plots where several revegetation treatments were applied. Additional trials were established in 2018 to test two different approaches of mineral removal and transfer of moss donors onto rewetted peat or mineral substrates. Learnings from the study thus far indicate:

- Deep inundation due to poor hydrological connectivity with surrounding areas leads to cattail dominance
- Soil amendments had limited impact on vegetation
- Fen communities can establish in areas with suitable moisture

#### 5.4 POTENTIAL ADVERSE ECOLOGICAL IMPACTS FROM MINERAL SOIL PADS IN PEATLANDS

Mineral soil pads and associated features affect a wide range of microclimatic, biogeochemical and hydrological parameters, which have the potential to alter ecosystem functions and services (Figure 7).



**Figure 7. Illustration of a mineral soil footprint and its potential impact on vegetation, hydrology, chemistry and carbon balance of surrounding peatlands.**

The impact of mineral soil pads and roads on peatlands can be direct through the loss of peatland vegetation and leaching of nutrients from the pad; or indirect through the changes in hydrology and vegetation in the surrounding areas. These effects vary across spatial and temporal scales. Placement of mineral soil on peat surfaces eliminates delicate living surface vegetation, consequently terminating CO<sub>2</sub> uptake via photosynthesis and the potential for long-term carbon storage through peat formation which is the easiest impact to quantify given the current understanding of peatland ecology. Removal of trees from the pad or road footprint will remove most of the aboveground biomass and net primary productivity (NPP), potentially reducing the net carbon uptake unless the understory productivity increases to compensate for the loss. This direct biomass loss can be estimated using aboveground biomass of typical boreal peatlands at 750 and 775 g/m<sup>2</sup> for fens and bogs and average NPP of 131 ± 208 g C/m<sup>2</sup>/yr in black spruce bogs of Alberta (Vitt et al. 2000, Wieder et al. 2009). Across North America, peatland biomass ranges from 351 to 7,300 g/m<sup>2</sup> and NPP ranges from 27 to 310 g/m<sup>2</sup>/yr in treed sites (Campbell et al., 2000). Therefore, removal of the woody layer alone will reduce carbon uptake of the peatland by these

amounts. Moreover, changes to local hydrology and thermal regime around the pad or road can also alter carbon exchange and storage, but direct quantification of such changes are not available.

Leaching of nutrients from mineral soil pads and roads can also alter the soil and water chemistry of the surrounding peatlands and lead to changes in plant growth, community composition, and the eventual loss of carbon sequestration and storage in the adjacent areas (Bocking et al., 2017; Johansen et al., 2017; Miller et al., 2015). Leaching from pad material can also impact the peat underlying the mineral soil pad itself. After five years some soil chemical and physical properties of the underlying peat in a treed fen in northeastern Alberta had changed (elevated ammonia, SAR, available sulphur, manganese and iron and reduced available phosphorus and potassium) compared to undisturbed controls, although many parameters were comparable to undisturbed control (most notably pH, total organic carbon, degree of decomposition, total nitrogen and bulk density) (Acden Vertex Limited Partnership, 2019). There were no differences in the growth of wetland grasses and sedges in greenhouse bioassays with material from under the pad and undisturbed soils (Acden Vertex Limited Partnership, 2019). Changes in soil quality were generally comparable to those noted during stockpiling of peat (Acden Vertex Limited Partnership, 2019).

Deposition of road dust on nearby peatlands is common and can affect chemistry and vegetation along roads. Dry deposition of nutrient-bearing aerosols can enhance *Sphagnum* growth (Gignac et al., 1994) through a fertilization effect. Wooded peatlands with trees of varying height received a higher amount of salt ions (Cl<sup>-</sup>) and total influx of nutrients than open peatlands with no trees (Schauffler et al., 1996). Within 10 m of a road, dust loading increased by 355% compared to areas without roads, leading to an annual deposition of 647 g/m<sup>2</sup> of gravel road dust (Creuzer et al., 2016). This increase declined to 46% at 40 m from a road. However, the effect of dust loading on water and soil chemistry was minimal compared to natural areas. This indicates that the impact of dust deposition will depend on the peatland type (bog vs. fen, treed vs. open), prevailing wind direction, water chemistry (alkaline fen vs. acidic bog) and the effect is confounded by other factors such as changing hydrology and water table. Dust loading of well pads is less studied and it is unclear if the impact is similar to that of linear disturbances.

Construction of mineral soil access roads and pads can greatly affect hydrology around the disturbance but only a few studies have aimed to quantify such impacts on peatlands. The weight of mineral soil materials causes peat compaction and reduces local hydraulic conductivity (Gillies, 2011; Partington et al., 2016). This can change water table position and temperature regimes around mineral soil padded roads and greatly affect local water table and surface/subsurface water flow around these roads (Plach et al.,

2017; Strack et al., 2018), with flooded conditions on the upstream areas and dry conditions in the downstream areas. The impacts of mineral soil padded roads may differ depending on the peatland type they are situated within and the direction of water flow relative to the road (perpendicular or parallel). Saraswati et al. (2019) studied two access roads built in a treed bog and a rich fen near Peace River, Alberta. They found that the construction of access roads disturbed the surface and sub-surface water flow at the bog, where the road was perpendicular to the water flow, but that the effect was minimal at the fen, where the water flow was parallel to the water flow. At the bog site, water flow was reduced and water table raised along the road. Culverts provide a point source of water transportation to the downstream areas but their effects were only evident close to the road and the water was not evenly distributed in the downstream areas. In the flooded areas, phenol oxidase and hydrolase activities were significantly higher than those in the undisturbed areas, suggesting that access roads may cause enhanced decomposition and ultimately carbon loss from the upstream side with a raised water table (Saraswati et al., 2019). This loss can be further exacerbated if the peat-forming bryophyte ground layer is replaced by vascular species (graminoids and *Typha*) which decompose more easily. On the downstream side, lowered water table may lead to vegetation shift and changes in net carbon balance. Wood (2010) found enriched water chemistry and shifts in vegetation communities within 50m of a mineral haul road on the upstream side. Downstream vegetation was less affected, and the water table responds differently to the road on the upstream and downstream sides. Munir et al. (2014) found a significant increase of coverage of shrubs and lichens in the hummocks and hollows in a treed bog after ten years of water table drawdown for peat harvesting. Drainage induced changes in vegetation led to a shift from a net sink of 70 to 92 g C/m<sup>2</sup> to a net source of 23 to 27 g C/m<sup>2</sup> (Munir et al., 2014). Willier (2017) found increased canopy cover and tree species composition on the downstream side of roads compared to the downstream side. Species richness increased on the upstream side of a bog and on the downstream side of a fen. Road orientation, substrate texture, landscape position, and peatland type all had impact on how the vegetation communities responded to roads. The long-term effect of changing water table and changing water flow on vegetation and ecosystem function as a result of mineral well pads and roads is unclear and requires additional research.

Canada's boreal forests are home to thousands of different species of birds, mammals, reptiles, amphibians, insects and fish. In Alberta, mature, treed bogs are important shelter and foraging ground for woodland caribou, a threatened species at risk. Human activities including in-situ exploration and extraction, forestry, and urban development are known to cause degradation and fragmentation of

wildlife habitat in the boreal. Linear disturbances (e.g., all season roads, seismic lines) in particular have been considered the leading cause of caribou population decline (Boutin et al., 2012; Finnegan et al., 2018). Clearing and poor regeneration of the woody layer provides corridors that connect upland and lowland habitats, thus reducing the spatial separation between wolves and caribou (Latham et al., 2011). Facilitated by the easily travelable linear corridors, the likelihood that wolves will encounter and kill a caribou in already limited habitat (Latham et al., 2013) increases significantly. Roads with moderate traffic act as a semipermeable barriers to caribou movement (Dyer et al., 2002), which may exacerbate habitat loss through avoidance by caribou in already limited space (Dyer et al., 2002; Schindler et al., 2006). Wolf packs prefer areas close the roads (within 25 m of roads), trails, and railway lines compared to high-use roads and trails (Houle et al., 2010; Whittington et al., 2005). Industrial stream crossings can change abiotic habitat characteristics in freshwater ecosystems, restrict biotic connectivity and impact fish community structure at the whole-stream and within-stream scales (Maitland et al., 2016). Hanging culverts (e.g., outfall elevated above the stream surface) associated with roads crossing wetlands are known to cause stream fragmentation and create upstream movement barriers for fish communities (Park et al., 2008). Roads are also found associated with the invasion of exotic earthworms, facilitated by vehicle traffic and bait abandonment (Cameron et al., 2008). To conserve and restore fragmented habitat for caribou population, restoration of linear features has been a high priority initiative among government, industry, and the general public (Pigeon et al., 2016; Ray, 2014). Studies that have evaluated linear restoration effectiveness in terms of caribou habitat conservation are limited (Vinge and Lieffers, 2013) and evidence of positive impact on caribou population is scarce (Pyper et al., 2014).

In summary, the potential impacts of mineral soil pads and roads in boreal peatland ecosystems include:

- Clearing of vegetation and elimination of primary productivity and long-term carbon accumulation potential of the pad or road area
- Changes in greenhouse gas balance and long-term carbon sequestration potential over the affected areas
- Mineral soil impact on chemistry of the surrounding areas and underneath the pad or road through leaching and dust deposition
- Changes in water flow and local hydrology and loss of water regulation function
- Altered growth and shift in vegetation community around the footprint, especially associated with access roads
- Reduced habitat value and biodiversity (e.g., linear features, habitat fragmentation)
- Responses to mineral features depend on interacting factors such as landscape position, regional hydrological regime, substrate type, peatland setting, and the orientation and distance from mineral feature



## 5.5 PROCESS AND FACTORS AFFECTING THE DECISION TO LEAVE A MINERAL SOIL PAD IN PLACE

In the context of this section, only mineral soil pads left in place in a peatland that are reclaimed to upland forests are considered. Pads left in place in peatlands that have sunk into the peatland and are on a trajectory towards a peatland end land use (i.e., peat-forming species are developing) are not considered.

### 5.5.1 *Mineral Soil Pad Impacts*

The preceding section (Section 5.4) described the impacts that can occur when a mineral soil pad or road is left in place in a peatland. **In the decision to leave a mineral soil pad or road in place in a peatland, whether or not significant adverse effects occur is a key consideration. Outreach respondents tended to focus most on effects to hydrology (inhibition of off-site surface and subsurface water flow) as a key factor, but subsequent effects to vegetation in the surrounding peatland were also a significant concern.** Typical effects to surrounding vegetation observed by respondents included vegetation (tree) mortality, vegetation appearing unhealthy, or changes in the vegetation community composition. One outreach respondent specified that in the decision to leave a pad or road in place that hydrology data from piezometers are not required and that changes that can be observed such as ponding/damming/flooding or vegetation changes would be sufficient; there is uncertainty on this topic from other respondents and a more formalized approach to detect and quantify hydrology impacts may be required to inform decisions on whether to leave pads in place.

**The frequency and severity of off-site hydrologic impacts (and subsequent effects on vegetation) have been found to vary with:**

- **Wetland type (bog vs. fen)**
- **Direction of water flow relative to the feature (perpendicular vs. parallel)**
- **Type of feature (pad vs. road)**
- **Size of feature**

Some outreach respondents felt that impacts of mineral soil pads or roads left in place were more common in bogs rather than fens. Research noted in Section 5.3 and 5.4 suggests that the effect of wetland type must be considered in the context of the direction of water flow relative to the feature (whether water flow is parallel or perpendicular); impacts may occur in bogs if the water flow is perpendicular to the road, while impacts may not occur in fens if the flow is parallel to the road. The type of feature is also an important factor. **Outreach respondents felt that access roads were more likely to have impacts than well pads.** As was noted in Section 5.4, there has been little work on the actual impact

of the well pad itself while the negative impact of access roads appears to be well documented, although processes and methodologies to quantify impact are still lacking. One outreach respondent noted that the size of the pad should be a consideration, as 4 m x 4 m pads at well centre are less likely to have an impact compared to a full lease (e.g., 100 m x 100 m).

Impacts to hydrology related to culvert removal along roads is another consideration. If the culverts remain in place, there is a potential for them to become blocked by debris over time and cease functioning as a conduit for water flow across the road. If the road is left in place but culverts have been removed and the mineral road fill above them was peeled back onto either side to create gaps along the road that act as channels for water flow, impacts to water flow may be reduced.

Respondents also noted concern about the impact of the mineral material on the surrounding peatland in terms of water and peat chemistry. Similarly, impacts to the former vegetation underlying the mineral soil pad or road footprint and resulting effects on carbon sequestration and wildlife habitat have already occurred during construction and cannot be avoided, but the permanent loss of these functions is a consideration if the pad or road is left in place.

Off-site effects, and acceptability of the mineral soil pad or road left in place, may also be affected by the stability of the pad or road, which can be modified by any reclamation practices that were implemented. Outreach respondents considered the occurrence of erosion, slumping and sedimentation into the surrounding peatland to be factors. Pads or roads that had been recontoured during abandonment to minimize these effects, and blend into the surrounding landscape are viewed more favourably (as discussed further in Section 5.4.2 on regional considerations).

### 5.5.2 *Cumulative Effects and Regional Considerations*

Cumulative impacts of multiple mineral soil pads and roads on local and regional peatland hydrology, chemistry, vegetation, and greenhouse gas fluxes, and how the impacts vary in different types of wetlands (bogs vs. fens) were highlighted by both regulator and industry outreach respondents as key considerations as well as key knowledge gaps in the decision to leave a mineral soil pad in place. **Currently, where pad or road density is high, networks of pads or roads are present, or the pad or road is in close proximity to other infrastructure, approval is less likely; however, there is a need for establishing a cumulative effect threshold based on scientific and geographical approaches to allow a proportion of wetland in a given area to be “lost” without significant degradation of function of the region. This is a major knowledge gap.**

As noted in Section 4.4.1.5, the factors to consider in the discussion of cumulative effects include:

- Actual negative impact of the mineral soil pad or road left in place
- Number of other mineral soil pads or roads left in place in the local and regional area
- Size of the local or regional area over which cumulative effects are determined
- Scale and impact of other human impacts in the local or regional area
- Sensitivity of the ecosystem, or receptors within that ecosystem (e.g., caribou in peatlands), to cumulative effects

Another regional consideration identified by outreach respondents was proximity of the site to other upland areas. If the surrounding area is a mosaic of upland forests, bogs and fens, or a transitional area between upland and peatland, an upland forest on a pad or road left in place is considered more appropriate by many outreach respondents than if the surrounding area is a large, uninterrupted fen or bog. Alternatively, some respondents suggested that landscape diversification of an area with a large proportion of peatland could be a rationale for leaving a mineral soil pad or road in place with an upland forest plant community; one respondent noted that uplands may act as wildlife refuge within a large peatland area.

**Similarity of the pad or road left in place to both natural upland landforms and vegetation communities were also factors raised by outreach respondents. It is important to consider whether the pad left in place has been recontoured into a landform with a more natural appearance such as a hill, hummock or dune-like feature consistent with natural uplands, and whether the upland vegetation communities developed on pads are representative of locally common upland ecosites in the region or natural subregion.**

Topography of the site relative to the immediate surrounding areas was another factor noted by respondents. If the site is in a transition zone between upland and peatland, it can more easily be recontoured to be compatible to the surroundings (i.e., pad material) can be moved to the upland portion of the wellsite) than if the site is surrounded by a peatland, which is generally flat; however, pads or roads surrounded by peatlands can be recontoured to have a gradual transition from the pad or road surface to the surrounding peatland, which some would consider more acceptable to be left in place (e.g., hills and dune-like features, as previously mentioned).

### 5.5.3 *Upland Function*

In addition to whether the mineral soil pad or road left in place has off-site impacts, **the ability of pad or road to support a functioning upland ecosystem is another important factor.** Outreach responses

suggested that whether natural recovery or revegetation is proven successful is a factor that is weighed in approval, but regulators do not consider vegetation alone to be a high priority or an appropriate justification to leave a pad or road in place. Overall it seems that industry and consultants are more likely to consider vegetation re-establishment as a condition that would merit leaving a pad or road in place, whereas regulators consider the landscape and soil factors to be more important considerations for long term sustainability. Determination of the success of natural recovery or revegetation on mineral soil pads left in place varied among respondents. There was a focus on functioning forest ecosystems that meet the forested land criteria and is on a trajectory to achieve equivalent land capability, with seemingly low tolerance for sites dominated by grasses, agronomics or non-native species. There is a lack of clarity and consistency on the reclamation expectations for sites with mineral soil pads left in place that meet the standards of the day but not the current forested land criteria. Outreach responses on the requirements of a functional ecosystem on reclaimed wellsites is discussed further in Section 3.1.2.

Lack of topsoil on mineral soil pads left in place was seen by some respondents as a source of uncertainty in the ability of the pad to be successfully reclaimed. Others were more confident that amendments could be used to create a growing medium for plants in areas that were lacking. Reclamation of wellsites with no topsoil was discussed in Section 4.4.1.2 in the context of upland sites. Constraints related to lack of topsoil would be similar for mineral soil pads left in place; however, there are two main differences: (a) because the site is not surrounded by an upland forest, there is a lack of nearby propagules to disperse onto the site to compensate for the lack of propagules that would have been found in the topsoil and (b) the soil chemical and physical properties of the upland subsoil (B horizon) may be different than the mineral soil pad material which was excavated from a borrow pit, likely at a depth below the B horizon.

There are no peer-reviewed studies on mineral soil pad revegetation through natural recovery that examine propagule dispersal onto mineral soil pads, but reports and anecdotal evidence suggest that natural recovery in these circumstances is generally slow and that planting is typically needed to achieve certification within a reasonable timeframe (Osko and Glasgow, 2010).

Soil chemical and physical properties of the pad were noted by respondents to be a factor in the decision to leave a mineral soil pad in place. For example, pad material with elevated sulphate concentrations may not be acceptable to be left in place, although one respondent contended that the net environmental benefit of moving that material to a borrow pit where the elevated sulphate concentration would continue to be a problem should be a factor, as will be discussed in Section 5.4.4. In terms of soil physical properties, several respondents felt that the application of decompaction measures was a prerequisite

for approval of a mineral soil pad left in place, to create a suitable growing medium for plants; there were uncertainties raised about the capability of the site to achieve equivalent land capability (despite vegetation encroachment) if compaction was not alleviated.

Respondents noted that whether geotextile or corduroy was present under the mineral soil pad or road was a factor in whether the pad or road could be left in place. Geotextiles left in place can create a hazard for wildlife, as there is potential for animals to become ensnared in pieces of geotextile exposed at the surface, typically around the edges of the pad. Removal of geotextile was noted by respondents to be challenging. **Respondents also commented on the impacts of geotextile and corduroy on rooting medium restrictions; responses were mixed. One respondent felt that filter cloth underneath the pad prevents root penetration and development and does not provide an appropriate rooting medium for plant growth, while another respondent found that geotextiles tend to settle below the water table and that it is the water table rather than the geotextile that limits root growth; a third respondent felt that this was an area of uncertainty that was not well understood.** Based on literature review and field measurements, the maximum rooting depth of the tree and shrub species of forested areas in Alberta has been found to be 1.5 m for fine-grained soils and 3.0 m for coarse-grained soils (Millennium EMS Solutions Ltd., 2013). Water table does play a role in determining rooting depth; in water saturated environments, rooting depths are shallow to avoid oxygen stress below the water table (Fan et al., 2017). The same species can have different rooting depths with different topographic positions and water table depths (Fan et al., 2017). As a result, mineral soil pad depth will be a key factor in whether rooting medium restrictions occur.

#### 5.5.4 *Pad Removal and Net Environmental Benefit*

**Net environmental benefit was frequently stated by practitioners and industry as a rationale to justify leaving mineral soil pads in place, noting that that the environmental costs of pad removal in some cases can outweigh the benefits and must be considered on a site by site basis.** Damage to the borrow pit was a commonly cited environmental cost, as was damage to the existing vegetation on the access road to mobilize heavy equipment required to implement pad removal. The main benefits of pad removal are the re-creation of peatland ecosystems and restoration of peatland functions including carbon sequestration and wildlife habitat, as well as reduced uncertainty about cumulative effects of pads left in place. **While there were significantly different opinions on the subject of leaving pads in place, several**

respondents agree that there is a need to empirically and objectively evaluate the actual ecological costs and benefits of pad removal.

Some respondents point to the uncertainty of success in re-creating functional peatland ecosystems when pads are removed as a justification for leaving the pad in place. While some respondents have observed successful pad removal for both fens and bogs, and noted that the type of peatland is a factor in recovery from pad removal as fens tend to recover more quickly, there was uncertainty among respondents on the following topics:

- Extent of peat compression under the pad, and how this is impacted by the thickness and overall weight of the pad
- Extent of peat rebound after the pad is removed and how this is impacted by the duration of the pad being in place and thickness of the pad
- Potential for and risk of minimal peat rebound and the creation of an open water body with cattails instead of a site on a trajectory to a functional peatland
- Impacts to underlying peat chemistry resulting from the pad material, and how those changes may impact a developing plant community after removal of the pad

Research on many of these topics are underway, as described in Sections 5.3 (case studies) and Section 5.4. **As borrow pits are typically the only available location to put the clay material from the pad for conventional well sites<sup>21</sup>, the conditions of the borrow pit associated with the mineral soil pad and the type of ecosystem that has developed there are important factors. Respondents noted that borrow pits that are not revegetated or that are revegetated as upland sites are less likely to be viewed as mitigating factors in the decision to remove a pad.** In fact, if the borrow is degrading and not reclaimed, returning the clay material to that borrow pit would return it to a productive forest, creating an incentive for mineral soil pad removal. **Alternatively, if the borrow pit is revegetating into a wetland ecosystem that provides wildlife habitat (or even other uses such as fire control), it is more difficult to justify removing the pad.** Some respondents suggested that the wetland that would be destroyed on the borrow pit to replace the clay material could be a close equivalent to the wetland that will be created on the former mineral soil pad location. This is a value judgement that was not shared by all respondents. Implications of Alberta's Wetland Policy (Alberta Environment and Sustainable Resource Development, 2013b) for wetland avoidance, minimization of impacts and replacement must be considered. **Respondents also brought up challenging logistics in returning mineral fill to a borrow pit that has**

---

<sup>21</sup> Re-use of the fill material for construction of another pad or road is not discussed here as it is assumed to be rare in the context of conventional well sites. One respondent noted that mineral fill from peatlands with less than 1.5 m of peat is easier to remove and re-use. [93]

recovered to a wetland, including pumping the water out and working with saturated soils, as mitigating factors in the decision to leave a pad in place. The amount of mineral material that would require placement in a borrow pit (which is determined by the depth and size of the pad), was noted as another factor to consider. Overall, the importance of condition of the borrow pit as a factor in leaving a mineral soil pad in place was considered to be a lower priority by some respondents than impacts to hydrology and surrounding areas, cumulative effects and regional implications.

The damage to vegetation on the access road was raised by respondents as another source of environmental damage (cost) to pad removal. **As with upland sites, remoteness of the site, length of the access road and the number of creek crossings are factors associated with this that can increase the amount of environmental damage that is incurred.** Longer access roads represent a larger area requiring disturbance. Creek crossings are considered to be more sensitive to disturbance. **While several respondents suggested that remoteness of the site has often been a driving factor in leaving a mineral soil pad in place, one respondent noted that remoteness of the site should be given lower priority in the decision making process for padded sites than for upland sites, as the size and value of a pad removal project is large enough to warrant the disturbance to the access road, whereas for upland sites, the importance of fixing deficiencies may be smaller and therefore disturbance to the access road is more difficult to justify.**

**Another potential environmental cost of pad removal raised by respondents was the potential for weeds and invasive species associated with excavating, hauling and placing pad material in a borrow area.** This is discussed in further detail in the context of upland sites in Sections 4.4.2.2 and 4.4.2.3. Remoteness of the site and proximity to sources of weeds (active sites, industrial traffic or agricultural areas) will be factors in the potential for weeds.

#### 5.5.5 *Location and Land Use Considerations*

Outreach respondents noted several specific considerations related to where the site is located and the land use of the site, including:

- Species at risk habitat (most notably caribou and caribou calving areas). Reclaimed wellsites in species at risk habitat have the additional requirement of supporting the species at risk; the tolerance for leaving mineral soil pads in place may be lower in species at risk habitat
- Pre-existing agreements and conditions with an overlapping tenure holder or stakeholders such as an FMA, grazing lease disposition or traditional users. Forest productivity and operability of the site for forestry equipment should be considerations when wellsites are located in FMAs. For grazing leases, the suitability of the wellsite for livestock grazing becomes a factor. Traditional

users have requirements related to safety and compatibility of the site for their traditional use. One respondent noted that if there are multiple stakeholders that may be impacted, then it is generally harder to justify leaving deficiencies in place.

- Recreational users. The potential for the site to be used for recreational purposes (camping, staging for off-road vehicles) and the adverse effects of trails on the peatland if the mineral soil pad was removed must be considered.
- White Area. Reclamation of sites in the White Area should consider the potential for cultivation.
- Proximity to private land. There may be an increased potential for future development if the site is close to private land.
- Proximity to areas protected by other dispositions (PNT, CNT, provincial or federal park).

## 5.6 PROCESS AND FACTORS AFFECTING THE DECISION TO GRANT A CHANGE OF LAND USE

This section discusses the application and approval process for a change in land use, the information that must be submitted and factors affecting the decision to grant approval. This section does not discuss the technical (ecological) aspects of a change in land use as this was discussed in Section 5.5.

Real world examples, a database of case studies are needed, and more research are required to understand the environmental implications of removing and/or leaving a mineral soil pads in place. Also access to current research findings would help understand the impact of mineral soil pads in peatlands.

**Checklists, guidelines, and a basic framework need to be developed to generate appropriate justification for accepting or rejecting industry requests regarding mineral soil pads in peatlands.**

Guidance on the process of applying for a change in land use is provided in SED 002 (Alberta Energy Regulator, 2018). **Requests for a change in land use must be approved by the Land Manager (and any occupants) before a reclamation certificate application is submitted, and signed documentation of the approval of the change in land use must be submitted with the application** (Alberta Energy Regulator, 2018). Several respondents noted that communication with the regulators early in the process (ideally before any reclamation work is completed) is critical to approval of the request, as it allows for their input to be incorporated into reclamation plans as they are being developed. **Although SED 002 does specify that AEP is considered the Land Manager on public lands, and as such would be responsible for approving land use changes, several respondents, including reclamation practitioners, industry and government, noted that there continues to be confusion as to whether AEP or AER is responsible for approving the change in land use.**

The overall goal of the request for land use change application is to provide an appropriate rationale for change in land use with detailed, site-specific background information. **Responses from regulators suggest that they consider a rationale appropriate if it is ecologically- rather than cost-based; arguments**



based solely on the hypothetical risk of environmental damage caused by pad removal that are perceived to be driven by a desire to avoid reclamation are not viewed favourably. Decision makers want to see empirical data and ecological cost/benefit analysis specific to the site in question. Respondents noted that a request for a change in land use is very similar to a reclamation certificate application in that it must show that the site meets equivalent land capability and provides necessary ecosystem functions, but respondents also note that this alone is not sufficient. Requests must also show that there are no risks of adverse effects to off-site areas, and must consider cumulative effects and how the site fits into the regional landscape. Consideration of associated borrow pits is important; if a borrow pit is available for the mineral material to be returned to, requests for a change in land use tend not to be approved.

Respondents have noted a reluctance on the part of the regulator to approve changes in land use, and significant variability in response to requests. This hesitation appears to stem from a need for a more thorough understanding of the long terms effects of mineral soil pads left in place on peatland hydrology and vegetation and the cumulative effects of multiple pads. Additionally, there is a concern among regulators of appearing to value forests more highly than wetlands.

SED 002 provides the following list of information that applicants may provide for a change in land use, including guidance specific to the change from peatland to upland forest (Alberta Energy Regulator, 2018):

- Topography relative to adjacent developed land
- Pre-disturbance or off-site community type (e.g., ecosite phase, ecological range site, agronomic community or Alberta wetland classification)
- Current vegetation community type and site photos
- Adjacent land use: distance to cultivation, grassland, Green Area boundary (as relevant)
- Access: distance, topography, presence or absence of impact to hydrology and off-site vegetation
- Soil: A horizon and subsoil colour, texture, acidity, electrical conductivity, sodium adsorption ratio, and stoniness
- Climate class
- Agricultural capability class for cultivated lands (as appropriate)
- Development plan for alternative development (e.g., recreational site)
- Rationale for the change in land use
- Site description, photographs, survey plan of the site
- Peatland type
- Presence/absence of subsurface or surface water impacts to vegetation
- Absence/presence of locally common upland communities and type

Respondents suggested that in addition to this information, detailed site assessments (DSAs), site sketches with drainage direction, peat depth information, construction records, reclamation details, site history of recreational use and pre-existing trails/access roads, regional information such as reports from the landscape analysis tool (LAT reports), as well as any information related to current and future overlapping land uses related to those factors identified in Section 5.5.5. In particular, reclamation details provide an important source of information about how the limitations of the site were taken into account, and the mitigative measures and adaptive management that were applied. In cases where additional reclamation is intended, some respondents have had success with submitting a reclamation plan to AEP as part of the application. Additionally, one respondent remarked that an analysis of the suitability of the **target ecosite to the actual soil characteristics on the pad would strengthen the request.**

**Agreements put in place when the disposition was granted or renewed were a primary consideration for approval of change in land use requests for many respondents, especially if the is still owned by the original owner.** These agreements may have specified the reclamation plans that were intended to be employed, and if those plans included a return to equivalent land capability as existed prior to disturbance (with no change in land use), then this is the expectation from regulators.

**As with requests for variances, several respondents mentioned the importance of time and long-term implications as factors in the approval of changes in land use. Respondents noted that a longer monitoring time frame to manage risks associated with the conditions on the pad left in place that have the potential to limit recovery of ecosystem function (e.g., lack of topsoil and local propagule sources) is viewed positively, and would provide more certainty that the site is on a trajectory to achieving equivalent land capability.** As with requests for variances, a minimum of 4 years of vegetation growth was suggested by one respondent as a requirement for applications. Expectations for reclamation based on how long the site has been in place and the requirements under which it was constructed is another factor raised by respondents. **As was noted for upland sites, how this is evaluated in the approval process is not clearly defined.**

Several suggestions were made regarding the need for decision support tools and process flow descriptions to help users provide better information and help regulators make more consistent decisions. The need for a standardized assessment framework and methodology to approve requests for a change in land use was mentioned more than once. Several respondents noted that a publicly available database of case studies that would keep track of the following:

- Sites that were and were not certified (i.e., conditions that were and were not deemed acceptable)
- Reclamation practices that have worked or not worked in different areas of the province
- Sites that have long term results to focus on longer term implications for ecosystem function and equivalent land capability

Research findings and literature were noted by several respondents to be a necessary piece of understanding the environmental implications of pads left in place, and while not necessarily required to be included in applications, would serve to inform the application and approval decision making process. Knowledge gaps identified by respondents are discussed further in Section 7.0.

## 5.7 SUMMARY OF MAIN CONSIDERATIONS INFLUENCING PAD REMOVAL DECISIONS

Table 5 summarizes the benefits and drawbacks of mineral soil pad removal vs. leaving mineral soil pads in place in peatlands and reclaimed them to upland ecosystems.

**Table 5. Summary of the main considerations for pad removal vs. leaving mineral soil pads in place in peatlands.**

Factor	Pad Removal	Leaving Pads in Place
<b>Pad Impacts</b>	<i>Benefit:</i> Actual or potential pad impacts to hydrology, vegetation, greenhouse gas fluxes, peat chemistry and wildlife are removed; peatland ecosystem recovery may occur	<i>Drawback:</i> Actual or potential impacts to hydrology, vegetation, greenhouse gas fluxes, peat chemistry, or wildlife may occur; loss of peatland area that formerly existed under the pad
<b>Cumulative Effects</b>	<i>Benefit:</i> No cumulative effects of pads left in place	<i>Drawback:</i> Cumulative effects of pads left in place may occur
<b>Proximity to Other Upland Areas</b>	Leaving a pad in place may be appropriate if the surrounding area is a mosaic of upland forests, bog and fens, or if it is located in a transitional area between upland and peatland; whereas, leaving a pad in place may be less appropriate if the surrounding area is a large, uninterrupted bog or fen	
<b>Similarity to Other Upland Areas</b>	Increased similarity of the upland ecosystem on the pad to natural upland landforms and vegetation communities in the region makes leaving the pad in place more appropriate	
<b>Upland Function</b>	Leaving a pad in place may be more appropriate if the pad has the ability to support a functioning upland ecosystem	
<b>Borrow Pit</b>	If the borrow pit is revegetating into a wetland ecosystem:	
	<i>Drawback:</i> Damage to wetland ecosystem that has developed on the borrow pit and logistical difficulties of returning clay fill material in wet environment	<i>Benefit:</i> No damage to wetland ecosystem that has developed on the borrow pit

Factor	Pad Removal	Leaving Pads in Place
	If the borrow pit is degraded, not reclaimed, or reclaimed to an upland site, the drawbacks of pad removal and the benefits of leaving the pad in place are reduced	
<b>Pad Removal Uncertainties</b>	<i>Drawback:</i> There is uncertainty in the success of pad removal to result in functional peatland ecosystems, depending on the ecological setting and construction practices	<i>Benefit:</i> Avoids uncertainties in pad removal success
<b>Existing Vegetation</b>	<i>Drawback:</i> Disturbance to vegetation	<i>Benefit:</i> No disturbance to vegetation
<b>Potential for Weeds</b>	<i>Drawback:</i> Higher potential for weeds and invasive species due to increased disturbance	<i>Benefit:</i> Lower potential for weeds and invasive species due to reduced disturbance

---

## 6.0 KNOWLEDGE GAPS AND RECOMMENDATIONS

---

This section summarizes the knowledge gaps identified through the literature review and outreach program that will need to be addressed before a final decision is made on alternative management and reclamation approaches for mineral soil pads in peatlands.

### 6.1 RATIONALE AND PROCESS FOR APPLYING A VARIANCE TO CRITERIA

The following knowledge gaps were identified regarding considerations for leaving reclamation deficiencies in place on upland sites and applying for a variance to criteria. Information on these subjects is required to inform a complete net environmental cost/benefit analysis for leaving deficiencies in place.

- Acceptable dimensions for landscape deficiencies (cut and fills, subsidence) to account specifically for operability constraints of forest harvest equipment
- Risk matrix for assessing fire hazard of woody debris piles left in place on wellsites
- Success rate of wellsites with no topsoil that achieve and maintain equivalent land capability in the long term and the factors that contribute to success or failure; analysis of whether there are differences in recovery on a wellsite with no topsoil vs. a pad left in place with no topsoil
- Empirical evidence showing noxious weed persistence after canopy closure (Small et al., 2018)
- Short- and long-term impacts of noxious weeds and undesirable species on forest species and community development as a whole, and quantification of the length of the resultant successional delay, if it occurs (Small et al., 2018)
- Short- and long-term impacts of herbicide application to control noxious weeds and undesirable species on forest plant community development, particularly as it relates to herbicide overspray (Small et al., 2018)
- Long term impacts of soil stockpiling on soil organic matter and nutrients, especially after stockpiled material is re-spread
- Empirical evidence of delayed ecosystem recovery after soils are re-stripped and re-placed a second time on a wellsite during reclamation to correct deficiencies and measurement of the length of the delay
- Cumulative impacts of leaving multiple deficiencies in place, and the threshold at which cumulative impacts degrade overall ecological function

- Magnitude of carbon emissions released during traditional reclamation to correct deficiencies (including site access) and whether these emissions are substantial enough to warrant their inclusion in the determination of the environmental net benefit associated with traditional vs. modified reclamation

## 6.2 RATIONALE AND PROCESS FOR LEAVING A MINERAL SOIL PAD IN PLACE

The following knowledge gaps were identified regarding considerations for leaving pads in place in peatlands and applying for a change in land use. Information on these subjects is required to inform a complete net environmental cost/benefit analysis for leaving pads in place in peatlands.

- Extent and severity of impacts related to well pads left in place in peatlands compared to impacts related to roads left in place in peatlands
- More thorough understanding of the relationship between peatland type (bog vs. fen), feature type (pad vs. road) and direction of water flow relative to the feature on the occurrence of impacts to hydrology
- Impacts of pads and roads left in place on groundwater
- Impacts of pads and roads left in place on wildlife habitat, wildlife movement and use of the landscape
- Cumulative impacts of multiple pads and roads on local and regional peatland hydrology, chemistry, vegetation and greenhouse gas fluxes and the threshold at which cumulative impacts degrade overall ecological function of the region
- Methods that can be used for measuring the occurrence and extent of current pad impacts to hydrology, as well as the potential for future impacts
- Success rate of pads left in place with no topsoil that achieve and maintain upland ecosystem function and equivalent land capability in the long term. Specific knowledge gaps related to upland ecosystem function on pads left in place include:
  - Relative importance of factors that influence successful reforestation of pads (e.g., soil quality, topsoil depth, compaction, dispersal vectors, historical revegetation efforts, time, surrounding peatland type, water quality and levels, etc.)
  - Potential for water table to rise into the root zone over time
  - Resiliency of upland ecosystems developed on pads left in place

- Success rate of pad removal in achieving peatland ecosystem function and equivalent land capability and the factors and reclamation practices that contribute to success or failure. Specific knowledge gaps related to pad removal include:
  - Extent of peat compression under the pad, and how this is impacted by the thickness and overall weight of the pad
  - Extent of peat rebound after the pad is removed and how this is impacted by the duration of the pad being in place and thickness of the pad
  - Potential for and risk of minimal peat rebound and the creation of an open water body with cattails instead of a site on a trajectory to a functional peatland
  - Impacts to underlying peat chemistry resulting from the pad material, and how those changes may impact a developing plant community after removal of the pad
- Magnitude of carbon emissions released during pad removal (including site access) and whether these emissions are substantial enough to warrant their inclusion in the determination of the environmental net benefit associated with pad removal vs. leaving the pad in place

### 6.3 RECOMMENDATIONS

The following recommendations are proposed.

- Seek clarification from government as to the required approvals for requests for variance to criteria on upland sites. Currently there is confusion as to whether AEP (as the landowner) is involved in the decision.
- Prepare a guidance document on how to best prepare variances on upland sites. The guidance document would help government and industry standardize methods to apply common variances to help streamline the certification process. Additionally, the guidance document would provide a library of resources and references to be used for common variances used for non-routine applications. The document would outline how to prepare good quality justifications which would help provide more consistency further streamlining the process.
- Collect data remotely and in the field via case studies or a more rigorous experimental design to provide empirical evidence pads can be left in place to create functioning forests. Information collected would be used to determine factors that are needed to create successful forests on padded sites, this science based information would be used to help support reclamation

certificate applications for sites that will have pads left in place. Additionally, the data collected will provide industry better decision or risk-based tools to help prioritize and determine what sites require pad removal and what sites can be left in place. Data also would be used to help determine what factors (e.g., peatland type, pad type, hydrology, etc.) lead to impacts from pads.

- Develop decision support tool/policy framework recommendations for leaving pads in place on peatlands



---

## 7.0 REFERENCES

---

Acden Vertex Limited Partnership, 2019. Wetland Reclamation Trial Small Scale Trial #2: Effects of Padding over Reclamation Material, Five Year Trial Results. Prepared for PetroChina Canada Limited, Fort McMurray, Alberta. 68 pp. plus appendices.

Alberta Agriculture and Forestry, 2018a. Reforestation Standard of Alberta. Alberta Agriculture and Forestry, Forestry Division, Forest Management Branch, Edmonton, Alberta. 376 pp. Available at: [https://www1.agric.gov.ab.ca/\\$department/deptdocs.nsf/all/formain15749/\\$FILE/reforestation-standard-alberta-may1-2018.pdf](https://www1.agric.gov.ab.ca/$department/deptdocs.nsf/all/formain15749/$FILE/reforestation-standard-alberta-may1-2018.pdf).

Alberta Agriculture and Forestry, 2018b. Debris Management Standards for Timber Harvest Operations. Alberta Agriculture and Forestry, Edmonton, Alberta. Report No. AF-FDP-2017-07. 4 pp. Available at: <http://www.srd.alberta.ca/FormsOnlineServices/Directives/documents/2007-02-DebrisManagementStandards-TimberHarvestOperations-Mar2010.pdf%5CnR:%5CAdmin%5CGROUPS%5COilSands%5CReferencesandGlossary%5CReferenceManager%5CElectronicReferences>.

Alberta Energy Regulator, 2015a. Environmental Protection and Enhancement Act Approval No. 48263-01-00 Held by ConocoPhillips Canada Resources Corp. for the Surmont Enhanced Recovery In-Situ Oil Sands or Heavy Oil Processing Plant and Oil Production Site. Alberta Energy Regulator, Calgary, Alberta. 49 pp. Available at: <https://avw.alberta.ca/pdf/00048263-01-00.pdf>.

Alberta Energy Regulator, 2015b. Environmental Protection and Enhancement Act Approval No. 149968-01-00 Held by Canadian Natural Resources Limited for the Construction, Operation and Reclamation of the Horizon Oil Sands Processing Plant and Mine. Alberta Energy Regulator, Calgary, Alberta. 91 pp. Available at: <https://avw.alberta.ca/pdf/00149968-01-00.pdf>.

Alberta Energy Regulator, 2016. Specified Enactment Direction 001: Direction for Conservation and Reclamation Submissions Under an Environmental Protection and Enhancement Act Approval for Enhanced Recovery In Situ Oil Sands and Heavy Oil Processing Plants and Oil Production Sites. Alberta Energy Regulator, Calgary, Alberta. 45 pp. Available at: [https://www.aer.ca/documents/manuals/Direction\\_001.pdf](https://www.aer.ca/documents/manuals/Direction_001.pdf).

Alberta Energy Regulator, 2017. Bulletin 2017-19: New Authorizations Process to Implement the Alberta Wetland Policy. Alberta Energy Regulator, Calgary, Alberta. 2 pp. Available at: <https://www.aer.ca/documents/bulletins/Bulletin-2017-19.pdf>.

Alberta Energy Regulator, 2018. Specified Enactment Direction 002: Application Submission Requirements and Guidance for Reclamation Certificates for Well Sites and Associated Facilities. Alberta Energy Regulator, Calgary, Alberta. 46 pp. Available at: [https://www.aer.ca/documents/manuals/Direction\\_002.pdf](https://www.aer.ca/documents/manuals/Direction_002.pdf).

Alberta Environment, 2004. Guide to the Code of Practice for Pits. Alberta Environment, Edmonton, Alberta. Pub. No. T/763. 75 pp. Available at: <https://open.alberta.ca/dataset/03ec9cc3-ecf7-4370-8af2-b20997b29428/resource/9993ab67-d62b-4392-96cb-b304139afc59/download/2004-guidecodepracticepits-2004.pdf>.

Alberta Environment, 2009. Guidelines for Submission of a Pre-Disturbance Assessment and Conservation & Reclamation Plan Under an Environmental Protection and Enhancement Act Approval

For an Enhanced Recovery In-Situ Oil Sands and Heavy Oil Processing Plant and Oil Production Site. Alberta Environment, Edmonton, Alberta. 23 pp. plus appendices. Available at: <https://www.biodiversitylibrary.org/item/200347#page/1/mode/1up>.

Alberta Environment, 2010. Guidelines for Reclamation to Forest Vegetation in the Athabasca Oil Sands Region, 2nd Edition. Prepared by the Terrestrial Subgroup of the Reclamation Working Group of the Cumulative Environmental Management Association, Fort McMurray, Alberta. 332 pp. Available at: <https://open.alberta.ca/dataset/966069fc-7910-4fc5-85da-3a717bfbddc5/resource/1056c2a6-0815-4d0a-ab0c-80938e1e5bd1/download/8269.pdf>.

Alberta Environment, 2011. 2010 Reclamation Criteria for Wellsites and Associated Facilities: Application Guidelines. Alberta Environment, Edmonton, Alberta. 52 pp. Available at: <https://open.alberta.ca/dataset/7e64256c-42e2-4eb6-bed1-91a4e558b3e2/resource/cbbe4a4c-dc0e-4d4e-9bfb-c613618db61d/download/2011-2010-reclamation-criteria-wellsites-application-guidelines-2011-05.pdf>.

Alberta Environment and Parks, 2015. Coal and Oil Sands Exploration Reclamation Requirements. Alberta Environment and Parks, Land Policy Branch, Edmonton, Alberta. Land Policy 2015 no. 7. 3 pp. Available at: <http://aep.alberta.ca/forms-maps-services/directives/documents/CoalOilSandsReclamationReqs-Dec02-2015.pdf>.

Alberta Environment and Parks, 2016. Requirements for Conservation and Reclamation Plans for Peat Operations in Alberta. Alberta Environment and Parks, Land Policy Branch, Edmonton, Alberta. 17 pp. Available at: <https://open.alberta.ca/dataset/ea868d76-9162-4aeb-bd8d-095c20b14e9d/resource/0fd7b3b0-9da0-4446-b2df-d3c7adc657e9/download/2016-requirements-conservation-and-reclamation-plans-for-peat-operations-in-alberta-may-25-2016.pdf>.

Alberta Environment and Parks, 2017. Reclamation Criteria for Wellsites and Associated Facilities for Peatlands. Alberta Environment and Parks, Edmonton, Alberta. 142 pp. Available at: <http://environment.gov.ab.ca/info/library/6855.pdf>.

Alberta Environment and Parks, 2018a. Borrow Activities on Public Land. Public Lands, Edmonton, Alberta. 12 pp. Available at: <https://open.alberta.ca/dataset/1642678c-b904-4210-9624-c4ba575f829f/resource/8fb61e4c-10be-4427-b24b-05ffbbbedace0/download/borrowactivitiespl-dec01-2018.pdf>.

Alberta Environment and Parks, 2018b. Master Schedule of Standards and Conditions. Alberta Environment and Parks, Edmonton, Alberta. 308 pp. Available at: <http://aep.alberta.ca/forms-maps-services/industry-online-services/public-lands->.

Alberta Environment and Parks, 2018c. Pre-Application Requirements for Formal Dispositions. Alberta Environment and Parks, Edmonton, Alberta. 41 pp. plus appendices. Available at: <http://aep.alberta.ca/forms-maps-services/industry-online-services/public-lands->.

Alberta Environment and Sustainable Resource Development, 2013a. 2010 Reclamation Criteria for Wellsites and Associated Facilities for Forested Lands (Updated July 2013). Alberta Environment and Sustainable Resource Development, Edmonton, Alberta. 65 pp. Available at: <https://open.alberta.ca/dataset/9df9a066-27a9-450e-85c7-1d56290f3044/resource/09415142-686a-4cfd-94bf-5d6371638354/download/2013-2010-Reclamation-Criteria-Wellsites-Forested-Lands-2013-07.pdf>.

Alberta Environment and Sustainable Resource Development, 2013b. Alberta Wetland Policy. Environment and Sustainable Resource Development, Edmonton, Alberta. 25 pp. Available at: <https://open.alberta.ca/dataset/5250f98b-2e1e-43e7-947f-62c14747e3b3/resource/43677a60-3503-4509-acfd-6918e8b8ec0a/download/6249018-2013-alberta-wetland-policy-2013-09.pdf>.

Alberta Environment and Sustainable Resource Development, 2013c. Criteria and Indicators Framework for Oil Sands Mine Reclamation Certification. Alberta Environment and Sustainable Resource Development, Edmonton, Alberta. 163 pp. Available at: <https://open.alberta.ca/dataset/ecace744-99a7-4fcf-82ab-cd6115402e99/resource/17fc1c5c-c92e-44f4-b519-78f0b187ca83/download/2013-criteriaindicatorsframework-sep04-2014.pdf>.

Alberta Environment and Water, 2012. Best Management Practices for Conservation of Reclamation Materials in the Mineable Oil Sands Region of Alberta. Alberta Environment and Water. Prepared by MacKenzie, D. for the Terrestrial Subgroup Best Management Practices Task Group of the Reclamation Working Group of the Cumulative Environmental Management Association. Fort McMurray, AB. Available at: <https://open.alberta.ca/dataset/16628671-0e7d-4a1f-bdf7-db19d8fc1e25/resource/12250234-4077-472c-8da7-0fbed2de9e48/download/2012-best-management-practices-conservation-reclamation-materials-alberta-2011-main-report.pdf>.

Alberta Environmental Protection, 1994. A Guide for Oil Production Sites, Pursuant to the Environmental Protection and Enhancement Act and Regulations. Alberta Environmental Protection, Land Reclamation Division, Edmonton, Alberta. Various pagings. Available at: <https://open.alberta.ca/dataset/5a56f201-911e-46bc-991d-3af32a5752e1/resource/47d77641-dc5a-41a3-a34b-960805cb0215/download/guideoilproductionsitespursuantepea-1994.pdf>.

Alberta Environmental Protection, 1995. Reclamation Criteria for Wellsites and Associated Facilities - 1995 Update. Alberta Environmental Protection, Edmonton, Alberta. 62 pp. Available at: <https://open.alberta.ca/dataset/47254f68-a4dd-4c36-92b0-7f638ac865c4/resource/77e66fa1-f7ee-44ad-8c68-234854d38d44/download/16576671995reclamationcriteriaforwellsitesandassociatedfacilitiesupdate.pdf>.

Alberta Sustainable Resource Development, 2001. Weed Management in Forestry Operations. Directive No. 2001-06. Alberta Sustainable Resource Development, Edmonton, Alberta. 5 pp. Available at: [https://www1.agric.gov.ab.ca/\\$department/deptdocs.nsf/all/formain15749/\\$file/Herb2004.pdf?OpenElement](https://www1.agric.gov.ab.ca/$department/deptdocs.nsf/all/formain15749/$file/Herb2004.pdf?OpenElement).

Alberta Sustainable Resource Development, 2002. Fort McMurray-Athabasca Oil Sands Subregional Integrated Resource Plan. Amended June, 2002. Alberta Sustainable Resource Development, Edmonton, Alberta. Publication No. I/358. 53 pp. plus appendices. Available at: <https://open.alberta.ca/dataset/02ea9d65-00f6-4a10-bb80-88f12bcbfc87/resource/480b474a-e371-4d31-b32c-eda81c0379ce/download/2002-fortmcmurrayathabascaoilssandsplan-2002.pdf>.

Alberta Sustainable Resource Development, 2004. Forest Management Herbicide Reference Manual. Alberta Sustainable Resource Development, Edmonton, Alberta. 42 pp. plus appendices. Available at: [https://www1.agric.gov.ab.ca/\\$department/deptdocs.nsf/all/formain15749/\\$file/Herb2004.pdf?OpenElement](https://www1.agric.gov.ab.ca/$department/deptdocs.nsf/all/formain15749/$file/Herb2004.pdf?OpenElement).

Alberta Sustainable Resource Development, 2010. Best Management Practices User Manual for Aggregate Operators on Public Land: Version 1. Alberta Sustainable Resource Development, Edmonton, Alberta. 80 pp. plus appendices. Available at: <https://open.alberta.ca/dataset/b6521493-24f8-4c09->

892b-9c48f1604f9b/resource/25a87a55-6db3-4046-8569-1cfb46527003/download/2010-bestmgmtpracticesmanualaggregateoppl-2010.pdf.

Alberta Transportation, 2013. Post-Disturbance Assessment Guide for Borrow Excavations - Dec 2013 Edition. Alberta Transportation, Edmonton, Alberta. 13 pp. plus appendices. Available at: <http://www.transportation.alberta.ca/Content/docType245/Production/borrowrecl.pdf>.

Anderson, J.D., L.J. Ingram and P.D. Stahl, 2008. Influence of Reclamation Management Practices on Microbial Biomass Carbon and Soil Organic Carbon Accumulation in Semiarid Mined Lands of Wyoming. *Applied Soil Ecology* 40(2): 387–397.

Archibald, H.A., 2014. Early Ecosystem Genesis Using LFH and Peat Cover Soils in Athabasca Oil Sands Reclamation. M.Sc. Thesis. Department of Renewable Resources, University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta. 297 pp. plus appendices. Available at: <https://era.library.ualberta.ca/items/051068f2-5b79-4496-9b9c-ed77ae087400/download/630e6293-b4bc-4cc8-ad58-0d2246c2a4e1>.

Archibold, O.W., 1979. Buried Viable Propagules as a Factor in Postfire Regeneration in Northern Saskatchewan. *Canadian Journal of Botany* 57: 54–58. Available at: <https://www.nrcresearchpress.com/doi/pdf/10.1139/b79-011>.

Audet, P., B.D. Pinno and E. Thiffault, 2015. Reclamation of Boreal Forest after Oil Sands Mining: Anticipating Novel Challenges in Novel Environments. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research* 45(3): 364–371. Available at: <http://www.nrcresearchpress.com/doi/10.1139/cjfr-2014-0330>.

Bauer, I.E., L.D. Gignac and D.H. Vitt, 2003. Development of a Peatland Complex in Boreal Western Canada: Lateral Site Expansion and Local Variability in Vegetation Succession and Long-Term Peat Accumulation. *Canadian Journal of Botany* 81(8): 833–847.

Bayley, S.E. and R.L. Mewhort, 2004. Plant Community Structure and Functional Differences between Marshes and Fens in the Southern Boreal Region of Alberta, Canada. *Wetlands* 24(2): 277–294. Available at: [http://link.springer.com/10.1672/0277-5212\(2004\)024\[0277:PCSAFD\]2.0.CO;2](http://link.springer.com/10.1672/0277-5212(2004)024[0277:PCSAFD]2.0.CO;2).

Beasse, M.J., 2012. Microbial Communities in Organic Substrates Used for Oil Sands Reclamation and Their Link to Boreal Seedling Growth. M.Sc. Thesis. Department of Renewable Resources, University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta. 97 pp. Available at: <https://era.library.ualberta.ca/items/6681e695-a4eb-4100-92d3-54d155f9da39/download/01560e86-1b6e-4b01-a24f-031a5b6b9c81>.

Beatty, S.W., 2003. Habitat Heterogeneity and Maintenance of Species in Understory Communities. IN: *The Herbaceous Layer in Forests of Eastern North America*. Gilliam, F.S. and M.R. Roberts (Editors). Oxford University Press, New York, New York. pp. 177-197.

Beckingham, J.D. and J.H. Archibald, 1996. Field Guide to Ecosites of Northern Alberta. Canadian Forest Service Northwest Region Northern Forestry Centre, Edmonton, Alberta. Special Report 5.

Beckingham, J.D., I.G.W. Corns and J.H. Archibald, 1996. Field Guide to Ecosites of West-Central Alberta. Natural Resources Canada, Canadian Forest Service, Northern Forestry Centre, Edmonton, Alberta. Special Report 9. 540 pp.

Bekele, A., J.L. Roy and M.A. Young, 2013. Use of Biochar and Oxidized Lignite for Reconstructing a Functioning Topsoil: Plant Growth Response and Soil Nutrient Concentrations. *Soil Science* 178(7): 344–358.

Bekele, A., J.L. Roy and M.A. Young, 2015. Use of Biochar and Oxidized Lignite for Reconstructing Functioning Agronomic Topsoil: Effects on Soil Properties in a Greenhouse Study. *Canadian Journal of*

Soil Science 95: 269–285. Available at: <https://www.nrcresearchpress.com/doi/pdf/10.4141/cjss-2014-008>.

Benscoter, B.W. and D.H. Vitt, 2008. Spatial Patterns and Temporal Trajectories of the Bog Ground Layer Along a Post-Fire Chronosequence. *Ecosystems* 11(7): 1054–1064.

Bentham, P. and B. Coupal, 2015. Habitat Restoration as a Key Conservation Lever for Woodland Caribou: A Review of Restoration Programs and Key Learnings from Alberta. *Rangifer* 35(23): 123–148.

Benvenuti, S., 2003. Soil Texture Involvement in Germination and Emergence of Buried Weed Seeds. *Journal of Agronomy* 95: 191–198.

Bergeron, Y., H.Y.H. Chen, N.C. Kenkel, A.L. Leduc and S.E. Macdonald, 2014. Boreal Mixedwood Stand Dynamics: Ecological Processes Underlying Multiple Pathways. *The Forestry Chronicle* 90(2): 202–213.

Bird, M., B. Xu, J. Goehing and C. Brown, 2017a. Wood Chip Overburden Reclamation in Peatland. NAIT Boreal Research Institute, Peace River, Alberta. Technical Note #23. 4 pp. Available at: [http://www.nait.ca/docs/TN23-Wood\\_Chip\\_Overburden\\_Reclamation\\_in\\_Peatland\\_2017.pdf](http://www.nait.ca/docs/TN23-Wood_Chip_Overburden_Reclamation_in_Peatland_2017.pdf).

Bird, M., B. Xu, J.-M. Sobze, A. Schoonmaker and L. Rochefort, 2017b. Wellsite Clay Pad Removal and Peat Inversion. NAIT Boreal Research Institute, Peace River, Alberta. Technical Note #24. 6 pp. Available at: [http://www.nait.ca/docs/RI\\_AR\\_BRITechnotes\\_PR\\_PadInv\\_20170221-June-Web.pdf](http://www.nait.ca/docs/RI_AR_BRITechnotes_PR_PadInv_20170221-June-Web.pdf).

Bocking, E., D.J. Cooper and J. Price, 2017. Using Tree Ring Analysis to Determine Impacts of a Road on a Boreal Peatland. *Forest Ecology and Management* 404: 24–30.

Bockstette, J., 2018. The Role of Soil Reconstruction and Soil Amendments in Forest Reclamation. M.Sc. Thesis. Department of Renewable Resources, University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta. 83 pp. Available at: [https://era.library.ualberta.ca/rails/active\\_storage/blobs/UpFTX6SfVKDud48qm1wApWeA/Bockstette\\_Jana\\_201809\\_MSc.pdf](https://era.library.ualberta.ca/rails/active_storage/blobs/UpFTX6SfVKDud48qm1wApWeA/Bockstette_Jana_201809_MSc.pdf).

Bonn, A., T. Allott, M. Evans, H. Joosten and R. Stoneman, 2016a. Peatland Restoration and Ecosystem Services: Nature-Based Solutions for Societal Goals. Chapter 20 IN: Peatland Restoration and Ecosystem Services: Science, Policy and Practice. Bonn, A., T. Allot, M.G. Evans, H. Joosten and R. Stoneman (Editors). Cambridge University Press. pp. 402-417.

Bonn, A., T. Allott, M. Evans, H. Joosten and R. Stoneman, 2016b. Peatland Restoration and Ecosystem Services: An Introduction. Chapter 1 IN: Peatland Restoration and Ecosystem Services: Science, Policy and Practice. Bonn, A., T. Allott, M. Evans, H. Joosten and R. Stoneman (Editors). Cambridge University Press. pp. 1-16. Available at: <https://www.cambridge.org/core/books/peatland-restoration-and-ecosystem-services/peatland-restoration-and-ecosystem-services-an-introduction/EF3923BC49D5EA9AA22F90B7706A6CEC>.

Borkenhagen, A. and D.J. Cooper, 2016. Creating Fen Initiation Conditions: A New Approach for Peatland Reclamation in the Oil Sands Region of Alberta. *Journal of Applied Ecology* 53(2): 550–558.

Boutin, S., M.S. Boyce, M. Hebblewhite, D. Hervieux, K.H. Knopff, M.C. Latham, A.D.M. Latham, J. Nagy, D. Seip and R. Serrouya, 2012. Why Are Caribou Declining in the Oil Sands? *Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment* 10(2): 65–67.

Bradshaw, A.D., 1984. Ecological Principles and Land Reclamation Practice. *Landscape Planning* 11: 35–48.

- Bragazza, L. and R. Gerdol, 2002. Are Nutrient Availability and Acidity-Alkalinity Gradients Related in Sphagnum-Dominated Peatlands? *Journal of Vegetation Science* 13: 473–482.
- Brandt, J.P., M.D. Flannigan, D.G. Maynard and I.D. Thompson, 2013. An Introduction to Canada's Boreal Zone: Ecosystem Processes, Health, Sustainability, and Environmental Issues. *Environmental Reviews* 21: 207–226.
- British Columbia Ministry of Forests and Range and British Columbia Ministry of Environment, 2010. Field Manual for Describing Terrestrial Ecosystems. 2nd Edition. British Columbia Ministry of Forests and Range and British Columbia Ministry of Environment, Victoria, British Columbia. Land Management Handbook 25. 266 pp. Available at: [https://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hfd/pubs/Docs/Lmh/Lmh25/Lmh25\\_ed2\\_\(2010\).pdf](https://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hfd/pubs/Docs/Lmh/Lmh25/Lmh25_ed2_(2010).pdf).
- Bulmer, C., K. Venner and C. Prescott, 2007. Forest Soil Rehabilitation with Tillage and Wood Waste Enhances Seedling Establishment but Not Height after 8 Years. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research* 37: 1894–1906.
- Bulmer, C.E. and M. Krzic, 2003. Soil Properties and Lodgepole Pine Growth on Rehabilitated Landings in Northeastern British Columbia. *Canadian Journal of Soil Science* 83: 465–474.
- Cameron, E.K., E.M. Bayne and M.J. Clapperton, 2008. Human-Facilitated Invasion of Exotic Earthworms into Northern Boreal Forests. *Ecoscience* 14(4): 482–490.
- Campbell, C., D.H. Vitt, L.A. Halsey, I.D. Campbell, M.N. Thormann and S.E. Bayley, 2000. Net Primary Production and Standing Biomass in the Northern Continental Wetlands. Natural Resources Canada, Canadian Forest Service, Northern Forestry Centre, Edmonton, Alberta. Information Report NOR-X-369.
- Campbell, D.B., C.E. Bulmer, M.D. Jones, L.J. Philip and J.J. Zwiazek, 2008. Incorporation of Topsoil and Burn-Pile Debris Substantially Increases Early Growth of Lodgepole Pine on Landings. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research* 38: 257–267.
- Canada's Oil Sands Innovation Alliance, 2019. Topsoil Reconstruction. Web document available online at: <https://www.cosia.ca/initiatives/land/projects/topsoil-reconstruction>. Accessed: Apr 7, 2019.
- Canadian Association of Petroleum Producers, 2008. Best Management Practices: Wildfire Prevention. Canadian Association of Petroleum Producers, Calgary, Alberta. 67 pp. Available at: <https://www.capp.ca/-/media/capp/customer-portal/publications/132380.pdf?modified=20180910185018>.
- Cenovus Energy, 2016. OSE Visual Reference Guide. Cenovus Energy, Calgary, Alberta. 24 pp. Available at: <https://www.cenovus.com/news/docs/oil-sands-exploration-visual-reference-guide.pdf>.
- Chávez, V. and S.E. Macdonald, 2010. Understorey Species Interactions in Mature Boreal Mixedwood Forests. *Botany* 88: 912–922.
- Chimner, R.A., D.J. Cooper, F.C. Wurster and L. Rochefort, 2017. An Overview of Peatland Restoration in North America, Where Are We after 25 Years? *Restoration Ecology* 25(2): 283–292.
- Clymo, R.S., 1984. Sphagnum-Dominated Peat Bog: A Naturally Acid Ecosystem. *Philosophical Transaction of the Royal Society of London. Series B, Biological Sciences* 305(1124): 487–499.
- Corns, I.G., 1988. Compaction by Forestry Equipment and Effects on Coniferous Seedling Growth on Four Soils in Alberta Foothills. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research* 18: 75–84.

- Creuzer, J., C.L.M. Hargiss, J.E. Norland, T. DeSutter, F.X. Casey, E.S. DeKeyser and M. Ell, 2016. Does Increased Road Dust Due to Energy Development Impact Wetlands in the Bakken Region? *Water, Air, and Soil Pollution* 227: 39.
- DeLong, H.B., V.J. Lieffers and P. V Blenis, 1997. Microsite Effects on First-Year Establishment and Overwinter Survival of White Spruce in Aspen-Dominated Boreal Mixedwoods. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research* 27: 1452–1457.
- Dewey, M., A. Schoonmaker, S. Schreiber, T. Floreani, K. Yucel, J. Kaur and D. MacKenzie, 2017. Evaluation of Vegetation and Soils on Mineral Surface Leases Certified to Forested Land Reclamation Standards. NAIT Boreal Research Institute, Peace River, Alberta. 35 pp. plus appendices.
- Dickie, J.B., K.H. Gajjar, P. Birch and J.A. Harris, 1988. The Survival of Viable Seeds in Stored Topsoil from Opencast Coal Working and Its Implications for Site Restoration. *Biological Conservation* 43: 257–265.
- Dimitrov, D.D., J.S. Bhatti and R.F. Grant, 2014. The Transition Zones (Ecotone) between Boreal Forests and Peatlands: Ecological Controls on Ecosystem Productivity along a Transition Zone between Upland Black Spruce Forest and a Poor Forested Fen in Central Saskatchewan. *Ecological Modelling* 291: 96–108.
- Dyer, S.J., J.P. O’Neill, S.M. Wasel and S. Boutin, 2002. Quantifying Barrier Effects of Roads and Seismic Lines on Movements of Female Woodland Caribou in Northeastern Alberta. *Canadian Journal of Zoology* 80(5): 839–845.
- Engering, A., 2018. Carbon Gas Exchange, Primary Production and Litter Decomposition of a Restored Fen on a Former Oil Well-Pad. M.Sc. University of Waterloo, Waterloo, Ontario. 75 pp. Available at: [https://uwspace.uwaterloo.ca/bitstream/handle/10012/13008/Engering\\_Alexandra.pdf?sequence=3&isAllowed=y](https://uwspace.uwaterloo.ca/bitstream/handle/10012/13008/Engering_Alexandra.pdf?sequence=3&isAllowed=y).
- Fair, J.M., 2011. The Potential of Forest Floor Transfer for the Reclamation of Boreal Forest Understorey Plant Communities. M.Sc. Thesis. Department of Renewable Resources, University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta. 140 pp. Available at: <https://era.library.ualberta.ca/items/fc32bb36-22de-483c-bb29-80adceca5df9/download/f68f4445-2a43-4dcb-b21a-4c4e35bb9e0c>.
- Fan, Y., G. Miguez-Macho, E.G. Jobbágy, R.B. Jackson and C. Otero-Casal, 2017. Hydrologic Regulation of Plant Rooting Depth. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* 114(40): 10572–10577. Available at: <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/28923923>.
- Finnegan, L., D. MacNearney and K.E. Pigeon, 2018. Divergent Patterns of Understorey Forage Growth after Seismic Line Exploration: Implications for Caribou Habitat Restoration. *Forest Ecology and Management* 409: 634–652.
- Frerichs, L.A., 2017. Decadal Assessment of Successional Development on Reclaimed Upland Boreal Well Sites. M.Sc. Thesis. Department of Renewable Resources, University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta. 144 pp. plus appendices. Available at: [https://era.library.ualberta.ca/items/30fb8946-3f74-437d-9d4a-41622810385d/view/11e56e33-7c34-4899-bb65-eed88d69279c/Frerichs\\_Laurie\\_A\\_201701\\_MSc.pdf](https://era.library.ualberta.ca/items/30fb8946-3f74-437d-9d4a-41622810385d/view/11e56e33-7c34-4899-bb65-eed88d69279c/Frerichs_Laurie_A_201701_MSc.pdf).
- Frerichs, L.A., E.W. Bork, T.J. Osko and M.A. Naeth, 2017. Effects of Boreal Well Site Reclamation Practices on Long-Term Planted Spruce and Deciduous Tree Regeneration. *Forests* 8(6): 201. Available at: <https://www.mdpi.com/1999-4907/8/6/201/pdf>.

- Frolking, S., N. Roulet and J. Fuglestedt, 2006. How Northern Peatlands Influence the Earth's Radiative Budget: Sustained Methane Emission versus Sustained Carbon Sequestration. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 111(G01008): 10 pp. Available at: <https://agupubs.onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/epdf/10.1029/2005JG000091>.
- Fyles, J.W., 1989. Seed Bank Populations in Upland Coniferous Forests in Central Alberta. *Canadian Journal of Botany* 67: 274–278.
- Gärtner, S.M., V.J. Lieffers and S.E. Macdonald, 2011. Ecology and Management of Natural Regeneration of White Spruce in the Boreal Forest. *Environmental Reviews* 19: 461–478. Available at: <http://www.nrcresearchpress.com/doi/abs/10.1139/a11-017>.
- Gauthier, M.-E., L. Rochefort, L. Nadeau, S. Hugron and B. Xu, 2018. Testing the Moss Layer Transfer Technique on Mineral Well Pads Constructed in Peatlands. *Wetlands Ecology and Management* 26(4): 475–487.
- Ghose, M.K., 2001. Management of Topsoil for Geo-Environmental Reclamation of Coal Mining Areas. *Environmental Geology* 40: 1405–1410.
- Gignac, D.L., D. Desmarais and G. Beaudoin, 1994. Impact of a Dirt Road on Surface Water and Sphagnum Chemistry and Sphagnum Growth on a Peatland in Northern Alberta, Canada. *Comptes Rendus de l'Academie des Sciences - Serie III* 317(10): 943–953.
- Gillies, C., 2011. Water Management Techniques for Resource Roads in Wetlands A State of Practice Review. Prepared for Ducks Unlimited Canada. FPInnovations Contract Report No. CR-652. 81 pp. Available at: [https://fpinnovations.ca/ResearchProgram/SiteAssets/Pages/research-program-forest-operations/FPInnovations\\_CR-652-CTG\\_State\\_of\\_Practice\\_Review.pdf](https://fpinnovations.ca/ResearchProgram/SiteAssets/Pages/research-program-forest-operations/FPInnovations_CR-652-CTG_State_of_Practice_Review.pdf).
- Glime, J.M., 2007. Adaptive Strategies: Spore Dispersal Vectors. Chapter 4-9 IN: *Bryophyte Ecology*. Volume 1. *Physiological Ecology*. Glime, J., (Editor). Michigan Technological University and the International Association of Bryologists. pp. 4-9-1 to 4-9-43. Available at: <https://digitalcommons.mtu.edu/cgi/viewcontent.cgi?referer=&httpsredir=1&article=1021&context=bryo-ecol-subchapters>.
- Glime, J.M., 2009. Water Relations: Plant Strategies. Chapter 7-3 IN: *Bryophyte Ecology*. Volume 1. *Physiological Ecology*. Glime, J., (Editor). Michigan Technological University and the International Association of Bryologists. pp. 7-3-2 to 7-3-50. Available at: <https://digitalcommons.mtu.edu/cgi/viewcontent.cgi?referer=https://www.google.com/&httpsredir=1&article=1037&context=bryo-ecol-subchapters>.
- Government of Alberta, 1993. Conservation and Reclamation Regulation. AR 115/1993. Government of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta. 21 pp. Available at: [http://www.qp.alberta.ca/1266.cfm?page=1993\\_115.cfm&leg\\_type=Regs&isbncln=9780779782796](http://www.qp.alberta.ca/1266.cfm?page=1993_115.cfm&leg_type=Regs&isbncln=9780779782796).
- Government of Alberta, 2000. Environmental Protection and Enhancement Act. Revised Statutes of Alberta 2000, Chapter E-12. Government of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta. 161 pp. Available at: [http://www.qp.alberta.ca/1266.cfm?page=E12.cfm&leg\\_type=Acts&isbncln=9780779785285](http://www.qp.alberta.ca/1266.cfm?page=E12.cfm&leg_type=Acts&isbncln=9780779785285).
- Government of Alberta, 2008. Weed Control Act. Statutes of Alberta, 2008, Chapter W-5.1. Government of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta. 14 pp. Available at: [http://www.qp.alberta.ca/1266.cfm?page=W05P1.cfm&leg\\_type=Acts&isbncln=9780779801220](http://www.qp.alberta.ca/1266.cfm?page=W05P1.cfm&leg_type=Acts&isbncln=9780779801220).



Government of Alberta, 2010. Weed Control Regulation. Alberta Regulation AR 171/2001. Government of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta. 8 pp. Available at: <http://www.qp.alberta.ca/documents/Acts/W05P1.pdf>.

Government of Alberta, 2011. Public Lands Administration Regulation. AR 187/2011. Government of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta. 231 pp. Available at: [http://www.qp.alberta.ca/1266.cfm?page=2011\\_187.cfm&leg\\_type=Regs&isbncln=9780779795284](http://www.qp.alberta.ca/1266.cfm?page=2011_187.cfm&leg_type=Regs&isbncln=9780779795284).

Government of Alberta, 2012. Lower Athabasca Regional Plan. Government of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta. 94 pp. Available at: <https://open.alberta.ca/dataset/37eab675-19fe-43fd-aff-001e2c0be67f/resource/a063e2df-f5a6-4bbd-978c-165cc25148a2/download/5866779-2012-08-lower-athabasca-regional-plan-2012-2022.pdf>.

Government of Alberta, 2016. Alberta Timber Harvest Planning and Operating Ground Rules Framework for Renewal. Government of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta. 73 pp. plus appendices. Available at: [https://www1.agric.gov.ab.ca/\\$department/deptdocs.nsf/all/formain15749/\\$FILE/TimberHarvestPlanning-OperatingGroundRulesFramework-Dec2016.pdf](https://www1.agric.gov.ab.ca/$department/deptdocs.nsf/all/formain15749/$FILE/TimberHarvestPlanning-OperatingGroundRulesFramework-Dec2016.pdf).

Government of Canada, 2019. Environment and Natural Resources. Web document available online at: <https://www.canada.ca/en/services/environment.html>. Accessed: Apr 7, 2019.

Gradowski, T., D. Sidders, T. Keddy, V.J. Lieffers and S.M. Landhäusser, 2008. Effects of Overstory Retention and Site Preparation on Growth of Planted White Spruce Seedlings in Deciduous and Coniferous Dominated Boreal Plains Mixedwoods. *Forest Ecology and Management* 255(11): 3744–3749.

Graf, M. and L. Rochefort, 2009. Examining the Peat-Accumulating Potential of Fen Vegetation in the Context of Fen Restoration of Harvested Peatlands. *Ecoscience* 16(2): 158–166.

Grandin, U., 2001. Short-Term and Long-Term Variation in Seed Bank/Vegetation Relations along an Environmental and Successional Gradient. *Ecography* 24: 731–741.

Granstrom, A., 1982. Seed Banks in Five Boreal Forest Stands Originating between 1810 and 1963. *Canadian Journal of Botany* 60: 1815–1821.

Grant, C.D., D.T. Bell, J.M. Koch and W.A. Loneragan, 1996. Implications of Seedling Emergence to Site Restoration Following Bauxite Mining in Western Australia. *Restoration Ecology* 4(2): 146–154.

Gupta, S. Das, W. Kirby and B.D. Pinno, 2019. Effects of Stockpiling and Organic Matter Addition on Nutrient Bioavailability in Reclamation Soils. *Soil Science Society of America Journal*. Available at: <https://dl.sciencesocieties.org/publications/sssaj/abstracts/0/0/sssaj2018.07.0273>.

Hahn, A.S., 2012. Soil Microbial Communities in Early Ecosystems. M.Sc. Thesis. Department of Renewable Resources, University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta. 104 pp. plus appendices. Available at: <https://era.library.ualberta.ca/items/39c61db3-cf7c-49dc-bf18-41217d5142cd/download/fc9c2a4c-7e27-4799-918a-e665f9140529>.

Halsey, L.A., D.H. Vitt, D.W. Beilman, S. Crow, S. Mehelcic and R. Wells, 2003. Alberta Wetland Inventory Classification System. Version 2.0. 54 pp.

Hart, S.A. and H.Y.H. Chen, 2006. Understory Vegetation Dynamics of North American Boreal Forests. *Critical Reviews in Plant Sciences* 25: 381–397.

- Hills, S.C. and D.M. Morris, 1992. The Function of Seed Banks in Northern Forest Ecosystems: A Literature Review. Ministry of Natural Resources, Ontario, Sault Ste. Marie, Ontario. Forest Research Information Paper No. 107. 25 pp. Available at: <http://www.ontla.on.ca/library/repository/mon/30010/134118.pdf>.
- Houle, M., D. Fortin, C. Dussault, R. Courtois and J.P. Ouellet, 2010. Cumulative Effects of Forestry on Habitat Use by Gray Wolf (*Canis Lupus*) in the Boreal Forest. *Landscape Ecology* 25(3): 419–433.
- Howell, D.M. and M.D. MacKenzie, 2017. Using Bioavailable Nutrients and Microbial Dynamics to Assess Soil Type and Placement Depth in Reclamation. *Applied Soil Ecology* 116(September 2016): 87–95. Available at: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.apsoil.2017.03.023>.
- Hrynshyn, J., 2012. End Pit Lakes Guidance Document. Prepared for the Reclamation Working Group of the Cumulative Environmental Management Association, Fort McMurray, Alberta. 436 pp. Available at: <http://library.cemaonline.ca/ckan/dataset/a5a7f266-44b4-44e2-babe-e6798ec612e2/resource/1632ce6e-d1a0-441a-a026-8a839f1d64bc/download/eplguidance2012jan23a.pdf>.
- Jenny, H., 1941. Factors of Soil Formation. A System of Quantitative Pedology. McGraw Hill, New York, New York. 281 pp. Available at: [https://www.nrcs.usda.gov/wps/PA\\_NRCSConsumption/download?cid=nrcseprd1330210&ext=pdf](https://www.nrcs.usda.gov/wps/PA_NRCSConsumption/download?cid=nrcseprd1330210&ext=pdf).
- Johansen, M.D., P. Aker, K. Klanderud, S.L. Olsen and A.B. Skrindo, 2017. Restoration of Peatland by Spontaneous Revegetation after Road Construction. *Applied Vegetation Science* 20(4): 631–640.
- Jones, C.E., 2016. Early Vegetation Community Development and Dispersal in Upland Boreal Forest Reclamation. M.Sc. Thesis. Department of Renewable Resources, University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta. 118 pp. Available at: <https://era.library.ualberta.ca/items/3249f37b-95f2-42e6-aa0e-58357fde1ec9/download/43d6115e-0e6a-456c-b108-165f3d580450>.
- Jones, C.E., S. Bachmann, V.J. Lieffers and S.M. Landhäusser, 2018. Rapid Understory Plant Recovery Following Forest Floor Protection on Temporary Drilling Pads. *Restoration Ecology* 26(1): 48–55.
- Joosten, H., G. Gaudig, F. Tanneberger, S. Wichmann and W. Wichtmann, 2016. Paludiculture: Sustainable Productive Use of Wet and Rewetted Peatlands IN: Peatland Restoration and Ecosystem Services: Science, Policy and Practice. A. Bonn, T. Allott, M. Evans, H. Joosten, and R. Stoneman, Eds. Cambridge University Press. 339–357. Available at: <https://www.cambridge.org/core/books/peatland-restoration-and-ecosystem-services/paludiculture-sustainable-productive-use-of-wet-and-rewetted-peatlands/494DE50954D10C06837A9B8CA0FA2FD0>.
- Koch, J.M., S.C. Ward, C.D. Grant and G.L. Ainsworth, 1996. Effects of Bauxite Mine Restoration Operations on Topsoil Seed Reserves in the Jarrah Forest of Western Australia. *Restoration Ecology* 4(4): 368–376.
- Kuhry, P. and J. Turunen, 2006. The Postglacial Development of Boreal and Subarctic Peatlands. *Boreal Peatland Ecosystems* (188): 25–46.
- Kuuluvainen, T. and P. Juntunen, 1998. Seedling Establishment in Relation to Microhabitat Variation in a Windthrow Gap in a Boreal *Pinus Sylvestris* Forest. *Journal of Vegetation Science* 9: 551–562.
- Lamarche, J., R.L. Bradley, D. Paré, S. Légaré and Y. Bergeron, 2004. Soil Parent Material May Control Forest Floor Properties More than Stand Type or Stand Age in Mixedwood Boreal Forests. *Ecoscience* 11: 228–237.

- Landhäusser, S.M., A. DesRochers and V.J. Lieffers, 2001. A Comparison of Growth and Physiology in *Picea Glauca* and *Populus Tremuloides* at Different Soil Temperatures. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research* 31: 1922–1929. Available at: <https://www.nrcresearchpress.com/doi/pdf/10.1139/x01-129>.
- Landhäusser, S.M., V.J. Lieffers and T. Mulak, 2006. Effects of Soil Temperature and Time of Decapitation on Sucker Initiation of Intact *Populus Tremuloides* Root Systems. *Scandinavian Journal of Forest Research* 21: 299–305.
- Landhäusser, S.M., J. Wachowski and V.J. Lieffers, 2015. Transfer of Live Aspen Root Fragments, an Effective Tool for Large-Scale Boreal Forest Reclamation. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research* 45(8): 1056–1064.
- Landhäusser, S.M. and V.J. Lieffers, 2011. Growth of *Populus Tremuloides* in Association with *Calamagrostis Canadensis*. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research* 28: 396–401.
- Langor, D.W., E.K. Cameron, C.J.K. MacQuarrie, A. McBeath, A. McClay, B. Peter, M. Pybus, T. Ramsfield, K. Ryall, T. Scarr, D. Yemshanov, I. DeMerchant, R. Footitt and G.R. Pohl, 2014. Non-Native Species in Canada's Boreal Zone: Diversity, Impacts, and Risk. *Environmental Reviews* 22(4): 372–420. Available at: <https://doi.org/10.1139/er-2013-0083>.
- Latham, A.D.M., M.C. Latham, M.S. Boyce and S. Boutin, 2011. Movement Responses by Wolves to Industrial Linear Features and Their Effect on Woodland Caribou in Northeastern Alberta. *Ecological Applications* 21(8): 2854–2865.
- Latham, A.D.M., M.C. Latham, K.H. Knopff, M. Hebblewhite and S. Boutin, 2013. Wolves, White-Tailed Deer, and Beaver: Implications of Seasonal Prey Switching for Woodland Caribou Declines. *Ecography* 36(12): 1276–1290.
- Lee, P., 2004. The Impact of Burn Intensity from Wildfires on Seed and Vegetative Banks, and Emergent Understory in Aspen-Dominated Boreal Forests. *Canadian Journal of Botany* 82: 1468–1480.
- Lee, P. and K. Sturgess, 2002. The Effects of Logs, Stumps, and Root Throws on Understory Communities within 28-Year-Old Aspen-Dominated Boreal Forests. *Canadian Journal of Botany* 79(8): 905–916.
- Lieffers, V.J., 1987. Rooting of Peatland Black Spruce and Tamarack in Relation to Depth of Water Table. *Canadian Journal of Botany* 65(5): 817–821. Available at: <https://www.nrcresearchpress.com/doi/pdf/10.1139/b87-111>.
- Lieffers, V.J., S.E. Macdonald and E.H. Hogg, 1993. Ecology and Control Strategies for *Calamagrostis Canadensis* in Boreal Forest Sites. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research* 23: 2070–2077. Available at: <https://www.nrcresearchpress.com/doi/pdf/10.1139/x93-258>.
- Lucchese, M., J.M. Waddington, M. Poulin, R. Pouliot, L. Rochefort and M. Strack, 2010. Organic Matter Accumulation in a Restored Peatland: Evaluating Restoration Success. *Ecological Engineering* 36(4): 482–488.
- Lupardus, R.C., A. McIntosh, A. Janz and D. Farr, 2018. Succession after Reclamation: Identifying and Assessing Ecological Indicators of Forest Recovery on Reclaimed Oil and Natural Gas Well Pads. In Prep.
- Macdonald, E., S. Quideau and S. Landhäusser, 2012. Rebuilding Boreal Forest Ecosystems after Industrial Disturbance. Chapter 7 IN: *Restoration and Reclamation of Boreal Ecosystems: Attaining Sustainable Development*. Vitt, D.H. and J.S. Bhatti (Editors). Cambridge University Press, New York. pp. 123-160.

- Macdonald, S.E. and T.E. Fenniak, 2007. Understory Plant Communities of Boreal Mixedwood Forests in Western Canada: Natural Patterns and Response to Variable-Retention Harvesting. *Forest Ecology and Management* 242: 34–48.
- Mackenzie, D. and K. Renkema, 2013. In-Situ Oil Sands Extraction Reclamation and Restoration Practices and Opportunities Compilation. Canada's Oil Sands Innovation Alliance, Calgary, Alberta. 80 pp. plus appendices. Available at: [https://www.cosia.ca/sites/default/files/attachments/COSIA\\_In-Situ\\_Extraction\\_Reclamation\\_and\\_Restoration\\_Compilation.pdf](https://www.cosia.ca/sites/default/files/attachments/COSIA_In-Situ_Extraction_Reclamation_and_Restoration_Compilation.pdf).
- Mackenzie, D.D., 2013. Oil Sands Mine Reclamation Using Boreal Forest Surface Soil (LFH) in Northern Alberta. Ph.D. Thesis. Department of Renewable Resources, University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta. 240 pp. Available at: [https://era.library.ualberta.ca/rails/active\\_storage/blobs/nvpAotmV7b6SKN7XtjA1kkLP/MacKenzie\\_Dea\\_n\\_Winter-202013.pdf](https://era.library.ualberta.ca/rails/active_storage/blobs/nvpAotmV7b6SKN7XtjA1kkLP/MacKenzie_Dea_n_Winter-202013.pdf).
- Mackenzie, D.D. and M.A. Naeth, 2010. The Role of the Forest Soil Propagule Bank in Assisted Natural Recovery after Oil Sands Mining. *Restoration Ecology* 18(4): 418–427.
- Maitland, B.M., M. Poesch, A.E. Anderson and S.N. Pandit, 2016. Industrial Road Crossings Drive Changes in Community Structure and Instream Habitat for Freshwater Fishes in the Boreal Forest. *Freshwater Biology* 61(1): 1–18.
- McMillan, R., S.A. Quideau, M.D. MacKenzie and O. Biryukova, 2007. Nitrogen Mineralization and Microbial Activity in Oil Sands Reclaimed Boreal Forest Soils. *Journal of Environmental Quality* 36: 1470–1478.
- McNabb, D.H., J.-M. Sobze and A. Schoonmaker, 2013. Practices to Effectively Till Industrial Forest Soils. *Canadian Reclamation* 13(1): 40–42.
- Melnik, K., S.M. Landhäusser and K. Devito, 2018. Role of Microtopography in the Expression of Soil Propagule Banks on Reclamation Sites. *Restoration Ecology* 26(2): S200–S210.
- Mihajlovich, M., J.-M. Sobze and A. Schoonmaker, 2014. A Life Cycle Approach to Vegetation Management on Reclaimed Industrial Sites. *Canadian Reclamation* 14(1): 52–56.
- Millennium EMS Solutions Ltd., 2013. Proposed Exclusion Depths for Ecological Direct Contact Exposure Pathway at Remote Alberta Green Zone Sites. Prepared for Petroleum Technology Alliance Canada, Calgary, Alberta. 18 pp. plus appendices.
- Miller, C.A., B.W. Benscoter and M.R. Turetsky, 2015. The Effect of Long-Term Drying Associated with Experimental Drainage and Road Construction on Vegetation Composition and Productivity in Boreal Fens. *Wetlands Ecology and Management* 23(5): 845–854.
- Mundell, T.L., S.M. Landhäusser and V.J. Lieffers, 2007. Effects of *Corylus Cornuta* Stem Density on Root Suckering and Rooting Depth of Effects of *Populus Tremuloides*. *Canadian Journal of Botany* 85: 1041–1045. Available at: <https://www.nrcresearchpress.com/doi/pdf/10.1139/B07-089>.
- Munir, T.M., B. Xu, M. Perkins and M. Strack, 2014. Responses of Carbon Dioxide Flux and Plant Biomass to Water Table Drawdown in a Treed Peatland in Northern Alberta: A Climate Change Perspective. *Biogeosciences* 11(3): 807–820.
- Naeth, M.A., S.R. Wilkinson, D.D. Mackenzie, H.A. Archibald and C.B. Powter, 2013. Potential of LFH Mineral Soil Mixes for Reclamation of Forested Lands in Alberta. Oil Sands Research and Information Network, School of Energy and Environment, University of Alberta, School of Energy and the

Environment, Edmonton, Alberta. OSRIN Report No. TR-35. 64 pp. Available at: <https://era.library.ualberta.ca/items/87a3c608-75c4-4984-9c1d-baff05c312b2/view/8d3f8037-6856-4d7f-bb07-e00c039a9021/TR-35-20--20LFH.pdf>.

National Wetland Working Group, 1997. The Canadian Wetland Classification System. The Wetlands Research Centre, University of Waterloo, Waterloo, Ontario. 68 pp. Available at: [http://www.gret-perg.ulaval.ca/fileadmin/fichiers/fichiersGRET/pdf/Doc\\_generale/Wetlands.pdf](http://www.gret-perg.ulaval.ca/fileadmin/fichiers/fichiersGRET/pdf/Doc_generale/Wetlands.pdf).

Nilsson, M.-C. and D.A. Wardle, 2005. Understory Vegetation as a Forest Ecosystem Driver: Evidence from the Northern Swedish Boreal Forest. *Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment* 3(8): 421–428.

Nwaishi, F., R.M. Petrone, M.L. Macrae, J.S. Price, M. Strack and R. Andersen, 2016. Preliminary Assessment of Greenhouse Gas Emissions from a Constructed Fen on Post-Mining Landscape in the Athabasca Oil Sands Region, Alberta, Canada. *Ecological Engineering* 95: 119–128.

Nwaishi, F., R.M. Petrone, J.S. Price and R. Andersen, 2015. Towards Developing a Functional-Based Approach for Constructed Peatlands Evaluation in the Alberta Oil Sands Region, Canada. *Wetlands* 35(2): 211–225.

Osko, T., 2018. IFROG 2017 Scope of Work Deliverables Report. Prepared for industrial Reductions Options Group by Circle T Consulting, Inc. pp. 3-12.

Osko, T., C. Gillies and M. Pyper, 2018a. COSIA In-Situ Oil Sands Shared Practices for Working in and Around Wetlands. Canada's Oil Sands Innovation Alliance, Calgary, Alberta. 69 pp. Available at: <https://www.cosia.ca/sites/default/files/attachments/COSIA-WetlandSharedPracticesReport-2018-02-27.pdf>.

Osko, T. and M. Glasgow, 2010. Removing the Wellsite Footprint: Recommended Practices for Construction and Reclamation of Wellsites on Upland Forests in Boreal Alberta. University of Alberta, Department of renewable Resources, Edmonton, Alberta. 57 pp. plus appendices. Available at: [http://www.biology.ualberta.ca/faculty/stan\\_boutin/ilm/uploads/footprint/UplandRecommendations-FinalRevised-SmallFile.pdf](http://www.biology.ualberta.ca/faculty/stan_boutin/ilm/uploads/footprint/UplandRecommendations-FinalRevised-SmallFile.pdf).

Osko, T. and A. Macfarlane, 2001. Natural Reforestation on Seismic Lines and Wellsites in Comparison to Natural Burns or Logged Sites. Prepared for Alberta-Pacific Forest Industries, Inc., Boyle, Alberta. 18 pp.

Osko, T., M. Pyper and S. Odsen, 2018b. Faster Forests: A Visual Guide to Improved Construction and Reclamation Practices on Oil Sands Exploration Sites. Prepared for the Faster Forests Program. 28 pp.

Park, D., M. Sullivan, E. Bayne and G. Scrimgeour, 2008. Landscape-Level Stream Fragmentation Caused by Hanging Culverts along Roads in Alberta's Boreal Forest. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research* 38(3): 566–575.

Partington, M., C. Gillies, B. Gingras, C.E. Smith and J. Morissette, 2016. Resource Roads and Wetlands: A Guide for Planning, Construction and Maintenance. FPInnovations, Pointe Claire, Quebec. Special Publication SP-530E. 86 pp. Available at: <https://fpinnovations.ca/Extranet/Assets/ResearchReportsFO/SP-530E.pdf>.

Pigeon, K.E., M. Anderson, D. MacNearney, J. Cranston, G. Stenhouse and L. Finnegan, 2016. Toward the Restoration of Caribou Habitat: Understanding Factors Associated with Human Motorized Use of Legacy Seismic Lines. *Environmental Management* 58(5): 821–832.

- Plach, J.M., M.E. Wood, M.L. Macrae, T.J. Osko and R.M. Petrone, 2017. Effect of a Semi-Permanent Road on N, P, and CO<sub>2</sub> Dynamics in a Poor Fen on the Western Boreal Plain, Canada. *Ecohydrology* 10: 1–15.
- Polster, D., 2011. Effective Reclamation: Understanding the Ecology of Recovery. *Canadian Reclamation* 11(2): 16–23.
- von Post, L. and E. Granlund, 1926. *Södra Sveriges Torvtillgångar*. Norstedt, Stockholm, Sweden. 335 pp.
- Powers, R.F., 1999. On the Sustainable Productivity of Planted Forests. *New Forests* 17: 263–306.
- Powter, C.B., 2002. Glossary of Reclamation and Remediation Terms Used in Alberta – 7th Edition. Alberta Environment, Edmonton, Alberta. Report # SSB/LM/02-1. 90. Available at: <https://open.alberta.ca/dataset/c9fa40a2-b672-441f-9350-39419b1df905/resource/856641d8-e0be-4f0a-996d-8683c25d5928/download/glossaryreclamationterms7edition-2002.pdf>.
- Price, J., C. Evans, M. Evans, T. Allott and E. Shuttleworth, 2016. Peatland Restoration and Hydrology. IN: Peatland Restoration and Ecosystem Services: Science, Policy and Practice. Bonn, A., T. Allot, M.G. Evans, H. Joosten and R. Stoneman (Editors). Cambridge University Press. pp. 77-94.
- Pyper, M., J. Nishi and L. McNeil, 2014. Linear Feature Restoration in Caribou Habitat : A Summary of Current Practices and a Roadmap for Future Programs. Canada's Oil Sands Innovation Alliance, Calgary, Alberta. 38 pp. plus appendices. Available at: [https://www.cosia.ca/uploads/documents/id24/COSIA\\_Linear\\_Feature\\_Restoration\\_Caribou\\_Habitat.pdf](https://www.cosia.ca/uploads/documents/id24/COSIA_Linear_Feature_Restoration_Caribou_Habitat.pdf).
- Pyper, M.P., C.B. Powter and T. Vinge, 2013. Summary of Resiliency of Reclaimed Boreal Forest Landscapes Seminar. Oil Sands Research and Information Network, University of Alberta, School of Energy and the Environment, Edmonton, Alberta. OSRIN Report No. TR-30. 131 pp. Available at: [https://era.library.ualberta.ca/rails/active\\_storage/blobs/peKc8kDwLBjrXX2V57Gg5mby/TR-30-20--20Summary-20of-20Resiliency-20Seminar.pdf](https://era.library.ualberta.ca/rails/active_storage/blobs/peKc8kDwLBjrXX2V57Gg5mby/TR-30-20--20Summary-20of-20Resiliency-20Seminar.pdf).
- Ray, J.C., 2014. Defining Habitat Restoration for Boreal Caribou in the Context of National Recovery: A Discussion Paper. Prepared by the Wildlife Conservation Society Canada, Toronto, Ontario for Environment and Climate Change Canada, Ottawa, Ontario. 51 pp. Available at: [https://registrelep-sararegistry.gc.ca/virtual\\_sara/files/Boreal caribou habitat restoration discussion paper\\_dec2014.pdf](https://registrelep-sararegistry.gc.ca/virtual_sara/files/Boreal%20caribou%20habitat%20restoration%20discussion%20paper_dec2014.pdf).
- Rivera, D., B.M. Jáuregui and B. Peco, 2012. The Fate of Herbaceous Seeds during Topsoil Stockpiling: Restoration Potential of Seed Banks. *Ecological Engineering* 44: 94–101.
- Rocheffort, L., 2000. Sphagnum—A Keystone Genus in Habitat Restoration. *The Bryologist* 103(3): 503–508.
- Rocheffort, L., M.-C. LeBlanc, V. Bérubé, S. Hugron, S. Boudreau and R. Pouliot, 2016. Reintroduction of Fen Plant Communities on a Degraded Minerotrophic Peatland. *Botany* 94(11): 1041–1051. Available at: <http://www.nrcresearchpress.com/doi/10.1139/cjb-2016-0023>.
- Rokich, D.P., K.W. Dixon, K. Sivasithamparam and K.A. Meney, 2000. Topsoil Handling and Storage Effects on Woodland Restoration in Western Australia. *Restoration Ecology* 2 8(2): 196–208.
- Ruiz-Jaén, M.C. and T.M. Aide, 2005. Vegetation Structure, Species Diversity, and Ecosystem Processes as Measures of Restoration Success. *Forest Ecology and Management* 218: 159–173.

- Rydgren, K., R.H. Økland and G. Hestmark, 2004. Disturbance Severity and Community Resilience in a Boreal Forest. *Ecology* 85(7): 1906–1915.
- Rydgren, K. and G. Hestmark, 1997. The Soil Propagule Bank in a Boreal Old-Growth Spruce Forest: Changes with Depth and Relationship to Aboveground Vegetation. *Canadian Journal of Botany* 75: 121–128.
- Rydin, H. and J.K. Jeglum, 2015. *The Biology of Peatlands*. 2nd Edition. Oxford University Press. 400 pp.
- Saraswati, S., R.M. Petrone, M.M. Rahman, G.J. McDermid, B. Xu and M. Strack, 2019. Hydrological Effects of Resource Access Roads on Boreal Forested Peatlands. In Prep .
- Schauffler, M., G.L. Jacobson, A.L. Pugh IV and S.A. Norton, 1996. Influence of Vegetational Structure on Capture of Salt and Nutrient Aerosols in a Maine Peatland. *Ecological Applications* 6(1): 263–268.
- Schindler, D.W., D. Walker, T. Davis and R. Westwood, 2006. Determining Effects of an All Weather Logging Road on Winter Woodland Caribou Habitat Use in South-Eastern Manitoba: 24–27.
- Schoonmaker, A., S. Schreiber, C. Powter and B. Drozdowski, 2018. Optimizing Weed Control for Progressive Reclamation: Risk Analysis on Regulated Weeds in the Boreal Region. Prepared for Canada's Oil Sands Innovation Alliance by InnoTech Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta. 68 pp. Available at: [https://www.cosia.ca/sites/default/files/attachments/COSIA Optimizing Weed Control Risk Analysis on Regulated Weeds in the Boreal Region - 2019 01 30.pdf](https://www.cosia.ca/sites/default/files/attachments/COSIA%20Optimizing%20Weed%20Control%20Risk%20Analysis%20on%20Regulated%20Weeds%20in%20the%20Boreal%20Region%20-%202019%2001%2030.pdf).
- Schott, K.M., J. Karst and S.M. Landhäusser, 2014. The Role of Microsite Conditions in Restoring Trembling Aspen (*Populus Tremuloides* Michx) from Seed. *Restoration Ecology* 22(3): 292–295.
- Shunina, A., 2014. Revegetation of Fen Peatlands Following Oil and Gas Extraction in Northern Alberta. M.Sc. Thesis. Department of Agricultural, Food and Nutritional Science, University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta. 138 pp. plus appendices. Available at: [https://era.library.ualberta.ca/items/80703678-0565-4cb4-8e02-28c9bcb70b05/view/7bb02fdc-1c8a-4d7e-857c-57943e3f2d56/Shunina\\_Annna\\_201501\\_Msc.pdf](https://era.library.ualberta.ca/items/80703678-0565-4cb4-8e02-28c9bcb70b05/view/7bb02fdc-1c8a-4d7e-857c-57943e3f2d56/Shunina_Annna_201501_Msc.pdf).
- Shunina, A., T.J. Osko, L. Foote and E.W. Bork, 2016. Comparison of Site Preparation and Revegetation Strategies within a Sphagnum-Dominated Peatland Following Removal of an Oil Well Pad. *Ecological Restoration* 34(3): 225–235.
- Sjors, H., 1948. Myrvegetation i Bergsladen [Mire Vegetation in Bergsladen]. *Acta Phytogeographica Suecica* 21: 1–299.
- Skrindo, A.B., 2005. Natural Revegetation from Indigenous Soil. Ph.D. Thesis. Department of Plant and Environmental Sciences, Norwegian University of Life Sciences, As, Norway. Available at: <https://www.arkitektur.no/157616/EcoPublication?pid=NAL-EcoPublication-Attachment>.
- Small, C., D. Degenhardt, B. Drozdowski, S. Thacker, C. Powter, A. Schoonmaker and S. Schreiber, 2018. Optimizing Weed Control for Progressive Reclamation: Literature Review. Prepared for Canada's Oil Sands Innovation Alliance by InnoTech Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta. 48 pp. Available at: [https://www.cosia.ca/sites/default/files/attachments/COSIA Optimizing Weed Control Literature Review - 2019 01 30.pdf](https://www.cosia.ca/sites/default/files/attachments/COSIA%20Optimizing%20Weed%20Control%20Literature%20Review%20-%202019%2001%2030.pdf).
- Sobze, J., M. Gauthier and R. Thomas, 2012. Peatland Restoration - Harvest and Transfer of Donor Material. NAIT Boreal Research Institute, Peace River, Alberta. 4 pp. Available at: [http://www.nait.ca/docs/1\\_donor\\_site\\_harvesting\\_and\\_moss\\_transfer.pdf](http://www.nait.ca/docs/1_donor_site_harvesting_and_moss_transfer.pdf).

- Soil Classification Working Group, 1998. The Canadian System of Soil Classification. 3rd Edition. Agriculture and Agri Food Canada, Ottawa, Ontario. National Research Council Press, Publication No. 1646 (Revised).
- Stahl, P.D., B.L. Perryman, S. Sharmasarkar and L.C. Munn, 2002. Topsoil Stockpiling versus Exposure to Traffic: A Case Study on in Situ Uranium Wellfields. *Restoration Ecology* 10(1): 129–137.
- Strack, M., D. Softa, M. Bird and B. Xu, 2018. Impact of Winter Roads on Boreal Peatland Carbon Exchange. *Global Change Biology* 24(1): e201–e212.
- Tahvanainen, T., 2004. Water Chemistry of Mires in Relation to the Poor-Rich Vegetation Gradient and Contrasting Geochemical Zones of the North-Eastern Fennoscandian Shield. *Folia Geobotanica* 39(4): 353–369.
- Tarnocai, C., J.G. Canadell, E. a. G. Schuur, P. Kuhry, G. Mazhitova and S. Zimov, 2009. Soil Organic Carbon Pools in the Northern Circumpolar Permafrost Region. *Global Biogeochemical Cycles* 23(2). Available at: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1029/2008GB003327>.
- Turner, M.G., W.L. Baker, C.J. Peterson and R.K. Peet, 1998. Factors Influencing Succession: Lessons from Large, Infrequent Natural Disturbances. *Ecosystems* 1(6): 511–523. Available at: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/3658752>  
<http://www.jstor.org/stable/pdfplus/3658752.pdf>.
- Ulanova, N.G., 2000. The Effects of Windthrow on Forests at Different Spatial Scales: A Review. *Forest Ecology and Management* 135: 155–167. Available at: <http://linkinghub.elsevier.com/retrieve/pii/S0378112700003078>.
- Vinge, T. and V. Lieffers, 2013. Evaluation of Forest Reclamation Efforts on Linear Corridors of the Little Smokey. Prepared for the Evergreen Learning and Innovation Society, Grande Prairie, Alberta. 25 pp. Available at: <https://www.evergreeninnovation.ca/wp-content/uploads/2017/11/Linear-Corridors-Report3.pdf>.
- Visser, S., J. Fujikawa, C.L. Griffiths and D. Parkinson, 1984. Effect of Topsoil Storage on Microbial Activity, Primary Production and Decomposition Potential. *Plant and Soil* 82(1): 41–50.
- Vitt, D.H., 2017. Peatlands of Continental North America. IN: *The Wetland Book*. Springer Netherlands. pp. 1-6.
- Vitt, D.H., L.A. Halsey, I.E. Bauer and C. Campbell, 2011a. Spatial and Temporal Trends in Carbon Storage of Peatlands of Continental Western Canada through the Holocene. *Canadian Journal of Earth Sciences* 37(5): 683–693. Available at: <http://www.nrcresearchpress.com/doi/abs/10.1139/e99-097>.
- Vitt, D.H., L.A. Halsey and S.C. Zoltai, 1994. The Bog Landforms of Continental Western Canada in Relation to Climate and Permafrost Patterns. *Arctic and Alpine Research* 26(1): 1–13.
- Vitt, D.H., R.K. Wieder, B. Xu, M. Kaskie and S. Koropchak, 2011b. Peatland Establishment on Mineral Soils: Effects of Water Level, Amendments, and Species after Two Growing Seasons. *Ecological Engineering* 37(2): 354–363.
- Wachowski, J., 2012. Transfer of Live Aspen Roots as a Reclamation Technique – Effects of Soil Depth, Root Diameter and Fine Root Growth on Root Suckering Ability. M.Sc. Thesis. Department of Renewable Resources, University of ALberta, Edmonton, Alberta. 105. Available at: [https://era.library.ualberta.ca/rails/active\\_storage/blobs/XTCuQMtQYgsoqY8kF9wpZN2V/Wachowski\\_Julia\\_Fall-202012.pdf](https://era.library.ualberta.ca/rails/active_storage/blobs/XTCuQMtQYgsoqY8kF9wpZN2V/Wachowski_Julia_Fall-202012.pdf).



- Wachowski, J., S.M. Landhäusser and V.J. Lieffers, 2014. Depth of Root Placement, Root Size and Carbon Reserves Determine Reproduction Success of Aspen Root Fragments. *Forest Ecology and Management* 313: 83–90.
- Welham, C., 2013. Factors Affecting Ecological Resilience of Reclaimed Oil Sands Uplands. Oil Sands Research and Information Network, School of Energy and Environment, University of Alberta, School of Energy and the Environment, Edmonton, Alberta. OSRIN Report No. TR-34. 44 pp. Available at: [https://era.library.ualberta.ca/rails/active\\_storage/blobs/ym3N2WurFvWF1yL6VkfP4rKG/TR-34-20--20Upland-20Resilience.pdf](https://era.library.ualberta.ca/rails/active_storage/blobs/ym3N2WurFvWF1yL6VkfP4rKG/TR-34-20--20Upland-20Resilience.pdf).
- Whittington, J., C.C. St. Clair and G. Mercer, 2005. Spatial Responses of Wolves to Roads and Trails in Mountain Valleys. *Ecological Applications* 15(2): 543–553.
- Whittle, C.A., L.C. Duchesne and T. Needham, 1997. The Importance of Buried Seeds and Vegetative Propagation in the Development of Postfire Plant Communities. *Environmental Reviews* 5: 79–87.
- Wieder, R.K., 2006. Primary Production in Boreal Peatlands. *Boreal Peatland Ecosystems* (188): 145–164.
- Willier, C., 2017. Changes in Peatland Plant Community Composition and Stand Structure Due to Road Induced Flooding and Desiccation. M.Sc Thesis. Department of Renewable Resources, University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta. 101 pp. Available at: <https://era.library.ualberta.ca/items/8c87f827-8290-4715-a4f7-8e68a04014bb/download/cf04782c-38a6-48a1-8202-b5a671f25108>.
- Wood, J.L., 2010. Peatland Communities and Environmental Parameters in an Undisturbed Boreal Poor Fen and a Comparison with Haul Road Disturbances. M.Sc. Thesis. Department of Biology, Southern Illinois University, Carbondale, Carbondale, Illinois.
- Wood, M.E., M.L. Macrae, M. Strack, J.S. Price, T.J. Osko and R.M. Petrone, 2016. Spatial Variation in Nutrient Dynamics among Five Different Peatland Types in the Alberta Oil Sands Region. *Ecohydrology* 9(4): 688–699.
- Yu, Z., 2006. Modeling Ecosystem Processes and Peat Accumulation in Boreal Peatlands. Chapter 14 IN: *Boreal Peatland Ecosystems*. Wieder, R.K. and D.H.Vitt (Editors). Springer, Berlin, Germany. pp. 313-329.
- Zoltai, S.C. and D.H. Vitt, 1995. Canadian Wetlands: Environmental Gradients and Classification. *Vegetatio* 118: 131–137. Available at: [http://www.cfs.nrcan.gc.ca/bookstore\\_pdfs/19047.pdf](http://www.cfs.nrcan.gc.ca/bookstore_pdfs/19047.pdf).

---

## APPENDIX A: SUMMARY OF INTERVIEWS

---

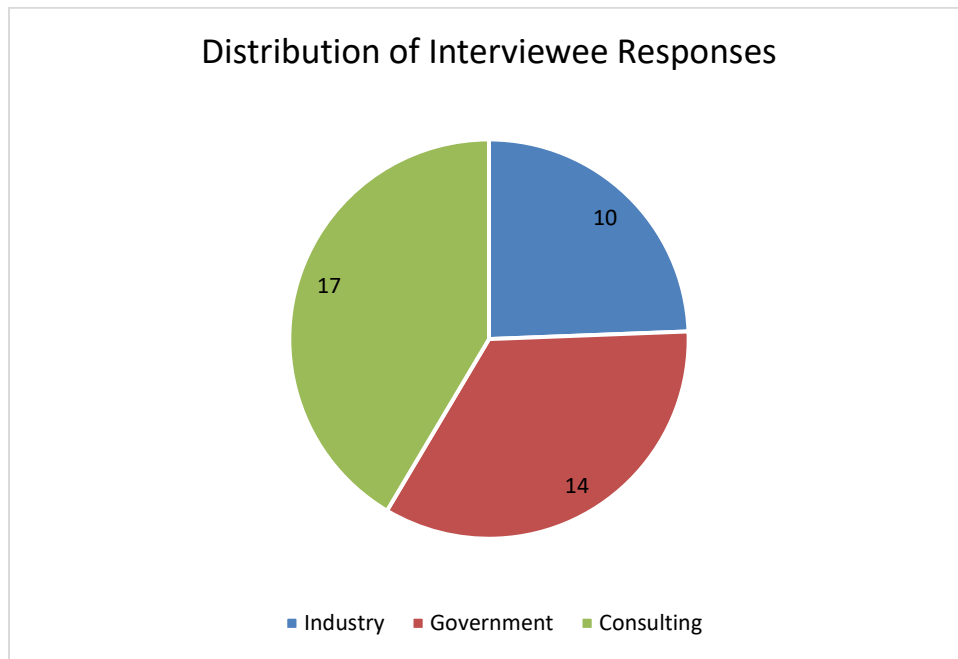
The responses to the interview questions are provided below. The responses are not attributed to individuals or organizations but have been organized into blocks of related comments/subjects.

The following context was provided for the interviews:

*In the context of this project, the term 'site' is defined as a legacy upstream oil and gas wellsite and the associated facilities requiring reclamation per Alberta's reclamation criteria for peatland and/or forested sites. The specific sites in question are those that were constructed using imported mineral soil pads in peatlands and/or upland sites that have had vegetation encroachment which present one or more reclamation deficiencies to meet current regulatory criteria. This project was established to evaluate the benefits and drawbacks of removing mineral soil pads in peatlands, and disturbing established vegetation to modify soil and landscape features required to meet reclamation criteria. The objective of the project is to provide regulators, practitioners and industry stakeholders with management options supported by case studies, and a literature review to assist in making decisions around appropriate management and certification. The goal is to ensure that functioning ecosystems can be restored with an appropriate level of activity, and that sites will be eligible for reclamation certificate application.*

*In the context of this project, a peatland is defined as in the "Reclamation Criteria for Wellsites and Associated Facilities for Peatlands" (AEP, 2017) to be lands covered by peat to a minimal depth of 40 cm. Other wetlands, such as those defined in the Alberta Wetland Classification System as a marsh, shallow open water or swamp (ESRD, 2015) with less than 40 cm of accumulated peat may also be included in the assessment.*

A total of 41 people provided feedback either in writing or through phone interviews. The distribution of responses between government, industry and consulting is provided in Figure 8.



**Figure 8. Distribution of interviewee responses.**

The responses to the interview questions are provided below. The responses are not attributed to individuals or organizations but have been organized into blocks of related comments/subjects.

1. *What site/local/regional characteristics and/or conditions would lead you to apply for / approve leaving a mineral soil pad in place in a peatlands?*

#### General Comments

- If they can be creative with the fill and utilize it with upland materials/sites – that is one thing, but the challenge is really in the true peatland sites.
- From a regulator perspective, an application from a specific company may be deemed stronger, where they have shown that some of their higher risk sites (sites likely or are having an impact to surrounding vegetation) have been pulled/or mitigated.
- Not in the department’s best interest to leave a pad in place. In general it creates a negative impact on the environment.
- Do not encourage it and seldom entertain it
- Prefers not to leave pads in place because pads do not produce the same type of forest that reclaimed upland forests produce.
- Site by site (look at landscape holistically)
- One-off single site (i.e., no potential for an area based program)
- Access roads – would not allow it to be left unless it is servicing other sites. Transference of LOC may be required. Or do a partial reclamation if access is no longer required.

- Considerations for the wetland policy may be required
  - If you want to create a change in land use you would be required to make a wetland elsewhere (need to ensure that the request equates with the policy or PAY a penalty)
  - The borrow pit could be used as a replacement for the pad left in place if it met the functional equivalent in terms of the wetland definition.
- Need to ensure “forests” are not being considered ecologically more valuable than “wetlands”.
- From a “change in land use perspective” not as interested in sites that have not had reclamation occur at this time.
  - Could be looking towards doing this when planning reclamation prior to conducting any “dirt work”, but don’t always control reclamation activates form the beginning. Inherit many sites that have had partial reclamation activities already initiated.
- Tried to approach reclamation approvers for leaving some things in place – have been able to leave some of the older more remote sites
- BC experience
  - From current perspective not having to do this. In BC there isn’t a mechanism (or need) to do this because there aren’t as many legacy sites that are relevant.
  - In BC, the First Nations stakeholders are driving the end land use
  - They are tying restoration to development for all new development therefore companies have to have a “restoration” plan to get approval for development.
  - There is currently a lawsuit in BC that will likely impact activities across all provinces in traditional lands. Foresee that Alberta will be following suit with B.C. [Important consideration because there may be changes in the future that influence how activities are conducted within traditional lands].
  - Consider doing a post-abandonment but pre-reclamation assessment with stakeholder involvement and then deciding what the appropriate revegetation plan would be (if pad removal wasn’t an option, then work with the stakeholder/OGC to develop an appropriate revegetation plan).
- Old sites – Need to break it down and discuss the access roads and wellsites separately.

#### Original Plan / Commitment

- What the company agreed to do when the disposition was granted/renewed
- Companies need to consider what was agreed to in the original agreement. Particularly if the sites is still owned by the original owner. Sometimes companies just want to not complete.
- NOTE – do not want to condone bad behavior (i.e., if it was agreed upon when a disposition was granted that the company would return the site to equivalent capability as existed prior to disturbance (with no change in land use), then that is the expectation).
  - Not reasonable to have left a site unattended for years and vegetation re-grew which led to the assumption that it would be justified to request a change in end land use.
  - The change in end-land use needs to be justified by more than just the vegetation established on a mineral soil pad.
  - Other considerations need to be made for the regional implications, the borrow material, the borrow pit, the surrounding landscape (whether it blends with the surrounding topography), etc.

- Consider how long the site has been in place for and the requirements under which it (and the borrow pit) were constructed and the expectations for reclamation.
- Need to consider what was in the original agreement (only if provided by the company; it is not AEPs role to dig up site information on behalf of the company)

#### Documentation / Rationale

- Companies provide reasoning with background and explanation for why they feel the sites requires a change in end land use.
- Only have what is available/provided to enable a decision (i.e., aerial photos; description of site on DSA, etc.)
  - Limitations are explicitly outlined in the application and why they should be allowed to remain
- AEP response for OSE pad left in place (vegetation criteria passes – improvement left in place) – not change in land use.
  - Justifications were provided that the DSA and photos show that the vegetation and criteria are growing well.

#### Current Impacts / Uses / Status

- If it can be demonstrated that there is no adverse environmental impact. This can be assessed through vegetation, hydrology, pooling water, etc. Vegetation is the best indicator of negative impacts. Offsite trees will appear unhealthy, vegetation surrounding the site will be unhealthy, etc.
- There is no refuse/debris.
- No major slumping occurring.
- Under unique circumstances:
- First consideration: What is the benefit to having left the pad in place? Example – high traffic area that is used by the public and without the pad the recreational trails would have an adverse effect on the environment.
- Within a peatland the site may not always been disturbed (many are minimal disturbance sites and thus there isn't a pad) – reclamation activities are thus minimal.
- Current site conditions are playing a major role in terms of the decision (rather than thinking about where the site may end up (even with minimal additional activity)).
- Passes detailed site assessment
- Abiotic and Biotic properties of the site resemble or are on a trajectory of an upland ecosystem
- Was the whole wellsite padded, how thick was it padded, what was used, where did it come from (it might actually need to be put back)
- Where is it located (in sensitive areas – caribou areas)
- Size – wellhead (4'x4' area that is still padded) – not really impacting the function of the system, not restricting water movement, vegetation growing.
- If it is deemed feasible to switch to the upland forested criteria and meet equivalent land capability with that criteria (landscape may not be homogeneous, however the small area is functional).

## Reclamation Methods / Soils

- There are two considerations when thinking about partial pad removal:
  - Skim the top off and try to reclaim to the appropriate peatland; or
  - Skim the sides off and re-contour so that it is more representative in the environment (lower the elevation around the perimeter and re-contour the top (could place material in the middle and create a hill).
  - Relative relationship to the surrounding area (species may not be the same, but the “hill” is representative of similar landforms in the area).
  - Sustainable, self-perpetuating isolated ecosystem.
  - Consider things like: nutrient cycling, litter development, etc.
- Partial pad removal (removing fill so that it is level with surrounding wetland) or recontouring of the pad (creating swales, reducing the overall footprint of the pad by creating a small, dune-like hills) in my opinion is probably the best option, so that conditions that appear natural are created, as well conditions that could support the initiation of a swamp or fen are created. Also, recontouring could reduce impacts to off-site drainage.
- If the pad is left in place – would want to see the mineral material de-compacted with an appropriate growth medium and recontouring.
- Just submitted a conservation and reclamation plan: Anything that was over 40 cm of peat – leave the pad in place.
  - Take off surface infrastructure, gravel, decompacting the clay, cover with minimal organic/suitable growing media
  - Shape pad to surrounding topography
  - Restore any drainage that’s needed.
- For anything less than 40 cm of peat – field level call for construction but likely removed and filled with clay and left as an upland.
- Only consider sites where partial pad removal has occurred to generate an appropriate growing medium that would support a change in land use to an upland forest community. Thus, the site should have been recontoured to blend with the surrounding landscape as much as possible, deep-ripped to ensure there are no rooting restrictions and appropriate nutrients are available to support plant growth.
- A site where partial decompaction has been completed. Some rooting medium has been established.
- Partial pad removal – a full pad in place doesn’t have any topsoil, therefore an appropriate growing medium needs to be established to ensure ELC in the long term; deep rip it, blend it in to the surrounding system.
- Assumption is that the filter cloth under the pad is preventing root development/penetration. The material has no organic matter so it doesn’t hold the trees up as they age (i.e., it is not a good rooting medium to provide good structure in the long term).
- Did the application/request for a change in lands use, show any of the following (none of these things are currently policy requirements, just items that strengthen a request)
  - That the forested eco-site selection was both locally common and suitable to the pad soil characteristics.

- Any investigation that the pad was chemically suitable to the forested site proposed (eg. Naturally occurring sulphates brought to surface).

#### Borrow / Disposal Site

- Within a large network of pads one of the biggest challenges is borrows. Old sites – built in 80s and the borrow site has been reclaimed/restored – thus nowhere to put the mineral material. Refusal form AEP for temporary work space to go back
- The wetland destroyed when returning the fill to a borrow pit could be close to equivalent to the wetland created in the former location of the pad.
- 6. Condition of borrow pit – The pad material has to go somewhere, so if the borrow pit is revegetated and functioning as a wetland that would be additional cause to seek approval. Also, there are significant logistical issues to filling in a borrow pit, especially in winter (e.g., pumping/squeezing water, saturated soil)
- 2) in-situ area (end of life area would require a real consideration for what to do with the mineral material – borrows (landscape borrows are just recontoured; pit borrow) are typically reclaimed within 2 years of creating the borrow site. Toward end of life the material could not be put back thus that drives end of life closure plan (islands of uplands in the area).
- Consideration for where the borrow material came from – if the borrow is now a functioning wetland with wildlife use then there is a stronger argument for leaving the mineral material in place for the pad.
- No place to return the pad to
- Overgrown borrow pit – fully revegetated and established as a marsh
- Is there a borrow pit that the mineral material could be put back to, or if the material needs to find a new “home”.
  - Is there a net environmental benefit to removing the mineral soil material.
- Remote access to haul pad material back to the borrow pit
- Source of the material (borrow)
  - Example, landscape borrow that doesn’t have a place to put the material back
  - If the unreclaimed borrow is taking away from productive forest land then there is a stronger desire to have the material returned and the borrow pit reclaimed.
  - If the borrow that was created and is now a productive wetland and the water is serving a purpose (fire control, wildlife and waterfowl) consideration may be given to leaving the material in place.
- Not wanting a borrow filled that has been created and is providing functioning wetland
- Consider leaving a mineral soil pad in a peatland if there is nowhere to remove the material.
- If the in situ company has paid the “in lieu fee” they have effectively purchased the right to leave the pad in place

#### Site Access / Remoteness / Cost / Reclamation Impacts

- Remoteness of site is a consideration due to the effort to reclaim.

- Remote access is not as much of a factor for leaving a mineral soil pad in place (or the associated borrow pit and access road) for peatlands. The size of the project warrants the amount of effort required to go in and do the reclamation (as opposed to remote upland sites).
- Excessively long, costly or difficult winter access
- 4 – Site by site characteristics come into play such as length of access road and remoteness and growth of existing vegetation
- Sensitive Wildlife Habitat and Vegetation Area impact concerns to reconstruct an access road (frozen or non-frozen) in order to remove the pad and haul back to the borrow pit. Keeping in mind the question: what are we gaining from a holistic perspective if we implement disturbances to gain a certain reclamation in one area?
- I would consider leaving a pad in place in most conditions - pad removal is costly and there is no guarantee that a functioning peatland can be reclaimed. The diesel required to remove a pad would create a huge carbon footprint.
- Cost is not an appropriate justification for leaving a pad in place.
- “Doing more harm in going in there and removing than if the site is left in place”
  - Need to confirm that this is actually true. It isn’t necessarily about money, but they do want to consider the environmental impacts and consider the distance and access.
  - Is it a “routine” request from a company or is it more a unique request – weighs into the decision.
  - Need to determine if it is a justifiable request.
- In their experience, the driving factor to leave a pad in place is based on costs and remoteness of sites.
- Access issues going into the sites
- Remote site – fully forested
- Preface – sometimes the cure (or it’s side effects) is not better than the problem itself
  - Net gain to the site or the environment to reclaiming
- Net cost to the environment to “fix” the problem needs to be taken into consideration.
- Need to ask the question: Can we actually go in and do improvements to the site that will result in a net environmental benefit? Now, or in the long term.
- Need to consider the advantage to fixing something and whether or not the level of disturbance required is warranted to alleviate the “issue”
- Need to discuss HOW you would go about fixing it and equate that to what the environmental effect would be for reclaiming it or not
- If the net impact to the environment currently outweighs the benefit to completing the reclamation.
  - Bringing in equipment requires a significant disturbance.
  - What is actually gained by conducting work?
- Concerns that disturbing the pad and hauling material out would increase the spread of any invasive species of concern in a sensitive habitat area.
- Need to think about implications about the impact of removal of a small feature such as the wellhead) – information and justification needs to be provided.
- If some topsoil was re-distributed on the site, but it is lacking in some areas.



## Vegetation Status

- Needs to meet upland vegetation criteria or a combination of upland/peatland
- Change in land use (forested criteria) – type of vegetation and how long the site has been there.
- Is the site growing trees and shrubs, etc.
- Established site with vegetation growing
- Volunteer agronomic grasses
  - When a site hasn't been planted and these agronomics are not in the surrounding landscape, it difficult to justify their existence.
- Already has a forest established on it (already indicates that soil was conducive to growth) (self-established forest)
- If there was nothing growing on it already then he would recommend it be removed
- 7. Vegetation – This is lower on the list because it is possible to revegetate the pad accordingly, but significant natural recovery on the pad would lead me to seek approval (in the same manner as I would for upland).
- Regeneration is occurring, ideally on trajectory to surrounding ecosystem.
- Pad supporting productive tree growth and desirable vegetation
- What is the current situation on the site (resembling conditions offsite) encroachment of woody species (shrubs and trees) vs grass that has been seeded
- Does the on-site vegetation resemble similar vegetation off-site
- Natural Ingression of suitable species to the area.
- Of the mineral soil pads within peatlands that have vegetation established on them, they are often revegetated with grass and willows, but have very limited ability to grow forest species.
- Species composition
- The site would need to be re-vegetated with species that are common to the surrounding upland ecosystem.
- Fully vegetated sites with mature trees – vegetation override – if vegetation meets criteria
- Determining that is feasible to establish vegetation species on the pad that will meet land use criteria (i.e., establish *Salix* sp. and understory similar to a boreal setting to meet wildlife use criteria)
- What vegetation is growing. Is it similar to what is growing around there. Non-native species were often planted on a site and are not desirable in the area
- 2 – Plant community growing on-site
- 3 – Plant community needs to represent what's growing up their off-site (e.g., should be trajectory to a forest)
- Did the application/request for a change in lands use, show any of the following (none of these things are currently policy requirements, just items that strengthen a request)
  - Any discussion on how the risks of pad forested reclamation success will be managed. (e.g., Additional monitoring of planted trees).

## Hydrology / Drainage / Elevation

- Current or potential adverse effect to the surrounding wetland. I would look at the below risk factors:
  - Fen vs Bog (fen being perceived as more likely to have drainage impacts)

- Linear vs non-linear (linear being considered more likely to cause drainage impacts)
- Existing (occurred post disturbance but before applying for RC) presence of vegetation death or changes in community in the surrounding wetland.
- Natural drainage/hydrology not impeded.
- 1. Hydrology – is the pad having significant adverse effect on water movement and vegetation? Example: flooded area upstream up the pad and dryer downstream. This can be worse with a padded access road than the well pad itself.
- 1 – Hydrology, ensuring hydrology isn't being impacted off and on-site. More of a visual assessment, but also wants to see historical air photos to prove no hydrology issues overtime
- If the pad doesn't interfere with hydrologic flow.
- No evidence of long term impacts to hydrology
- Additionally, they see displacement of water as the biggest issue with pads.
- Does it disrupt the hydrology; if it is impacting hydrology, it would be important to remediate it, but not necessarily remove the material.
- Noting that the regional hydrology hasn't been impacted overall.
- Hydrological function
- If the mineral soil pad has sunken below natural grade and has peat forming species growing at the site
- Sunken pads (low reveal; maybe <20 cm)
- Determining that is feasible to complete contouring on the existing pad to ensure regional and site-specific water flow is maintained
- In some instances, it might be beneficial to remove a pad when it causes excessive off-site impacts to drainage.

#### Cumulative Effects / Regional Context

- Regionally, where there are higher densities padded infrastructure remaining in a watershed (e.g., HUC 8 mapping), decreases the likelihood of getting a pad approved in place. Footprint management is a regional consideration.
- Regional conditions, I would think, should be considered in the pre-construction planning stages and. Having a high number of pads in a single peatland should be prevented before it gets to the reclamation stage.
- Geographic location in proximity to other infrastructure (for example – if it is the first pad in a series of pads in an area that will continue to be accessed for multiple years, it may be considered to leave in place).
- 2. Cumulative effect – are there other nearby pads that are have a cumulative adverse effect on function of the wetland?
- Did the application/request for a change in lands use, show any of the following (none of these things are currently policy requirements, just items that strengthen a request)
  - Indication that the proposed end land use of the remaining pad was locally common in the natural subregion?

## Local Context / Wetland / Upland Transition

- If it is a forest in the middle of a fen/bog and there is no upland forest nearby, then less likely to give consideration.
- What does the site look like in terms of the matrix for the entire surrounding area (if the area is a mix of both upland and lowland then it fits better).
- If there is a lot of bog/fen in the area, would consider landscape diversification if it can provide value.
- Proximity to other upland characteristics (similar landscape with respect to topography) in the general area ( so that the site can blend into the landscape and not be an upland feature in the middle of a wetland/peatland)
- 3. Location – is the pad on the fringes of a wetland and ties into upland area, or completely surrounded by wetland?
- 4. Landform – Could the pad be reclaimed to be representative of other upland features within the wetland, or is it a large, uninterrupted wetland?
- 5. Land use – Green Area or White Area? Remote or not? What is the proximity to land use other than forested/wetland and potential for future development? Example: Edson area where agriculture encroaches into natural areas.
- Sites that have an established and functioning upland vegetation system and can fit in with the regional landscape.
  - Upland terrestrial plants and shrubs (meeting equivalent land capability from an upland island scenario)
  - Lack of erosion
- If the site is in close proximity to natural upland topography and the mineral soil pad has similar vegetation to the natural upland topography
- Creating transitional sites between peatland and upland sites.
- Clay pad on the edge of a bog or fen that is not blocking the overall flow and hydrology of the area
- Adjoining upland or close to upland areas
- Under unique circumstances:
  - First consideration: What is the benefit to having left the pad in place? Example – If the site is on the fringe; transitional area where there is upland/peatland within immediate proximity of the site to ensure it is more compatible with the surroundings.
- In some instances, it might be beneficial to remove a pad when it is located in a transitional area where the pad material can easily be moved to the upland portion of the wellsite.
- Did the application/request for a change in lands use, show any of the following. None of these things are currently policy requirements, just items that strengthen a request.
  - That the pad would be contoured into the existing landscape?

## Wetland Type

- If a pad has been left in place and it is in a fen then it is unlikely to be successful even as an upland.
  - JACOS site is a good example.
- Wetland type influences the decision
  - Fen – take the mineral down to the surrounding elevation and try to establish fen peatland species.

- Bog is more amenable to pulling the clay out. Likely good success to pull all the clay material out, particularly in scenarios where the clay material was not placed more than 1 to 1.5 m thick.
- In his experience, both fen and bog peatlands have had successful pad removal (i.e., not peatland dependant). Although a fen is easier to get things to grow afterwards.

## Summary

- The type of peatland is a factor: pad removal can be successful for both fens and bogs, but fens may recover more quickly.
- Pads that have been recontoured to blend into the landscape, have been deep ripped to reduce compaction, or have had partial removal already are more likely to get application/approval.
- When it can be shown that the pads is not impacting offsite drainage, approval is more likely.
- The condition of the borrow pit is a factor. If the borrow pit is already revegetating into a wetland system, it may be more feasible to keep the pad in place as the clay material would likely be placed back in the borrow pit.
- If natural recovery or revegetation success is proven successful, an application may be made and/or approved to keep a pad in place.
  - However, regulators do not consider vegetation alone to be a high priority or appropriate justification to keep a pad in place.
- An application or approval may be sought where a change in land use to upland forest could result in landscape diversification, or an upland forest is representative of other landscape features.
- However, change in land use is low priority of the AEP, and it is important to ensure forests are not being considered more important than wetlands.
- Cumulative effects can result in non-approval or non-application. Where pad density is high, networks of pads are present, or the pad is in close proximity to other infrastructure, approval is less likely.
- The original agreement between the company and land manager should be considered.
- There is a need to evaluate the idea that going in and removing the pad could be more harmful than keeping it in place.
- It seems that industry and consultants are more likely to consider vegetation re-establishment as a condition that would merit leaving a pad in place, whereas regulators consider the landscape and soil as factors more likely to merit leaving a pad in place.

2: *What vegetation characteristics and/or conditions would lead you to apply for / approve a criteria variance (i.e., how do you determine if the site is appropriately revegetating):*

## General

- BC experience
  - My work has predominantly been in BC; therefore, the criteria is subject to professional justification. The key goal in BC is to demonstrate that the site is on the trajectory to adjacent land use or similar land use capabilities and at a minimum 80% ground cover of a

mix of agronomic and native plants. In my experience, most pads are left in place; therefore, essentially you have change the micro landscape onsite to that resembling boreal forest vs. muskeg as the borrow pit material is typically clay based. To determine if the site is revegetating properly, considerations would include:

- Are short lived agronomics feasible to help outcompete aggressive invasive species until a canopy of suitable grasses, shrubs, forbs, trees establish? If yes than I would apply even with the use of agronomics if it is evident that the site vegetation trajectory is towards boreal/muskeg.
- In the case of a partial pad reclamation including native seeding and/or planting of native species plugs, I would apply if the vegetation cover or stems/ha were not at a suitable rate if it were clear that ingression would occur over time without the concern of invasive species.
- In BC, it is not a formal process. They would have to meet with the oil and gas regulator to discuss the site.
- Need to take each site and asses the specific limitations associated with a variance request and evaluate the long-term impacts of making a decision.
- Site specific – mineral on mineral; established forest community
- Woody debris concentration – is there a fire risk?

#### Criteria / Policy

- Not in the role of approving criteria variance, however in general default to criteria for the respective land uses.
- Variance is a new thing (there is no policy or guidance around what the requirement is).
- Note: variance is very poorly defined
- Not clear how AEP needs to play a role in this.
- Meets reclamation criteria
- Follow the criteria as per vegetation override.
- If a site passes the forested criteria in terms of the vegetation component then it is simple to provide justification for other soil and landscape factors. Site must be able to meet the vegetation component of the forested criteria, then an override can be considered. Wouldn't consider applying for a variance if the vegetation didn't meet criteria. [He was primarily focussed on trees, but looking at it from a "forest" perspective – thus the layers of the vegetation would be present].
- What did they apply for – forested criteria, peatland criteria, tame pasture criteria [thus there needs to be proper justification for the land use change and the appropriate vegetation growing for the criteria].
- Generally, I use the stem density requirement of the current forested criteria to gauge whether a variance request is appropriate or not. If it meets or exceeds the required stem density at most (e.g., 85%) of the assessment points and the vegetation appears healthy, then I will pursue a variance. The only exception is if there is a landscape issue that poses a safety risk (e.g., unstable slope). This includes if the recovered species are shrubs only (e.g., willows and roses) that some people interpret as 'less valuable' than conifers, because they still represent an early seral stage and are still valuable to ecosystem function and recovery.

- In regards to herbaceous vegetation, I will still seek a variance if the woody stem count is high but desirable herbaceous cover (native forbs and grasses) does not meet criteria, because I believe that woody vegetation drives the succession of the vegetation and that native forbs will return as the forest floor (LFH) recovers and the canopy closes.
- Criteria variance – vegetation overrides are considered when the vegetation meets the forested criteria.
- What is threshold government will accept? What guidance is available to practitioners.
- General comment – timeline to get variance in well program, better to define practitioner leeway

## Objective / Land Use

- Overall – really looking for getting back to ELC. Could end up taking longer if a disturbance is required, but the driver has to be ELC.
- If equivalent capability is met
- Government and Practitioners all have a common GOAL, which is to create a forest, thus it doesn't necessarily make sense to start at ground zero twice. If a site has a functioning forest that meets the vegetation criteria within the forested criteria then it is difficult to justify failure of a site for other conditions which may be deficient.
- First Consideration: What is the benefit of the variance in terms of the intended land use?
  - Example, if the variance can be shown to be creating additional/different habitat, etc.
- Reforestation needs to be emphasized as part of certification
  - Significant benefit to progressive reclamation to reforest areas that interim reclamation can completed on.
  - Security in the fact that it was the “requirement of the day” – as long as it is not causing severe limitations, then requests would not be made to disturb areas that had been previously reclaimed and planted.
    - Forest cover is highly variable and dynamic and some variation is not a bad thing so as long as it is compatible it would be acceptable.
- Do a pre-disturbance site assessment (for all new activities). [on public lands this will become a requirement].
  - It should be considered an investment so that you know what your end goal is
  - You know what species were there, what limitations and/or pests were there (example, Clubroot in the white area).
  - You don't know where you are going unless you know where you've been
- Often get stuck on “what the site is now” (which is what the criteria demands) – but need to consider what the site will be with and without additional activity
- Can't just look at the vegetation, bust look at the soil and landscape factors as well. AEP needs to require the long-term impacts for the decisions they are making (20, 50, 100, 200 years into the future) and the current and potential future land users.
  - Things like timber value (does the site have the ability to meet ELC in the long term).
  - All stakeholders need to be taken into consideration when making a decision.

## Documentation / Rationale

- In general:
  - Listening to the justification of the proponents and considering the integrity of the company (is it in the best interest of the environment or is the company just trying to save money)
  - Case by case and go by the strength of the justification provided by the proponent.
  - Not a black and white decision.
  - Pictures, documents and history (location (lat report); with respect to the regional perspective – caribou zone, etc.); access, history and vegetation that is there presently vs. what was there previously. If one was to go and do reclamation what would be done.
- Ideally multiple years of data (pictures) should show the trajectory is moving towards a forest.

## Communication / Responsibility

- Need to communicate with land owner (i.e., AEP) EARLY in the process if there is going to be consideration for land use change.
- Talk to AEP (land owner) at the initial planning phase. Lessee is not the land owner. Even if the lease user wants to use the access road – BUT AEP needs to consider the long term implications for culverts, Texas gates, bridges, etc. Some improvements may be approved, but AEP needs to be involved in that decision.
- There is confusion [even within the government] as to variances and whether AEP has anything to do with these requests.
  - Currently AEP – does not do variance
  - Land use changes require AEP

## Examples of Past Decisions

- Typical variances I have reviewed in my SRD days, prior to AER, on Forested lands include variances for, topsoil replacement depth, regulated weeds, and third party impacts. Each scenario would require different professional rationale. Most of what I provide below is strictly from a policy perspective on how the criteria was intended to work and how I perceive it to have been operationalized.
  - Topsoil replacement depth failed. Where there was no topsoil resource available. A “vegetation override was applied”. All vegetation parameters within the applicable criteria would pass to provide this justification. Also, typically I would expect to see a bit more time (greater than the typical minimum of 3 years, to show the vegetation was sustainable without the topsoil resource.
  - Third party impact – After trying to control the third party impacts, I would expect them to apply based on my methodology for controlling access. I would seem the consultant use air photos to show where possible that it wasn’t related to my activity. That the area not associated with the third party impact did pass all vegetation criteria (1997 IL for Third Party Impacts).
  - Weeds fail in the forested zone. Before the 2013 update to the 2010 Forested Criteria, these would all have come in as non-routine (now called variances). However, now most

would not come in as variances as the criteria as specific justifications that must be present in order to apply and then it is routine (no variance required).

- be on public forested lands.
- Be from a single offsite point source. Applies to noxious weeds only.
- All other forested vegetation criteria would need to be met.
- Can provide examples where many sites were built in the late 70's that were never really reclaimed but the trees grew back large and thick (up by Chipwan Lakes – North of Wabasca). Met vegetation criteria and a reclamation certificate was granted in 2014 (for many sites).
  - Several of the sites did not meet soil criteria but generally met landscape criteria and always met vegetation criteria.
  - Sites were fly in access only (i.e., very remote).
  - Environmental impacts associated with accessing sites that are remote (upland sites) needs to be considered if the only limitation is the soil requirements. Accessing the site would be significant to re-clear (disturb) several km of access road and potentially other areas which have been vegetated to fix small disturbances or deficiencies.
  - Needs to be put into context of the size of the disturbance and the effort required to complete the reclamation for remote sites.
- Exceptions for deficiencies in criteria, including vegetation will be considered if an applicant makes a justifiable argument for integrated land management and an associated change in land use.
  - Example, a site was not vegetated well but was used for recreational camping or staging for a neighboring quad/skidoo trail network. Given the pressure in some areas, these exceptions would be acceptable if the appropriate information were provided and the discussions were initiated in collaboration with AEP lands officers.

#### Time / Age

- It completely depends on the length of time the site has been establishing. If the site has been establishing for years, but still has shortcomings, need to consider the ecological impact of those limitations. However, if the site has been revegetating for 30 years and has an established, functioning ecosystem, even if it isn't equivalent to offsite, more likely to leave as is.
- Favor intervention if the site is in the early stages and it will not be a large set back; if the site has been there for 30 years then it may be more appropriate to do hand work or leave as is.
- 1999 – did a lot of work on sites that had 30 year old trees growing on them. The trees were smaller (shorter and smaller diameter in comparison to fire sites or cutblocks) [Okso and McFarlane (2001) tables to reference]]. Trees were stunted or took longer to establish, but the composition and density was there. Based on the productivity, not sure that it is equivalent land capability according to the criteria, however the site is clearly functioning. There is a need to be more specific about the measurements, not just height.
- Sites have been neglected – i.e., they are so overgrown and would have passed a forested DSA 10 years ago ... (this should not encourage the 'do nothing approach' to reclamation, simply allows for judgement to be used in assessment).
- How long have the trees been growing – sometime between the years 4 to 8 trees (good references: Alberta reforestation standards; Alberta forest genetic resource management and conservations standards; Alternative regenerative standards)



- No less than 4 years after planting would he consider an application
- Age of site and activities – construction, abandonment, remediation, built never drilled etc. Length of time pad has been in place

#### Site / Disturbance Type and Location

- Upland sites are more resilient even if the materials are not
- OSE sites are similar – small anomalies, create more damage
- Minimal versus full disturbance site- how was site constructed? How much soil is available to re-strip or distribute is active reclamation were to take place?
- Where is the site located, grazing lease disposition, etc.
- White Area forested = potential for cultivation, not in Green Area
- Depth of pad and/or amount of fill in place
- Peat depression under the pad – will removal of the entire pad result in a lake?
- Material under the pad – corduroy, geotextiles, nothing etc.

#### Site Access / Remoteness / Cost / Reclamation Impacts

- Sites that will create more damage to go back (very remote sites); clear access to allow it
- Depends on the remoteness of the site.
  - Very difficult to access sites may be given different considerations than sites that are easily accessed.
  - If the site is within an FMA, coordinate with a forestry company to utilize their resources for site access to complete reclamation.
  - Integrated land management with others utilizing the area.
- Consideration of additional disturbance of access roads, etc., weighed against the current site condition.
- Location and land use are driving factors. Crown land and sites that are expensive to access (e.g., sites far away and many creek crossings) are drivers as opposed to vegetation characteristics.
- Need to consider the impact of “reclamation to fix” deficiencies
- Need to understand if the activity is actually going to put the site on a different trajectory vs simply doing the activity to meet a checkbox on the criteria.
- Accessibility – how easy is it to access site and get equipment into site? Is the creation of kms of winter roads just to access site worth the end result?
- Condition of the borrow pit that would receive the fill material – Is it reclaimed? Well vegetated? Distance to site?

#### Local Conditions

- Consider whether the landscape/soil conditions are still homogenous within the surrounding area.
- If it blends into the environment and blends into some of the natural variation from the local context.

- Comparison to local offsite comparisons.
  - Extent of the coverage of vegetation
  - Depends on the criteria that were applicable when the site was constructed. More flexibility for older sites.
- If the vegetation species and soil conditions of the site are equivalent to other areas in close proximity to the site

## Landscape

- Contouring to prevent erosion
- The site is not eroding and is stable.
- Currently pushing to allow more landscape variances for minor cut and fill (<2 m) (i.e, contour) where the landscape doesn't quite match the surrounding landscape, but the site is still functioning. The definition in forestry for "cut and fill" type of landscape function is operability for commercial forestry equipment, therefore there is opportunity to provide justification for landscape variances that have deficiencies in slope and contour.
  - Overall stability of the site, including offsite – erosion, slumping, ponding. Are offsite impacts negative or significant to ecosystem function? Is the landscape conducive to establishment of a functional forest?

## Soils

- Compaction (if the has been de-compacted the forest will take it over in time). If there is still evidence of compaction then there will be limitations to ELC in the long term.
- From experience, soil limitations have led to failures in ecosystems with time (even if vegetation was acceptable at the time of certification) [case studies would be very valuable to validate this]
- Bare areas – are just the topsoil piles vegetated or is the majority of the site vegetated? Percent cover
- Soil types – sandy, shallow topsoil? Will disturbing soils set the site way back?
- Peat stripped and stockpiled? This is highly unlikely in conventional oil and gas, but could apply to in situ

## Vegetation

- The variance being approved should not be having a negative effect on the vegetation.
- Vegetation density (stem count).
- Root restriction should be considered.
- It takes time for natural revegetation to evolve the ecosystem all the way to the centre of a wellsite. Tree density is high but concentrated along the edge of the lease. In time, that would begin to fill in to the center, and should be considered.
- If density is appropriate on a site then rooting restrictions would be less of an issue with time, thus a justification would be appropriate (justification information required to demonstrate that roots reduce density with time).

- Tree/shrub density – depending on species, if a species is capable of spreading/suckering (e.g., bearberry), it may not be as important; however, if the site requires conifers, then a minimum density should be met.
- Density and species composition must be within a pre-determined variance of the background vegetation.
- Site meets stem count or % cover native woody vegetation.
- Vegetation growth is reasonable; if the soil material is lacking/unavailable then it would be reasonable to try to certify if the vegetation growth is reasonable. Particularly if there were no material immediately available.
- Woody and herbaceous species growth and percentage.
- Growth rate – in terms of tree biomass (height) as well as spread of understory species.
- Appropriately revegetating is challenging – is everything alive? Is the species composition adequate? General comparison with offsite conditions or expectations for the area.
- Approved planting plan for the specific areas (ecosite comparison to reclaim to). Depends if there is a change in end land use.
- The following are considerations when making a decision regarding the health and/or site conditions when approving a site variance or change in land use:
  - Are the trees chlorotic;
  - Species assemblage
  - Growth patterns (looking to ensure that they are actually showing a mean annual incremental growth and are the trees healthy); took a forestry approach (trees showing annual incremental growth – the amount doesn't necessarily have to be equivalent to the control, but the trees must be growing)
- Undergrowth is difficult when you are doing a partial pad removal. There will be a bit of both worlds with a peatland and upland, thus focus more on the following:
  - Making sure there is no exposed soil thus no erosion
  - Understory is weed free
  - Supplementing with native grass seed to ensure there is no erosion.
  - Seed certificates are sent to the Agrologists for approval if they are provided to AEP for consideration.
- If the site is meeting the vegetation criteria for an upland ecosystem then apply for a criterial variance if there are soils or landscape deficiencies. Characteristics default to the criteria. Vegetation composition, density and growth.
- Well established vegetation
- If it is a very difficult area to re-vegetate there would be more exceptions.
- Age of the woody vegetation – is it well established?
- Quality of the vegetation – health, yearly growth indicators, browsing pressure.
- Percentage of undesirable species and/or “weeds” – is there an infestation or is the naturally encroached vegetation out-competing them? Noxious/prohibited versus nuisance weeds.
- Absence of weeds
- Presence of prohibited noxious weeds would trigger a rejected application and indicate that the site is not appropriately revegetating.

## Structure / Function / Succession Status / Trajectory

- Trajectory of the site – desired plant species. Is there good species diversity (woody, shrubby, herbaceous) or is the site vegetated with a couple of species (e.g., raspberry)? Species can be early successional but should be compatible with surrounding ecosite.
- DSA and measurements (control points and on-site points – if the site is approaching the right trajectory then they try to minimize further reclamation requirements)
- Pioneer species that are representative of the ecosite
- There needs to be a trajectory showing plant community moving to a forest. Shrub and tree canopy should exist.
- Will vegetation meet criteria eventually? How long?
- Adequate/suitable density, cover, diversity, structure, productivity and composition of desirable forested, wetland or peatland species.
- What is the current situation on the site (resembling conditions offsite) encroachment of woody species (shrubs and trees) vs. grass that has been seeded
- Species composition
- Species composition, density (stem counts) – meeting the forested criteria
- Vegetation diversity (high diversity of native vegetation) – I would consider this more important than composition alone. The vegetation trajectory of wellsites is often unknown and the more diversity that is present, the greater possibility that some semblance of a forest will emerge. Depending on the ecosite, I would want at least 2-3 tree species, 2-3 shrub species, 3-5 herbaceous and 3 to 5 non-vascular species.

## Hydrology

- Surface water management has been checked; contour
- Hydrological function of surrounding land – water movement on and off site

## Summary

- Largely criteria variances are applied for/approved when the vegetation meets criteria but soil or landscape criteria have deficiencies (vegetation override).
- Industry may seek variances where woody stem density passes, but the herbaceous component does not.
- Characteristics considered when applying for a variance largely focus on trees (density and height) and shrubs (woody vegetation). Well established vegetation, good diversity, and the presence of desirable species are also considered.
- Sites that have been revegetating for longer (30+ years) are more likely to be left as is, even if not fully equivalent to offsite.
- A variance is more likely to be sought or approved where contouring has been done to blend the site into the landscape and prevent erosion (stable slopes).
- Where offsite conditions are not impacted (hydrology) a variance is more likely to be approved.
- A consideration for variance would be remote sites—will the damage done by going in and accessing the site be outweighed by the reclamation work that could be done?

- A variance may be approved where third party impacts are observed and cannot be controlled (i.e., ATV use).
- There is confusion regarding the AEP's role in approving variances (by reclamation practitioners, industry, and within government).
- Preface – sometimes the cure (or it's side effects) is not better than the problem itself
- Net gain to the site or the environment to reclaiming
- Net cost to the environment to "fix" the problem needs to be taken into consideration.
- What is the site area to start with (marginal lands may have different considerations than sites are in "productive" timber areas.
- Vegetation composition appears to match the area
  - Also consider the seeding mix (if there is documentation) that was used at the time of reclamation
- Is the vegetation established going to encourage woody species to establish with time. There needs to be evidence that the site will be on a trajectory towards a functional forested ecosystem and not remain a grassland in the middle of a forest.

### **3: How do you define and evaluate a functioning upland ecosystem at the scale of a wellsite?**

#### General

- Staff are all over the map provincially.
- In the boreal – it is valuable to utilize forest practices and tools to evaluate functional ecosystems. Decades of research can be drawn upon for this.
- We have amazing references that we are not using!!! (All based on science)
- Ecological site description guides (forestry) (plant community guides) – not being used enough
- For upland sites that have some mineral pad left in place (i.e., cut and fill and or slight increase in elevation for site access or to prevent flooding during the active phase of the site), reclamation is not that concerning.
  - Mineral soil is left in place, it can be re-contoured to be representative of the surrounding topography. Much simpler to compare the natural topography of the area and the existing forested criteria.
  - Soil can be "created" on top of the mineral material if necessary, but if vegetation is growing an established, much less of a concern than leaving a mineral pad in a peatland because this is the same land use.

#### Definition

- I define a functioning ecosystem (at wellsite scale) as an assembly of flora and fauna species representative of the surrounding area that provide wildlife habitat, carbon sequestration, nutrient cycling, pedogenesis, temperature regulation, and water cycling (some functions may have been missed).
- Define [refer to what was there before, before the footprint took place]
- Conditions meet equivalent capability
- 2010 Reclamation Criteria for Forested Lands

- 2010 Reclamation Criteria for Forested and Peatlands – use assessment parameters for vegetation and landscape that are representative of the site type.
- Using the forested land criteria or peatland criteria
- Reclamation criteria define it.
- Is it comparable to control
- Key Factors to defining a functioning upland ecosystem include:
  - Multiple species established representing typical biotic parts of an upland ecosystem. (i.e., signs of multiple interactions and sp. of plants and animals)
  - Evaluation of the soil and topography (abiotic) to ensure it will be suitable to support an upland ecosystem. (i.e., soil chemistry can be a concern with borrow pit material and is topography diverse?)
- Providing the same benefits as the surrounding forest/system (vegetation, water, habitat).

#### Criteria / Policy

- Difficult to answer because we have criteria that sets the requirements. Bound by process.
- I evaluate it using the current reclamation criteria to describe or measure various landscape, soil, and vegetation parameters.
- The forested criteria were established to evaluate if a system is functioning. Need to look at each site individually. Not really necessary to include considerations from the larger region when evaluating if the site is functioning as an upland ecosystem. Only need the context for the larger region if considering a change in land use, which is only under exceptional circumstances.

#### Documentation

- Don't usually have boots on the ground thus need to base this evaluation on the information provided which includes DSA and photos
  - Species composition and comparison to references (ensure references are appropriate – can not be from miles away)
  - Progression that there is an infill of woody/forested species
  - Don't want to see a poster-card square on aerial photos
    - Rough edges, fits the ecosystem
- Evaluate it by aerial photos, soil types, age class and eco-district and landscape (streams, waterbodies). Historical data to reference in regards to previous disturbance.
- Bring in part of the reclamation monitoring work – the in-situ operators require camera work that could provide some useful information that would provide insights into ecosystem function (e.g., wildlife use).

#### Comparison / Control

- Fall back to criteria – does the site meet the parameters as per criteria.
- However, the forested vegetation criteria works in averages. For example the average site stem counts was chosen to capture the majority of sites. These would be mesic, open stands typical of the dry mixed wood sub-region.

- If the site is not in this stand, these measures can be too high or too low for a site. Care must be taken that future iterations allow for adaptability in regions where these are not representative of an early trajectory for the site type in question.
- If you burnt it, what would grow back. If the site has a history of weeds and grasses, there is a good chance those would return and you might not have a functioning ecosystem. To evaluate - could analyze the seed/propagule bank.
- Consider a 100 -200 year timeframe. The goal should be to not be able to identify the site with an air photo.
- Background comparison to onsite is pretty successful. More challenging is when doing a change in land use in peatlands.
- Mimic surrounding vegetation (that was what was there and that is what should be back). Forbs, shrubs, trees – composition.

### Landscape

- Microtopography (forest floor)
- Woody debris (forest floor)
- Must demonstrate slope stability.
- Forested – is landscape conducive to drainage/species similar to offsite (or on trajectory)
- Stable (non-erosive and no slumping)
- No limiting factors affecting landscape

### Vegetation

- Vegetation density and composition (primarily trees; however the structural layers also need to be factored in).
- Can the soil (or lack of soil), support tree growth/site-index similar to the surrounding area. To evaluate - tree height measurements or could employ remote sensing methods to evaluate heights and biomass (LiDAR).
- Pioneering species expect within that ecosite.
  - Trees, shrubs and ground cover
- Similar species growing as offsite.
- In reality: Everything is still alive; composition is adequate.
- Densities and composition of species are important.
- Point of measure is the vegetation complex – are we seeing the right vegetation that is comparable to an offsite scenario.
- 90% of a functional ecosystem can be explained by the vegetation. If the vegetation is appropriate and functioning then everything else will end up equilibrating.
- Ability to support productive and desirable vegetation
- No weeds problems
  - Within a threshold
    - Classes of weeds (invasive but not when there is bare ground to colonize) (e.g., Scentless chamomile). Need to understand the ecology of the weed to understand the long term impacts.

- Weeds are facilitator plants that are enabling the site to resume appropriate soil conditions. It's a very important component of succession.
- Species composition
- Vegetation is growing well
- Limited agronomic species
- Early successional native species present
- Vegetation is naturally encroaching with offsite vegetation (both shrubs and initial successional trees).
- No limiting factors affecting vegetation (root restrictions)
- Not concerned about small weed compositions – (sow thistle, thistle) because weeds will be squeezed out over time as the canopy closes. Experienced this will time and many site visits. The seed bank will not disappear, and canopy closure is what drives the succession. There is a threshold that can result in appropriate succession.
- With time, the occurrence of weeds decreases, as the canopy closes.

#### Structure / Function / Succession Status / Trajectory

- I would look to the components of a functioning forest in it's earliest stable trajectory, including:
  - Structural layers present
    - Layer 1: ground cover such as herbs, forbs, mosses, lichens, bear berry, bog cranberry, strawberry
    - Layer 2: herbaceous (non-woody) grasses, sedges, aster, fireweed, sarsaparilla
    - Layer 3: woody vegetation – willows, rose, raspberry, dogwood, alder, buffalo-berry, current
    - Layer 4: trees
  - Species richness – A variety of species in each structural layer.
    - Declining presence of non-native species, species that are known for disrupting a trajectory, commonly called undesirable species.
    - Tree growth including height, diameter,
    - Time – Performance of a community takes time. Silvicultural relies on the 8-10 year benchmark. Not enough data to know the risks of the shorter timeframes for wellsite criteria (min, 3 years of growth).
- Presence of 3 layers of vegetation development (ground cover, shrub layer, tree cover)
- When assessing function on smaller scale disturbances, it is often typical to pick just one site type and try to reclaim and assess it across the wellsite to the thresholds (eg. Structural layers, stem counts, etc.) typical for that eco-site at an early trajectory.
- Demonstrate that there is growth and it will go through the appropriate successional pathways.
- A forest is establishing with the appropriate trees and (incremental) growth (comparable to offsite) that will eventually evolve into a similar forest to the surrounding landscape
  - If there is limited growth (i.e., mean annual increment is not equivalent on and off-site) it is an indicator of problems and the likelihood of achieving equivalent land capability is reduced.
- Assessment of successional stage and overall trajectory of site.



- Stem counts resemble early trajectory site of similar moisture and nutrient regime, open/closed stands. Wellsite criteria sets a standard stem count for the average site. If my site did not fall into average, I may use the NE Athabasca Revegetation Guidelines for more specific stem counts.
- All the similar functions as off site
  - Diversity of species
  - Canopy of woody species
  - Leaf litter forming (self-sustaining cycles)
- Slopes must demonstrate trajectory for vegetation.
- Resilient to disturbance
- Succession of forest species is used to indicate trajectories. Trees and shrubs need to be established.
- At different stages within succession after disturbance there are going to be key indicators that you need to be looking for:
  - Diversity in species and composition of species at the appropriate stage of succession.
- Start with baseline (what is available and what the forest is producing on the peripheral edge and what the wellsite can/will provide in/from the current state)
- If the wellsite is currently not revegetated completely
  - Determine if the sites is on a trajectory that shows that it will re-vegetate and in the meantime will it provide some value in it's current state of the landscape.
  - Trajectory is determined by species composition and density. The periphery of the site should be revegetating which will then encroach on the rest of the site.
- Need to consider things other than vegetation growth from a trajectory perspective (soils are still developing/re-establishing its full function); from a functional perspective it would be useful to consider other components and how they are responding and what the trajectory of the soil is in terms of its function.
- Direct success rate of trajectory is directly correlated to the activity (plan your reclamation before you get your approval). Know your end goal for reclamation and develop your disturbance plan accordingly (full strip (2 strip lift) that is done well doesn't mean that the site will be able to meet the desired outcome because there are other factors that aren't taken into account (wind/water erosion, etc.). When the soils are disturbed you need to consider what the implications are for how it will impact the reclamation (soils are alive – which takes time to restore).

## Hydrology

- Natural drainage not impeded by pad and soil erosion/slope stability is not an issue.
- Hydrological components should be considered – pooling water, erosion, etc.
- Surface and subsurface drainage similar to the surrounding landscape and does not impede site or off-site vegetation trajectory
- No limiting factors affecting water flow (erosion, ponding, runoff, etc.).

## Other Information / Considerations

- Evidence of wildlife similar to background.
- Evidence of wildlife use, including insects and bugs (burrows, trails, nests, scat, etc.)

- If it's functioning then you will see evidence of animals, birds, amphibians, and insects.
- Provides habitat for various wildlife
- Are the wildlife that you would expect to be using the area actually present (or is there evidence of their presence).
- Need for additional monitoring and maintenance? If yes, then it may not be fully functional.
- Biogeoclimatic zone (B.C. Perspective).
- Ability to support desirable land uses (e.g., agriculture, forestry, recreation, traditional use)

## Summary

- Numerous responses involved evaluating an upland ecosystem by comparing onsite conditions to offsite or background conditions.
- Vegetation was considered a key factor in evaluation. There was a focus on tree growth and density, but overall vegetation density and composition were key factors. A functioning ecosystem has layers of vegetation contributing to diversity – trees, shrubs, and herbaceous species.
- Vegetation characteristics that demonstrated the site was on the right trajectory to blending in with the surrounding area were considered positive.
- Evidence of wildlife use of the wellsite, comparable to offsite use, was a factor considered in evaluating the functioning of upland ecosystems.
- Functioning upland ecosystems were defined as having no drainage issues due to the pad, or erosion/slope stability concerns.
- Generally, the forested land criteria were used to define and evaluate uplands, utilizing vegetation and landscape parameters representative of the site type.

4: *In your experience, how do you determine if a site is on an appropriate trajectory for natural revegetation to achieve equivalent land capability? Describe how this should be assessed.*

## General

- It is based on experience. There is no checklist that is available to assess trajectory other than the forested land criteria itself. A Lands Officer goes out and assesses the site and looks at the site in comparison to the surrounding area and makes a judgement call.
- Discussion amongst colleagues within the lands approvals team. Seek input from others to discuss the site if having a difficult time reaching a decision.
- If there are opportunities to “help” succession along with minimal effort – then the effort should be expended. For example, if all materials have not been re-distributed across the site, there is an opportunity to increase microsites, change the moisture regime at the surface, eliminate forest fire risk, etc. by spreading the piles.
  - i.e., if there are piles, etc., there is opportunity to use labour to re-distribute some of the debris to increase the success of the site.
- Ecological site description guides (forestry) (plant community guides) – not being used enough
  - 40-60 + years of work (forestry, public lands, etc.)

- Help to determine what community they are in; gives you an indication of what the reference site community was.
- We need long term information to evaluate if the sites are actually on a trajectory.
- In BC – don't have to plant trees.
  - This is subject to change in the upcoming months following a current lawsuit as well as more oversight from OGC following the Auditor General's recent review.

## Definition

- I determine that a site is on appropriate trajectory if woody vegetation is establishing and able to grow freely, without limitations imposed by site conditions. This is based on equivalent land capability being defined as a functioning ecosystem capable of the functions listed in the previous answer, and able to support wildlife utilization, recreational users, and merchantable timber (in appropriate forest types).
  - I believe that woody vegetation drives the trajectory through forest floor development, soil temperature/moisture regulation, and attracting wildlife which in turn spread propagules and aid nutrient cycling. My experience is that for woody vegetation to 'grow freely' it needs to not be limited by vegetative competition, soil rooting restrictions, or pathogens/pests.
- Key factors to determining above:
  - Soil and topography factors suitable to support natural revegetation process and moisture regimes (i.e., organic matter appropriate, variable topography)
  - Regional seed bank material (LFH, woody debris etc.) either salvaged/stored/transplanted and is distributed across the site.
  - Natural encroachment occurring along the lease boundaries
  - Wildlife activity onsite
  - Invasive species are either not present or actively being outcompeted by natural vegetation
  - % cover pending the desired range of species
  - An evaluation of all of these factors needs to be documented and professional judgement used.
- Prove that a canopy cover is improving, native species are established and establishing on-site and filler species are declining (e.g., planted grasses or non-native species). At the end of the day, if the site meets the parameters of the criteria it should be headed that way.

## Regulatory / Policy / Criteria

- Need to think on a landscape basis rather than step by step and site by site. Need to consider the net environmental benefit.
- Pads are treated very differently depending on what type of activity they are tied to. Some are underneath EPEA approvals that have very different requirements for pad builds vs reclamation requirements.
- Assessment process is different. "Program base" is different than the conventional wellsite reclamation certification assessment. EPEA requires more reporting/monitoring.
- Endpoint is different for all of them. Heavy oil would follow AER rec criteria

- Outcomes are the same – equivalent land capability. Process for certification is very different. Received 2 rec certs this year for their thermal.
- Determination is most often used through the application of the forested land and peatland criteria – stem counts, % coverage, species diversity, successional stages, plant health, desired ecosite trajectory.
- Even when not directly applicable (i.e., EPEA approved sites, such as in situ) the 2010 criteria provides a good frame of reference for assessing trajectory and equivalent land capability of a site. I do not know that there is another document that is science based, transparent or enforceable via compliance as the current reclamation criteria. Other forms of assessment may be more biased or subject to scrutiny.
- Default would be to use the reclamation criteria (forested land criteria).
- As per the forested land or peatland criteria
- Follow the criteria.
- Forested land criteria
- Using the 2010 Reclamation Criteria, as per the *Conservation and Reclamation Regulation*, if the 2010 Reclamation Criteria is met, equivalent land capability has been met.
- However, does meeting the 2010 Reclamation Criteria equate restoration of the pre-disturbance ecosystem function? Maybe not...
- Equivalent land capability consists of more than just the vegetation currently established on the site. To be a functioning site that can meet the desired end land use of a functioning ecosystem the soil conditions must meet the definition of equivalent land capability [as defined within the criteria]. If a site has vegetation currently established, however the soils do not meet the appropriate replacement depths, there is too much uncertainty associated with the long term capability of the site to consider the site “equivalent”. Need to focus on the foundation, which is the soil – not the response, which is the vegetation.
- I think the woody stem density requirement from the current reclamation criteria is appropriate for assessing this because it requires a reasonable density and for those stems to show annual growth and appear healthy (although I don’t understand the basis for the 5 stem requirement for natural recovery sites vs. 2 for planted). I think the herbaceous cover and weeds requirements are valuable in some regard, but are not perfect because they can require conditions that will not limit the succession of the site. That in turn can lead to some unnecessary and harmful practices. For example, not all noxious weeds (e.g., perennial sow-thistle) will limit natural recovery, and I would never sacrifice successful woody stems to try and control aspects of the herbaceous plant community that will not drive the trajectory.
- I think several aspects of the soil and landscape assessment are not appropriate, because they require conditions that will not limit a woody species ability to grow freely. I think the important aspects of the landscape assessment are those that demonstrate it is safe and stable, but not necessarily ‘tied-in’ perfectly to the surroundings. I think the most important aspect of the soil assessment is to demonstrate that there are no rooting restrictions to at least 50 cm (ideally 1 m).
- In my experience, I think the current landscape and soil criteria for upland sites can lead to unnecessary work and harm to established vegetation if practitioners try to satisfy all the ‘routine’ parameters instead of getting a variance. The way I look at it is this: it’s almost unheard of, and reasonable to say unwarranted, to import topsoil to forested areas. And yet if topsoil was not salvaged correctly and has been lost or degraded, that is the only solution other than a variance. So if we would never employ the solution, why should it fail to begin with?

- Criteria indicators and targets – species diversity on the site (planted and ingress), plant communities establishing within the area, species density for all the woody species, growth height compared to baseline, presence of noxious weeds (at least in quantities that are not hindering succession)

#### Documentation

- Don't want to see a poster-card square on aerial photos
  - Rough edges, fits the ecosystem
- As a regulator can only look at paper. Not seeing the sites. Only a snap shot in time.
  - DSA and evaluation of site provided needs to be complete and thorough.
  - Always look for the worst things to identify if there is anything that will limit the site from achieving ELC. Not really looking for where the site is going. Look at what potential limitations there are and the potential implications of them.
- It would be helpful to show trajectory over time – photos and data of early succession over time

#### Age

- Older sites would be able to show any recruitment was a sign the site was recovering and exceeds the standards of the day.
  - Clear discussion of the site characteristics and mitigations completed to address them.
  - Longer monitoring and time to show the trajectories speed and sustainability was not being adversely affected by the site conditions.
- If the construction of the site pre-dates the need for topsoil replacement, then expectations need to be adjusted accordingly and there is much more flexibility in terms of what constitutes capability.
- How long it has been since the last activity occurred and given the timeframe is the vegetation appropriate (as evidenced by the photographs and measurement data provided)
- Time is a major factor (since the last activity).
- How long have the trees been growing – sometime between the years 4 to 8 trees (good references: Alberta reforestation standards; Alberta forest genetic resource management and conservations standards; Alternative regenerative standards)
- No less than 4 years after planting would he consider an application
- Need to realize that that trajectories imply that there are changes with time – thus need to consider the point in time that the site is at, where it has “come from” and what will likely happen with time.

#### Land Use

- Where commercial forestry is the end land use, rationale on how site characteristics are not going to impair future use (this would only be required based on the applicable age related standards).

## Comparison / Controls / Goal

- Comparison to offsite.
- Need to know what the end goal is to be able to determine what trajectory should the site be on
- Need to consider the soil conditions, the level of disturbance and the end goal for ecological recovery before you consider what the site trajectory is.
  - Not just how the site was constructed but also the type of disturbances that might have happened as a result of reclamation activities as well.

## Landscape

- Microtopography (forest floor)
- Woody debris (forest floor)
- Bare spots are an indication of limitations which are flags in terms of ELC
- Mostly focus on contour
- Does the landscape similar to the adjacent topography

## Soils

- Measure/assess nutrient cycling. (If you can determine that the site is self-sustaining itself then it is likely on a mixed wood succession trajectory).
- Soil horizons (crucial component) if the soils are done right then you can have better confidence in the long term objectives and trajectory.
- Soil moisture regime and soil quality
- Need to consider things other than vegetation growth from a trajectory perspective (soils are still developing/re-establishing its full function); from a functional perspective it would be useful to consider other components and how they are responding and what the trajectory of the soil is in terms of its function.
- Ensure that soil characteristics are capable of supporting similar vegetation to pre-disturbance

## Vegetation

- Distribution of species; minimum density of trees; healthy enough that they are going to be establishing a canopy.
- For transitions between wet and upland (peat less than 40 cm), the species composition is less important.
- Trees are the most important component of the trajectory because it will determine the success of all other species.
- Example: site was originally *Calamagrostis*; then it was *Calamagrostis* and raspberry, then willows started to come in at high densities (20 year time frame).
- Recruitment of trees whether through seeds or suckering can be a preferred indicator that the function is returning. Where recruitment occurs throughout the site in similar or higher densities then criteria and all reclamation material was replaced, this kind of reclamation would be considered highly successful at achieving ELC.

- Where recruitment is occurring despite the site characteristics (topsoil, rooting restrictions, coarse woody debris) then I would expect a more detailed case for ELC would make sense. Especially as I find in this scenario the recruitment is more limited to the parameters of the site. The foundation to the assessment of ELC would be the age of the site.
- Ultimately it comes down to tree density, composition and health.
- Species, densities and composition
- Well established and growing well.
- Species diversity, genetic diversity and ecosystem diversity, resilience and productivity.
- Trajectory for natural recovery is based on criteria (stem counts etc.).
- Forestry practices. Mean annual increment, species assemblage (particularly related to the canopy), if the trees are present, and doing well the understory will take care of its self as the site progresses.
- If the site is newly reclaimed, still look that the vegetation complex is appropriately developing considering the reclamation criteria indicators as they are appropriate to assess trajectories. Is the vegetation composition appropriate, is the right density present and are the trees growing and not showing any signs of poor health. Early on – just look at the trees, as time progresses start to look at the shrubs, forbs and understory.
- Presence of key indicator species associated with desired ecosystem
- Productive and healthy desirable vegetation
- Evidence of recruitment/establishment of desirable species
- Trajectory (pioneer species, successional species) species
- Mostly focus on % cover (doesn't matter what the cover is)
- Is the developing vegetation species sufficient in both quality and quantity
- Progression that there is an infill of woody/forested species
- Species composition and comparison to references (ensure references are appropriate – cannot be from miles away)
- Not concerned about small weed compositions – (sow thistle, thistle) because weeds will be squeezed out over time as the canopy closes. Experienced this will time and many site visits. The seed bank will not disappear, and canopy closure is what drives the succession. There is a threshold that can result in appropriate succession.
- With time, the occurrence of weeds decreases, as the canopy closes.

#### Succession / Trajectory / Ecology

- Equivalent land capability consists of more than just the vegetation currently established on the site. To be a functioning site that can meet the desired end land use of a functioning ecosystem the soil conditions must meet the definition of equivalent land capability [as defined within the criteria]. If a site has vegetation currently established, however the soils do not meet the appropriate replacement depths, there is too much uncertainty associated with the long term capability of the site to consider the site “equivalent”. Need to focus on the foundation, which is the soil – not the response, which is the vegetation.
- Indicators of succession (which can be identified through some of the ecological site description guides).
  - Need to be able to determine if there are indicators that the site is starting to resemble the reference site community in terms of structure, composition and density.

- Pioneering species expect within that ecosite.
  - Trees, shrubs and ground cover
- Signs of disturbance still obvious (i.e., have moss/lichen established on the forest floor)
- Demonstrate that there is growth and it will go through the appropriate successional pathway.
- Trajectories can be assessed with the forestry criteria which were developed to objectively measure the things that define a functioning system.
- All the similar functions as off site
  - Diversity of species
  - Canopy of woody species
  - Leaf litter forming (self-sustaining cycles)
- The following are considerations when making a decision regarding the health and/or site conditions when approving a site variance or change in land use:
  - Are the trees chlorotic;
  - Species assemblage
  - Growth patterns (looking to ensure that they are actually showing a mean annual incremental growth and are the trees healthy); took a forestry approach (trees showing annual incremental growth – the amount doesn't necessarily have to be equivalent to the control, but the trees must be growing)
- Undergrowth is difficult when you are doing a partial pad removal. There will be a bit of both worlds with a peatland and upland, thus focus more on the following:
  - Making sure there is no exposed soil thus no erosion
  - Understory is weed free
  - Supplementing with native grass seed to ensure there is no erosion. Seed certificates are sent to the Agronomists for approval if they are provided to AEP for consideration.
- Species and structural diversity
- Conduct yearly site visits and within two to three years after reclamation you can tell if you are heading on a clear path to acceptability.
- At different stages within succession after disturbance there are going to be key indicators that you need to be looking for:
  - Diversity in species and composition of species at the appropriate stage of succession.
- If the wellsite is currently not revegetated completely:
  - Determine if the sites is on a trajectory that shows that it will re-vegetate and in the meantime will it provide some value in its current state of the landscape.
  - Trajectory is determined by species composition and density. The periphery of the site should be revegetating which will then encroach on the rest of the site.
- Plant health and species composition

## Summary

- There is considerable difference in the views of respondents relative to the key factor determining Equivalent Land Capability – some said vegetation (specifically trees), some said soils and several had concerns with the effects of land scape and soil requirements in the criteria potentially limiting achievement of Equivalent Land Capability and/or creating unnecessary work.
- Need agreement of the end goal before you can determine if a site is on a trajectory to the goal.



- Time since last disturbance affects site (vegetation) conditions and also expectations.
- Recruitment of trees on the site (not just number of trees) is a good indicator that it is functioning and on a trajectory to recovery. Other factors were also suggested as useful indicators.

5: *In your experience, what other site characteristics and/or considerations (landscape, soils, etc.) would lead you to fully reclaim a site which has revegetated through natural encroachment instead of applying for/approving a criteria variance?*

#### General

- FMA's are dying from "death of a thousand cuts", thus if there are scenarios where some reclamation would ensure that "forest productivity equivalency" can be met, then the reclamation should be completed.
- This is a difficult question because there are instances [when a site meets the vegetation criteria but is deficient in soils or landscape and may have a different composition] where you know you could complete the reclamation and get a forest growing that resembles the surrounding landscape, however in practice this is not practical. Thus, likely no site characteristics that would lead to full reclamation of a site if it meets the vegetation criteria.
- Needs to be justified based on environmental factors (can't be completely driven by "cost")
- The site should represent what is in the immediate surroundings; for example if the site is supposed to be a upland half of the site should not be a slough
- Padded lease in the middle of a fen (no adjacent upland).
- If there is well established vegetation then it is important to identify any other potential limitations on the site and assess the long term risk of those limitations – but if vegetation is established and functioning well – likely apply for a variance.
  - Good success with regulator in getting criteria variances through to certification.
- Site is part of a large area-based program
- Pre-reclamation assessment (site visit); looking if the controls are matching what is happening on the site (rarely run into these issues with OSE sites)
  - Bare spots (that are more frequent or larger on site than off-site)
  - Thick mulch that needs to be spread
  - Subsidence that needs to be recontoured
  - Topsoil depth that are going to limit re-growth
  - Weeds

#### Rationale for Redisturbance

- It would have to have major limitations to provide a recommendation to do full reclamation.
- If it appears that they are only leaving the limitations purely because "it costs too much to put it back"
- Not meeting forest equivalency (although meeting vegetation criteria) then ask them to go back and do it.

- Offsite impacts – if the net benefit of reclaiming the site is for the greater good of the surrounding area (stability, hydrological function, wildlife habitat – especially caribou, stakeholder concerns (First Nations).
- The only time I would proceed with full reclamation of a naturally vegetated site that was safe and stable is if a client, regulator, or other stakeholder was against applying for or approving a variance.
- All other site characteristics/considerations are less important than the overall vegetation. No other factors should override the vegetation consideration.
- If the recruitment wasn't occurring in much of the site, monitoring indicated the trajectory was being impaired by site limitations, I would re-disturb the site to address the site limitations/issues.
- Safety and stability, or demand from a stakeholder. As mentioned earlier, the only parameter that I think overrides successful revegetation is safety and stability of the landscape. That assumes that the successful revegetation is indication there are no rooting restrictions in the top 50 cm (ideally 1 m). For that reason, I would not consider seedlings alone to represent successful revegetation because the roots may not have encountered the restrictive layers yet.
  - By safety and stability I mean that there should be no aspects of the landscape that pose a risk to wildlife or recreational users. That could mean steep slopes not representative of the surroundings, slopes or cavities that are unstable and prone to collapse, or industrial debris like a piling or cellar that would be an injury hazard in the understory.
- The only instance in which I would recommend fully reclaiming a site that has revegetated through natural encroachment would be if there were pre-existing agreements and conditions with an overlapping tenure holder (i.e., forestry cutblock) OR if the area was in a designated species at risk habitat restoration specific area and it was very clear that the existing reclamation did not support the species at risk.
- Refuse/debris present, or other issues that appear 'unnatural' (i.e., would a hiker or berry picker notice they were on a foreign feature?)
- Poorly reclaimed sites (poor soil, too much admixing, etc.) with bare soils and sparse vegetation – reclamation would be required
  - Add topsoil, mounding, planting, microsites, etc.
- A site which has had no reclamation completed which may have significant pits or depressions, poor contours that result in drainage problems on parts of the site, soil piles which remain in stockpiles, gravel which would impede vegetation growth, significant compaction either at surface or lower in the soil profile

#### Policy / Criteria / Jurisdiction

- Follow the criteria.
- Regulatory uncertainty or regulatory overlap in jurisdiction – default to the accepted criteria rather than pursue and take the risk a non-routine application.
- In his experience they do use the vegetation override a lot. They have had good success with getting approval. If a site meets the veg criteria (within the forested criteria) there is limited information that is required to justify other characteristics that are deficient.

## Access / Remoteness / Cost

- Access
- Winter access and the amount of disturbance that is required.
- If a site is more accessible off a road then it makes for a different conversation than if it is less accessible (20 km off a road where it would only be possible to get equipment in under frozen conditions).
- Reasonable winter access
- Mostly cost and location driven.
- Easy equipment access to the site
- Remoteness of the site impacts the response (proximity to access and relative use); if it is being used for recreational use and there are multiple stakeholders that may be impacted then it makes more sense to have active work completed.

## Landscape

- Large scale landscape issues, not as concerned about large cut and fills more about drainage and liabilities with hazards.
- Slope (consistency with surrounding landscape) and contour.
- Instability of the site – continued erosion, slumping etc. Presumably, if the site has been in existence such that vegetation has naturally encroached and established, one would expect there to be little to no erosion or slumping.
- Site stability (erosion) that would not likely have the ability to remedy itself
- Instability (Example, spring shows up in the middle of the wellsite if it is done on a hillslope and causing erosion that will not stabilize on its own)
- Major slumping or contour issues on site.
- Slope stability, erosion and maintaining natural drainage. Vegetation overrides when vegetation is well established even though soil depths/characteristics do not match the background.
- Erosion concerns
- Erosion and subsidence (well-center) (use different methods with contour to prevent certain amounts.
- If there was a substantial erosion scenario, they would complete reclamation (dirt work) activities.
- Other significant landscape issues; subsidence, soil piles, etc.
- Approximately 30 cm+ pad reveal
- Existing berms (need to be knocked down) before consideration will be given for justification.
- Sites with 3-4 + metre cut and fill (several examples where they are currently pushing down established trees and re-contour the site) (Refer to “operability” comment above – there may be instances where it makes sense to leave some cut and fill if the landscape is still “operable for commercial forestry”).

## Soils

- Significant soil stockpiles on site – clearly defined soil stockpiles. Perhaps vegetation is merely adequate (could pass a DSA) on site without the soil redistribution, but spreading stockpiles soil

would greatly benefit site establishment overall (vegetation would be considered excellent post-reclamation).

- If topsoil was conserved on site and was in volumes high enough to spread over the problem areas, while dealing with any other site limiting factors. Compaction/lack of micro-sites/soil chemistry.
- Soils. Topsoil depth specifically. If the soils have not been replaced (and are available), they need to be appropriately distributed on the site. It would not be adequate to have uneven distribution of the materials on the site, or apply the soil within bare areas. To achieve equivalent land capability the soil materials should be adequately replaced to a similar depth (and variability) as existed prior to disturbance or offsite.
- Compacted soils (evidence of this would lead to a direction to complete the reclamation)
- A lot of dirt work would be required to change the forest composition slightly if, for example, topsoil depths didn't meet the criteria, but the vegetation passed.
- Soil horizons (crucial component) if the soils are done right then you can have better confidence in the long term objectives and trajectory.
- Soils. If the site is deficient in soil it raises too many questions regarding the long term implications of equivalent land capability. Regardless of whether or not the vegetation is meeting criteria currently.
- Soil – might be able to tell when you are short on topsoil due to erosion or some other reason.
  - Do some minimal disturbance – but it depends on the site; if there is good growth then the smaller disturbances are not worth the ecological impacts for the areas that are surviving. Equivalent land capability doesn't mean that is exactly as it was before.
- Compaction

## Vegetation

- Vegetation is good and coverage is good then they would go for a variance.
- Vegetation inappropriate – species that while native to the area, maybe be early successional or monoculture, but with no indications the site is evolving to a desired trajectory.
- Poor tree growth rates
- Survival of species that you have planted – may have to do a partial infill (for any number of reasons)
- If the vegetation diversity/composition is unlikely to ever meet surrounding equivalency
- Restrictions in the future in terms of vegetation growth (root restrictions)
- If there is any difficulty with vegetation re-growth
- Anything that influences vegetation growth
- Vegetation bare spots (generally need to not accumulate to more than 10% on a disturbance the size of a wellsite)
- Forest establishing needs to look healthy and there needs to be canopy cover.
- Undesirable species should not be present in trajectory towards a forest.
- Weeds on site (management as opposed to full reclamation)
- Weeds are probably the largest challenge with obtaining the reclamation certificate (weed management)

- Weeds (if they have taken over the planted tree, i.e., trees have died); being outcompeted by the weeds and/or grasses within a 3 year time frame after being planted
  - Perennial sow thistle, scentless chamomile – just having to manage not really inhibiting succession, particularly when trees are more established.
  - Agronomic species can inhibit success more than the weeds because they can take over much faster. Limit weed growth and outcompetes forest species (species dependant).
- Historical swales cut into the access road are not deep enough to allow water to flow around. The vegetation “upstream” side of the flow is being drowned out and the downstream flow is being dried out.

### Hydrology

- Ensure there are no ridges along the edge of a site that would affect surface water flow.
- Blocking water flow or causing any hydrological concerns
- Blocking water flow across an access road or other linear disturbances i.e., PLA
- Major issues with hydrologic flow on site.
- Evidence of impacts to local hydrology
- Hydrology (any impacts to the surrounding area with water ponding)
- Restrictions to surface water flow or the topography isn’t close enough to match the surrounding area
- Off-site impacts to drainage or potential for or on-going erosion/slumping/subsidence.

### Ecology

- Wildlife considerations concerning habitat – is the site providing the habitat for the type of wildlife you would expect in that area.

### Scale of Deficiency / Partial Reclamation

- Anomalies like well centre could be addressed with small scale modifications by hand, or with small equipment.
- Partial reclaim a site which has revegetated through
  - More inclined to make this recommendation
    - Ex: to supplement part of the plant community
    - Create a small drainage channel through a corner of a site
    - Small scale dirt work.

### Summary

- There was a range of views – bracketed by these two views: (1) if there are scenarios where some reclamation would ensure that “forest productivity equivalency” can be met, then the reclamation should be completed; and (2) Thus, likely no site characteristics that would lead to

full reclamation of a site if it meets the vegetation criteria. The latter viewpoint was often repeated.

- Small deficient areas may be accepted.
- Site remoteness and access are factors being used to decide on redisturbance requests and approvals.
- Safety, stability, slumping and erosion are all factors that would drive redisturbance.
- If soils are available on site and/or if the soils are deficient enough to raise concerns about long term viability of the vegetation then redisturbance may be requested.
- Impacts to hydrology (water flow) will likely drive redisturbance.

6: *What information would be useful to enable site-specific decisions for managing upland wellsites that have had vegetation encroachment and/or mineral soil pads within a peatland. Describe type of information (empirical, case study, etc.). Do you have suggestions for specific documents, sites or people to contact?*

#### General

- Going away from cookie cutter checkboxes would be more appropriate from an ecological perspective.
- Look at sites from a site/site basis and provide justification as to how it meets the equivalent land capability – is it serving an ecological function; is it impeding the hydrological function; is it a benefit to the surrounding landscape; not causing a detracting from the surrounding landscape.

6A: *Naturally Revegetated Upland Wellsite*

#### General

- Willingness of company to fully reclaim sites elsewhere (company track-record in area)
- Depends on what the limiting factor is – vegetation or soils.
- Buried surface soils? Contour issues? Slumping? Veg quality representative of offsite/ecosite.

#### Process

- Basic framework from the AEP/AER on how they evaluate justifications. What conditions lead them to refuse or approve a justification.
- Overall what would help is – a decision/criteria for in-situ pads and it is a lot different – thus they wouldn't need to use the reclamation criteria.
- Contact Regulator for variance providing:
  - Photos and data showing trajectory and encroachment of vegetation over 3-4 years
- Needs to be able to be verified/validated by AEP
- The only option right now is discussions with local regulators

## Information Needs – Process

- Real world examples – database of case studies that describe decisions that have been made.
- Guideline for what would be deemed acceptable and what wouldn't.
- Case study database would be very valuable to draw upon when having discussions with government and stakeholders.
  - It is essential that the platform which houses the data be useful and available otherwise it would simply not be sustainable.
- Case studies of what was tried in different areas.
- Inventory of scenarios that have been successful would help to establish a baseline for how decisions have been made thus far.
- Checklist that can be used to generate the appropriate justification can be developed.
- Database of requests (list of case studies where AEP has made these decisions for and against certification). The AEP/AER currently has no way to compare sites where decisions have been made, thus no ability to conduct and QA/QC.
- Research projects and institutes – COSIA, Faster Forests
- Remote sensing options for providing information demonstrating the claims within an application.
- Determine a set of criteria to evaluate the diversity of species onsite to ensure resiliency present and in the future (to ensure the site continues on trajectory to natural upland ecosystem)
- Guides to help provide information about what trajectory the site is on.

## Information Needs – Applications

- Photos
- Anything that will help visualize the site.
  - Survey plan
  - Quality photos of the site
- Airphotos showing trajectory towards a plant community for intended land use (e.g., forested site should be moving towards a forest).
- Photos to demonstrate encroachment, etc.
- Photos to demonstrate near-by equivalency that are reasonable.
- Justification for WHY things are acceptable if there are limitations
- Demonstrate the benefit (any type of document and/or information (both measured and observed) that builds the weight of evidence that there is an environmental benefit).
- Good information about who conducted the work and the methods that they used to obtain the data. Credibility of the source of information makes a difference.
- Construction practices can help support or make case for site specific anomalies
- Comprehensive package.
- Do an inventory of site and provide the information within the landscape context. Want to ensure that the site is part of the bigger ecosystem.
- Practitioners need to make decisions based on observations at a site and then collect the information at the site to support the application. Emphasize the things that are being used to support a vegetation override. Information that is gathered is done to support the claim/application. Site specific information that is provided should be enough to support the fact that the limitation is not meeting the criteria if the vegetation is established and productive.

- Mean annual increments, photos, etc.
- (i.e., he did not feel that additional information, like research or empirical studies or case studies would be useful).
- Better submissions from companies – justifications for predictions (based on experience, researcher, etc., how do they justify how the site is going to evolve).
- Always provide them with site specific information, but additional information would help to provide additional justification that the site will meet ELC that had similar characteristics.
- Regional landscape: Site-specific decisions need to be based on the surrounding landscape
- Detailed site assessment outcomes
- Having pre-existing conditions and the trajectory of succession.
- Site Specific Information:
  - Type and approximate composition of vegetation that is on the site in comparison to the control (reference community) – give an idea of whether the succession would ever evolve to the desired end land use based on the current composition.
  - Evidence of function (wildlife use) (caution with preferential use).
  - Less weight on the soil characteristics and more on the vegetation.
- Site-specific measured data and observations
  - Comparison to background
  - Length of time the site has been establishing (site history)
  - Vegetation composition
- Set of baseline criteria to evaluate the biotic and abiotic components are in place

#### Land Use / Goal

- Indication that the proposed end land use of the remaining pad was locally common in the natural subregion?
- That the forested eco-site selection was both locally common and suitable to the pad soil characteristics.
- Surrounding landscape and land use

#### Access / Remoteness / Cost

- Each site is a judgement call. Information to be considered includes:
  - Proximity of site to other infrastructure
  - Geographical remoteness (if 80% of the vegetation is there and similar in size/health compared to offsite and the site is remote – more likely to grant approval).
- Remoteness of the site, wildlife functionality, vegetation species composition where natural revegetation has occurred as some infill planting may be required.
- Access difficulty

#### Landscape

- That the pad would be contoured into the existing landscape?



- Contouring concerns
- Potential erosion concerns
- LIDAR may be advantageous for understanding the general landscape implications, however most information can be obtained from air photo interpretations, particularly when used in a time series.

## Soils

- If you are having issues with a site – it is likely soil related. In the in-situ world, there will not be enough material balance to return 80% topsoil depth requirements, thus soil information that demonstrates that trees are able to grow to equivalent land capability, determine where the materials are best placed. What other soil considerations are important other than topsoil depth.
- Any investigation that the pad was chemically suitable to the forested site proposed (eg. Naturally occurring sulphates brought to surface).
- Soil texture on site

## Vegetation

- Provide more vegetation information if it is beneficial to demonstrate the trajectory (not just consider what is required within the criteria); can use forestry practices as a substitute and/or other ecological information such as wildlife use, etc.
- Any discussion on how the risks of pad forested reclamation success will be managed (e.g., Additional monitoring of planted trees).
- Vegetation type onsite vs offsite
- Vegetation composition.
- Canopy cover, so if you start with nothing and are able to get canopy cover on 50% of site it shows that trajectory
- In my opinion, the only information necessary to enable site-specific management of upland sites are a successful woody stem count, indication that vegetation competition will not limit future growth, and demonstration that the site is free from rooting restrictions, is safe, and is stable. I believe that the RCAG working group who developed the current forested reclamation criteria did enough research and consultation to create a sound basis for the woody stem count requirement.
- Vegetation information (site specific). May be valuable to consider information that helps to demonstrate ecosystem function more than just the criteria if challenged to get a variance.
- Invasive species present criteria.

## Hydrology

- Adjacent water courses
- No damming effect in terms of the hydrology (air photo interpretation). Ecosystems are observed from air photos at a landscape scale Useful to apply a time series

6B: A padded wellsite remaining within a peatland

General

- Are there any sensitive species in the areas (rare species – plants, mammals, birds, etc.).

Information Needs – Process

- Real world examples – database of case studies.
- Research may be beneficial for linear disturbances to assess impacts of removal.
- Research projects and institutes – U of Waterloo, U Laval, COSIA, iFROG
- Ton of research out there for the forest end of things (e.g., regeneration standards)
  - Just need to adopt it over and create a site that is appropriate for growth.
- More research is required to understand the environmental implications of removing and/or leaving a pad in place.
- Access to current research that helps to develop an understanding regarding pads in peatlands.
- Historical information (database of case studies)
- Remote sensing options for providing information demonstrating the claims within an application.
- Checklist that can be used to generate the appropriate justification can be developed.
- Guideline for what would be deemed acceptable and what wouldn't.
- Basic framework from the AEP/AER on how they evaluate justifications. What conditions lead them to refuse or approve a justification.

Information Needs – Applications

- Everything within Section 12 of the *Conservation and Reclamation Regulation*.
- 2. Cumulative effect – I think this needs a scientifically and geographically informed approach to establish a threshold of how much peatland/wetland in a given region can be 'lost' without degrading the region. A zero tolerance policy bothers me because I actually think that some pads left in place can enhance the habitat of a peatland area by creating upland refugia in an expanse of peatland. In my experience doing surveys in peatland areas (e.g., Wabasca area) the wildlife trails often appeared like pathways joining one upland to another. And proper reclamation/restoration of linear features 'connecting' the network of upland features should deter deer, moose, and predators that degrade caribou habitat.
- Always provide them with site specific information, but additional information would help to provide additional justification that the site will meet ELC that had similar characteristics.
- Any evidence that reflects the justification for the reasoning.
- Detailed site assessment outcomes
- Site Specific Information:
  - Type and approximate composition of vegetation that is on the site in comparison to the control (appropriate reference community)
  - Evidence of function (wildlife use) (caution with preferential use).
  - Less weight on the soil characteristics and more on the vegetation.
- Set of baseline criteria to evaluate the biotic and abiotic components are in place

- Good information about who conducted the work and the methods that they used to obtain the data. Credibility of the source of information makes a difference.
- Historical data from site visits and/or remote sensing information.
- It would be very useful to be able to extrapolate information from other sources for many of the remote sites. (i.e., not have to visit the site, particularly multiple times)

#### Policy / Regulatory

- What was applied for, what did they say
- Justification for the change in land use; “needs to be an appropriate reason for changing the land use”
- Land use change to upland from peatland
- If you are leaving an “improvement” you have to follow the wetland policy which means you have to demonstrate that there are no negative impacts on that wetland.
- Consider if you need a *Water Act* approval?
- Overlapping dispositions
- Needs to be able to be verified by AEP

#### Criteria

- Different information can be collected from an ecological perspective rather than just the checkboxes within the criteria. Easier to develop a trajectory. [may require clarification]
- As per peatlands – disturbed criteria

#### Planning

- Develop a plan that makes sense with other infrastructure or companies in the area (consider how to be creative with land use planning) – integrated land use planning.
- Information about what is recommended/planned for the padded access road; if the access road isn’t padded – it may result in a different decision.

#### Impacts / Local and Regional Context / Land Use / Function

- Proximity of site to other infrastructure – would be helpful to lay out the plan and how leaving the site fits in with the longer term objectives.
- Site history for land use (recreational use)
- Negative implications of leaving the pad, but more importantly the linear features in place. Justification of the effects the linear features have would be useful.
- Evidence/information on what was done to ensure that the clay pad is a part of the functioning landscape in a self-sustaining manner.
  - Essentially a reclamation certificate application by a different name.
- 3. Location – is the pad on the fringes of a wetland and close to an upland area? If so, leave in place because it’s a minor infringement on the wetland that is representative of the nearby/adjacent land.

- 5. Land use – Green Area or White Area? Remote or not? What is the proximity to land use other than forested/wetland and potential for future development? If adjacent to private land and not protected by any other mechanism (e.g., PNT, CNT, Park, etc.) then leave in place because potential for future development exists and if the area was a critical habitat for caribou or other species it would be protected already.
- Transitional areas are challenging (upland down to peat)
- Regional landscape: Site specific decisions need to be based on the surrounding landscape (“islands” need to tie into the broader landscape) [can’t leave an island in the middle of the peatland if it is not within an area that has similar topography/landscape components).
- Does it look like it will fit within an area.
- Does it look like an upland

#### Impacts of Removal/ Environmental Net Benefit

- 6. Condition of borrow pit – This would be a lower consideration after points 1 to 4, but if the borrow pit is well vegetated and functioning as a wetland it could serve as a ‘tie-breaker’ if previous points are inconclusive.
- Incorporate a series of questions to determine the holistic cost of disturbance from an ecosystem services perspective (what is the true cost and impact vs. the gain of this reclamation) because often the landscape is more sensitive to disturbance and wildlife populations as well.
- Demonstrate the benefit (any type of document and/or information (both measured and observed) that builds the weight of evidence that there is an environmental benefit).
- Net cost to the environment to “fix” the problem needs to be taken into consideration.
  - Net gain to the site or the environment to reclaiming

#### Wetland Type / Disturbance Type

- Fen vs Bog (fen being perceived as more likely to have drainage impacts)
- Linear vs non-linear (linear being considered more likely to cause drainage impacts)
- Existing (occurred post disturbance but before applying for RC) presence of vegetation death or changes in community in the surrounding wetland.

#### Hydrology

- Data and/or observations to demonstrate that the flow of water has been returned and/or is not impacting the surrounding environment.
- 1. Hydrology – is the pad having significant adverse effect on water movement and vegetation? If so, can it be mitigated? If not, remove pad. Example: reshape pad to prevent ‘damning’ effect, or remove/break-up linear features to prevent ‘damning’.
- Hydrology most important; whether meets peatland criteria
- Hydrology data (if it is available) – not required to utilize piezometers for site specific decision, but more related to major changes in vegetation response due to changes in hydrology (flow) and/or water ponding.
- Subsurface drainage direction

- Is it affecting anything like groundwater. Does not need to look the same as it was before.

#### Landscape

- 4. Landform – Could the pad be reclaimed to be representative of other upland features within the wetland, or is it a large, uninterrupted wetland? If so, and point #2 about cumulative effect is not a concern, then leave in place because it's representative of the regional landform.
- Presence of underlying fabric

#### Soils

- Soil compaction
- Subsoil conditions
- Surface stoniness
- Surrounding peat depth

#### Vegetation

- Need to be able to demonstrate that vegetation is already established on the site.
- 7. Vegetation – This would also be a lower consideration after points 1 to 4 because vegetation can be managed, but if natural revegetation is good it could also serve as a 'tie-breaker' if previous points are inconclusive.
- Determine a set of criteria to evaluate the diversity of species onsite to ensure resiliency present and in the future (to ensure the site continues on trajectory to natural upland ecosystem)
- Invasive species present criteria.
- Vegetation type onsite vs offsite
- Proximity to similar vegetation type

#### 6C: *Response not specific to a or b*

- Acceptable Justifications – cost/benefit analysis (i.e., will the outcomes for the site and the surrounding land be better if actively reclaimed or will the result be the same or less?)
- Entire pad is removed only to result in an open waterbody with cattails
- How quickly does peat rebound after pad material is in place? Does it matter how many years it has been padded? Does the weight of the pad and the amount of pad material matter? What about material under the pad, if any?
- Clear guidelines from the regulator – possible change to the 2010 Reclamation Criteria

#### Summary

- Corporate performance history and information on who did the work are important considerations.

- Several suggestions were made regarding decision support tools and process flow descriptions that could be developed to help users provide better information and help regulators make more consistent decisions.
- Regulators want more detailed justification, supported by data, photos, etc., to show why deficiencies are not a problem.
- Fit with surrounding land use (positive or negative) will be considered.
- Environmental net benefit of redisturbance was raised frequently, particularly where the borrow pit has already been reclaimed so there is no place to “return” the borrow material.
- Hydrology, wetland type and cumulative effects (regional scale) are key factors in decision to allow pad to remain in place.

7: *In your experience, what information is important for practitioners/industry to discuss with local forest officers/regulators when making decisions with respect to variances from criteria for ...?*

#### General

- Company supplies 1 variance and gets approval in advance
  - When the application comes in there are actually multiple variances that weren't previously approved and government is not able to provide an appropriate decision for the site because all the information wasn't available.

7A: *An upland wellsite with vegetation encroachment*

#### General

- 3rd party impacts that are often present due to recreational vehicles and/or use by the forestry industry. Oil and Gas companies should not have to continue to incur reclamation costs due to 3rd party impacts that are not within their control. More cooperation and communication between the Oil and Gas and Forestry industry to ensure that newly reclaimed sites are not damaged once reclamation has occurred.
- The limitations associated with the failure
- Vegetation quality, appropriate contour, sufficient surface soil? – consider potential for becoming cutblock, will it be able to support forest veg. (surrounding cutblock); need to forecast potential end land use.
- Currently not in a position in BC where the regulator vetos reclamation activities.

#### Goals / Objectives / Equivalent Land Capability

- If a site is not meeting criteria, focus on how it is still meeting equivalent land capability.
- Open a discussion about the common goals.
- If a site doesn't meet criteria – brainstorm a list of questions that should be asked that indicate if the site is meeting the common goal and/or what interventions may be required.
- Land use of the site

- Improvements in place need to be discussed and justified.

#### Responsibility / Process / Communication

- AER closure group, AEP lands officers don't have authority here.
- Generally, never talk to AEP.
- Just providing the justification in a non-routine application (i.e., not engaging with government before conducting the assessments).
- Communicate all the time. Frequency rather than detail initially. Keep the AEP informed. Call them. Develop a relationship with your AEP lands officer. Sooner the better.
- It depends on the nature of the variance. AEP doesn't need to be involved in the conversation if a change in land use is not requested. When approving a variance, it is important to consider the long-term implications, thus practitioners/industry should be considering how they can provide assurances that any deficiencies will not have a long-term impact.
- Engage early on in the process
- Early decision point.
- Timing of discussion should be done before the well is drilled at the planning stage.
- Upfront discussion (before activity occurs).
- Have the conversation before reclamation activities and/or making a formal request for change in land use and/or certification.
- Ensure that all information is provided to begin with. Don't just paint part of the picture when making the requests
- Pre-reclamation - Submit a reclamation plan for approval. Peace River AEP group seems interested in being involved from a 30,000 ft level in the reclamation process for some of these sites. They are also willing to consider trials on reclamation procedures.
- Ensure that the full conversation is occurring.
- Discuss with the AER variances and provide:
  - Data and photos showing progression and trajectory is on the correct path
  - Data and photos on weed control plans over years showing weeds decreasing and weeds offsite.
  - Data and photos showing native vegetation increase over time.
  - Data and photos before and after showing 3rd party use by Forest Companies or Recreational use.
  - Data and photos showing pre-existing trails/access roads (before and after) plus survey plans
  - Pre-site inspections
  - Routine disclosure GOA department file inspections.

#### Information Needs

- Current characteristics of the site, landscape, soil and vegetation
- The purpose of not completing the full reclamation.
- DSA data?

- DSA with pictures to support the application, particularly if you are going to submit a non-routine application. Provide all the information to justify vegetation override to ensure AER does not need to come back and request additional information.
- Detailed site assessment outcomes
- Why does the site fall into “a different” realm
  - 20/30 years of vegetation establishment
- Have data (survey information, photos, professional justification) to show that the site is functioning [Need to be able to provide AER with confidence that the site is set on a trajectory to a functioning ecosystem]
- Important to discuss any overlapping tenures (grazing, forestry, traditional lands) and set goals and objectives based on historical and present use. Also the holistic evaluation of ecosystem services as noted below.
- Disturbance required and the timelines required to achieve reclamation certification
- Lists of sites that they plan to do reclamation/remediation on.
- What they actually did finish activities on.
- Remaining features at the site
- Ensure that all concerns that represent the site are provided.
  - Examples: weeds, soil depth, brush piles, etc.
- Off-site impacts (actual or potential impacts – drainage, erosion, subsidence, slumping)

#### Criteria

- Does it meet standards such that they are satisfied. Go back to forested land criteria.
- Soil, landscape criteria and how far the vegetation would be set back.

#### Impacts of Removal / Impacts of Leaving in Place / Environmental Net Benefit

- Negative impacts of reclaiming the site (Remoteness of the location and how much vegetation may need to be disturbed just to access the site)
- What are the risks to not reclaiming the site – future land uses/users, ecosystem function
  - 6. Condition of borrow pit – This would be a lower consideration after points 1 to 4, but if the borrow pit is well vegetated and functioning as a wetland it could serve as a ‘tie-breaker’ if previous points are inconclusive.
- Ease of access
- Determine if disturbance due to reclamation will cause net loss or gain
- Come prepared to discuss what the environmental implications are for the request.
- Example: Cut and fill landscape variance – discuss potential limitations and demonstrate that they are not having an adverse effect (Example, water pooling, etc.).
- What are the benefits to the environment for proceeding with reclamation within this context.

#### Age

- Timeframes (how long has the site been growing).
- Age of site.



## Local and Regional Context / Impacts

- Area that a variance is applicable to (less tolerance in caribou areas for example)
- 2. Cumulative effect – I think this needs a scientifically and geographically informed approach to establish a threshold of how much peatland/wetland in a given region can be ‘lost’ without degrading the region. A zero tolerance policy bothers me because I actually think that some pads left in place can enhance the habitat of a peatland area by creating upland refugia in an expanse of peatland. In my experience doing surveys in peatland areas (e.g., Wabasca area) the wildlife trails often appeared like pathways joining one upland to another. And proper reclamation/restoration of linear features ‘connecting’ the network of upland features should deter deer, moose, and predators that degrade caribou habitat.
- 3. Location – is the pad on the fringes of a wetland and close to an upland area? If so, leave in place because it’s a minor infringement on the wetland that is representative of the nearby/adjacent land.
- 5. Land use – Green Area or White Area? Remote or not? What is the proximity to land use other than forested/wetland and potential for future development? If adjacent to private land and not protected by any other mechanism (e.g., PNT, CNT, Park, etc.) then leave in place because potential for future development exists and if the area was a critical habitat for caribou or other species it would be protected already.

## Hydrology

- 1. Hydrology – is the pad having significant adverse effect on water movement and vegetation? If so, can it be mitigated? If not, remove pad. Example: reshape pad to prevent ‘damning’ effect, or remove/break-up linear features to prevent ‘damning’.

## Landscape

- 4. Landform – Could the pad be reclaimed to be representative of other upland features within the wetland, or is it a large, uninterrupted wetland? If so, and point #2 about cumulative effect is not a concern, then leave in place because it’s representative of the regional landform.
- Overall contour of the site

## Vegetation

- 7. Vegetation – This would also be a lower consideration after points 1 to 4 because vegetation can be managed, but if natural revegetation is good it could also serve as a ‘tie-breaker’ if previous points are inconclusive.
- Relaxation of the weed requirements (not relevant to a huge infestation)
  - Perennial sow thistle – herbicide spray is causing more damage to permanent reclamation.
  - Scentless chamomile
- Vegetation cover and type
- Weeds

## 7B: A mineral soil pad within a peatland

### General

- This is considered a change in land use.
- Did the application/request for a change in lands use, show any of the following. None of these things are currently policy requirements, just items that strengthen a request.
  - Indication that the proposed end land use of the remaining pad was locally common in the natural subregion?
  - That the pad would be contoured into the existing landscape?
  - That the forested eco-site selection was both locally common and suitable to the pad soil characteristics.
  - Any investigation that the pad was chemically suitable to the forested site proposed (e.g., Naturally occurring sulphates brought to surface).
  - Any discussion on how the risks of pad forested reclamation success will be managed. (e.g., Additional monitoring of planted trees).
- Negligence is not a form of justification.
- Soil, landscape criteria and how far the vegetation would be set back.
- If a payment was made and it will be reclaimed to an upland
- Try to have some planning for reclamation before construction. This can have a cumulative impacts approach so that areas can be engineered appropriately to create the targeted land uses.

### Examples

- Only asked for 1 pad to be released (i.e., left in place) and it got rejected (acid sulphate soils 10 to 12 thousand ppm sulfates and pH of 3 and it didn't grow anything)
  - The justification provided was that with time the site would begin to weather and vegetation would establish and that removing the material would cause more environmental impact due to cross contamination with high acid/high sulphate soils and that reclamation of the borrow would be confounding the success. (He wanted to avoid making a larger disturbance because of the nature of the materials.
  - Application was rejected (by Kevin Ball) (not a good enough justification to leave it – remove the pad material and learn how to deal with the material) [site is still sitting]
  - Relates to maybe 30 out of 50,000 sites that he has been involved with in NW Alberta and NE BC where the mineral material that is used for a borrow is high in sulphates.

### Rationale / Land Use

- Integrated land management. Not just good enough to say that “people want it” – have to provide a more in-depth ecological justification.
- The purpose of leaving it in place.
- Explanation for WHY they think a change in land use is appropriate. Needs to be ecologically based.

- Discuss potential limitations associated with a site and demonstrate that they are not having an adverse effect on the environment and that the potential for them to have an adverse effect on the environment in the future is low (water pooling, etc.).
- Why does the site fall into “a different” realm
  - 20/30 years of vegetation establishment
- Industry need to make the argument of why the pad should be left. Need to convince the province why it should be left there.
- Prepare information for how the site fits in with the landscape

## Process / Communication

- AEP is landowner (need to discuss it with them first)
- All over the map about when AEP should be consulted in the conversation [requires clarification]; sooner the better from AEPs perspective.
- Discuss with the AER and provide:
  - Data and photos showing progression and trajectory is on the correct path
  - Data and photos on weed control plans over years showing weeds decreasing and weeds offsite.
  - Data and photos showing native vegetation increase over time.
  - Data and photos before and after showing 3<sup>rd</sup> party use by Forest Companies or Recreational use.
  - Data and photos showing pre-existing trails/access roads (before and after) plus survey plans
  - Pre-site inspections
  - Routine disclosure GOA department file inspections.
- Land use change request process
  - Go to AER
  - Put together information package
  - Submit to AEP (by industry)
  - Assess package and send out to decision matter experts
  - Provide AER with a response (essentially sign of on change in land use)
- AER needs an explanation why they should accept the variance so that if accepted it can be supported and pass in a hearing. Variances need good rationale why there is no risk and justifications need to be supported with facts rather than simple statements indicating there is no risk. Professional judgement needs to be show there is no environmental risk.
- If a company is planning to change the end land use (e.g., from peatland to upland) they need to involve the AEP in the discussion before going too far down the path. They need to provide justification as to why the change in land use is appropriate.
- Pre-reclamation - Submit a rec plan for approval. Peace River AEP group seems interested in being involved from a 30,000 ft level in the reclamation process for some of these sites. They are also willing to consider trials on reclamation procedures. Local forest officers have requested to accompany on site visits prior to considering approvals.
- Engage early on in the process
  - Early decision point.
- Upfront discussion (before activity occurs)

- Needs to encourage discussion earlier in the process. Discuss with AEP so that they have the opportunity to provide input so that at the end of the day there a higher likelihood to have a change in land use. Come prepared to discuss what the environmental implications are for the request.
- Have the conversation before reclamation activities and/or making a formal request for change in land use and/or certification.
- First and foremost – what was agreed upon. If a company got approval for an application to construct the site they stated what they would do in terms of reclamation. Only in extreme circumstances should applications be made for a change in end land use. Before initiating a conversation make sure you know what was agreed up. An extremely sound argument would be required to justify why the reclamation that was agreed upon is not what is being done.

#### Information Needs

- Current characteristics of the site, landscape, soil and vegetation
- Detailed site assessment outcomes

#### Local and Regional Context / Impacts

- Off-site impacts (actual or potential impacts as well as providing information on peatland type, peat depth, drainage directions)
- Number of pads in a peatland or bog? How are they cumulatively affecting ecosite.
- Is it having a negative effect on the surrounding environment.
- If there are concerns regarding the impact of the mineral material on the peatland - chemistry impact of the mineral material on the surrounding peatland (water chemistry analysis)
- Landscape consistency. Try to make the pad look more natural (re-contour around the edges and create more of a hummock as it is in with the surrounding landscape.
- 2. Cumulative effect – I think this needs a scientifically and geographically informed approach to establish a threshold of how much peatland/wetland in a given region can be ‘lost’ without degrading the region. A zero tolerance policy bothers me because I actually think that some pads left in place can enhance the habitat of a peatland area by creating upland refugia in an expanse of peatland. In my experience doing surveys in peatland areas (e.g., Wabasca area) the wildlife trails often appeared like pathways joining one upland to another. And proper reclamation/restoration of linear features ‘connecting’ the network of upland features should deter deer, moose, and predators that degrade caribou habitat.
- 3. Location – is the pad on the fringes of a wetland and close to an upland area? If so, leave in place because it’s a minor infringement on the wetland that is representative of the nearby/adjacent land.
- 5. Land use – Green Area or White Area? Remote or not? What is the proximity to land use other than forested/wetland and potential for future development? If adjacent to private land and not protected by any other mechanism (e.g., PNT, CNT, Park, etc.) then leave in place because potential for future development exists and if the area was a critical habitat for caribou or other species it would be protected already.

## Impacts of Removal / Impacts of Leaving in Place / Environmental Net Benefit

- Carbon footprint associated with removal
- Potential damage through pad removal, especially if deep mineral or severely depressed peat.
- Site access.
- Ease of access
- Determine if disturbance due to reclamation will cause net loss or gain
- Status and accessibility of borrow pit
- Availability of location to return pad material to if no borrow pit
- What are the benefits to the environment for proceeding with reclamation within this context.
- Incorporate a series of questions to determine the holistic cost of disturbance from an ecosystem services perspective (what is the true cost and impact vs. the gain of this reclamation) because often the landscape is more sensitive to disturbance and wildlife populations as well.
- Where to put fill? Borrow pits cannot be used to return soil because they are now considered wetlands.
- If you are taking away the pad then you need to consider the trade- off of removing a wetland from where the borrow would be.
- Site access challenges
- Discuss how the problem would be fixed and do a cost/benefit analysis.
  - Where to put the mineral soils, etc.
- Consideration of where the material will go
- 6. Condition of borrow pit – This would be a lower consideration after points 1 to 4, but if the borrow pit is well vegetated and functioning as a wetland it could serve as a ‘tie-breaker’ if previous points are inconclusive.

## Hydrology

- Drainage, site productivity before and after
- Groundwater flow/hydrology
- Area subsurface drainage pattern
- 1. Hydrology – is the pad having significant adverse effect on water movement and vegetation? If so, can it be mitigated? If not, remove pad. Example: reshape pad to prevent ‘damning’ effect, or remove/break-up linear features to prevent ‘damning’.

## Landscape

- Erosion (no sediment transport into the peatland)
- Presence of underlying fabric
- 4. Landform – Could the pad be reclaimed to be representative of other upland features within the wetland, or is it a large, uninterrupted wetland? If so, and point #2 about cumulative effect is not a concern, then leave in place because it’s representative of the regional landform.

## Soils

- Decompaction is a key thing that needs to be addressed.
  - Sites have been left in place and re-vegetated.
  - Significant limitation to achieving ELC in the long term because they may have vegetation growing, but the capability is lacking.
  - Corduroy/filter cloth that will limit root development in the future (long term impacts for achieving ELC).
- Surface soil conditions

## Vegetation

- Vegetation that is meeting a functioning upland ecosystem (demonstrated by vegetation meeting the upland forested criteria with a reasonable representative control)
- Vegetation cover and type
- Proximity to similar vegetation type
- 7. Vegetation – This would also be a lower consideration after points 1 to 4 because vegetation can be managed, but if natural revegetation is good it could also serve as a ‘tie-breaker’ if previous points are inconclusive.
- Vegetation composition

7C: *Response not specific to a or b*

- Justification and data to support the plan or reclamation outcomes
- Robust mitigation and adaptive management.
- Site specific plans while keeping in mind the bigger picture – are you in caribou habitat? Is the entire project going to be short on reclamation materials as a result of having to spread topsoil around to all upland AND padded sites? What will the effect be on hydrological function in the surrounding areas?
- Specific criteria for which pads will remain in place (e.g., Pads will be selected to remain in place if they meet XXX criteria – something standardized that is in alignment with their closure goals and outcomes).

## Summary

- Communication with the decision makers early in the process (ideally before any work is done) is critical to gaining acceptance. However, knowing who the “right” decision maker is can be a problem (AER for sites with natural vegetation encroachment and AEP for pad in place).
- Rationale for change in land use and ability to demonstrate no impacts of the change are important factors.
- Environmental net benefit of redistribution was raised frequently especially for pad removal cases, particularly where the borrow pit has already been reclaimed so there is no place to “return” the borrow material.

- Location in sensitive areas (e.g., caribou range), land use and cumulative effects are all considerations.

8: *In your experience, what information would be beneficial for practitioners/industry to provide (empirical, case studies, etc.) justification for variances from criteria?*

#### General

- At the end of the day the justification should be prepared to so AER has confidence that is defensible in a hearing setting.

#### Responsibility / Process

- That the regulator responsible for variances is the AER.
- Heavy burden of proof required to justify that the desired outcome would be achieved.

#### Information Needs – Process

- Long-term monitoring of sites where justifications have been utilized.
- Potentially case study examples where the long term implications can be demonstrated.
- Cited public references and/or case studies (PTAC meetings, CLRA, RemTech) and evidence that help to support the argument and demonstrate similarities to references and site.
- Guidance/roadmap and case studies or examples
- Need a standardized assessment methodology for approval of variances and change in land use (to provide clarity to industry and regulator/AEP the type of information required to make the decision). Also need a formalized process for how decisions regarding a change in land use are made for leaving a pad in place – what is required (landscape context, vegetation criteria, contour edges, hydrology, etc.).

#### Information Needs – Applications

- Additional information supporting:
  - Success of natural revegetation in and around pads in peatlands - how successful is natural encroachment in transitional areas and pads (especially the centre of pads).
  - How much topsoil is needed to reclaim a pad site to an upland? Is there a bare minimum requirement? Can pads be reclaimed without out topsoil and if so, what determines success and long term resiliency (site prep, fill material, depth of water table under pad, etc.)?
  - Shear strength of peat and how removal of the top layers affects stability during construction.
- I think it would be beneficial to provide projections based on the history of the recent site evaluations and relevant case studies. A follow-up to confirm or negate projections should be implemented as well. This doesn't need to deter the issuance of a Certificate but rather be seen

as a contribution to the development of case studies that can be referred to in the future. The follow-up evaluation should be a standard enough (empirical) evaluation that it would not need to be a peer reviewed research paper, but rather two professional sign-off for example.

- Professional judgment with supporting evidence
- Within professional justification
  - Scientific evidence that supports the justification will provide AEP with more confidence that the variance is not going to impose liability on the province of Alberta.
  - Anything that helps to provide more confidence
  - A complete package of information with considerations from the site and regional perspective.
- When requesting a release for a pad to be left in place I have provided information for each of the 7 points discussed in #6, except for the cumulative effect (#2) because the data required to develop that justification was beyond the scope of the single upstream well pads I worked on (more applicable to in-situ facilities).
- Consistent package to demonstrate function
- Proof that the site conditions do not impede natural drainage, erosion/slope stability is not a concern and that the vegetation is on the trajectory to be the same composition and density as in the background.
- Site specific data.
- Site specific information
- Site specific information (comparison on-site to off-site)
- Full DSA that was done and justification letters (measurement data that demonstrates that onsite conditions are similar to off site.)
- Passing detailed site assessment
- Photographs
- Surveys
- Observation information
- Measurements and observations
- Not really required to provide much additional information.

## Rationale

- Site specific information that provides a good explanation as to why the “limitation and/or deficiency” will not hinder equivalent land capability in the long term (generally demonstrated by the fact that the vegetation meets the criteria).
- In my experience preparing justifications and variance requests for upland sites I try to prepare them in three sections. 1) a clear definition of the criteria failure, 2) an explanation of why the failure is not considered a problem to achieving equivalent land capability, and 3) an explanation of why the available mitigation is not recommended. I have rarely, if ever, referred to published literature because I relied almost exclusively on a successful woody stem assessment. I provided several examples to Bonnie in a separate email.
- In a couple of cases where the EFR for a location stated that the pad would be left in place I relied on it as pre-approval for the reclamation plan.
- References to information that justifies why a “limitation” will not cause long term adverse effects (within the context of the site conditions).



- Any, and all information that provides justification towards the benefit of the variance.

#### Summary

- Respondents provided a number of information types that could be used to support applications / decisions, ranging from simply providing a DSA to very specific examples of application content.
- Site specific information that provides a good explanation as to why the “limitation and/or deficiency” will not hinder equivalent land capability in the long term

#### ***The following questions applied to industry stakeholders and practitioners conducting reclamation activities and preparing a variance to criteria when applying for Reclamation Certification:***

9: *What have been the main discussion points with, and questions raised by, Land Managers, Forest Officers and Regulators when discussing reclamation and certification of:*

9A: *An upland wellsite with vegetation encroachment*

#### General

- None applicable. The applications he has provided have been approved without follow up.
- Just reclaim if timeline doesn't work, need to get in and get out
- 'One off' sites are not worth having discussions if they slow the entire program
- If remediation required, do the reclamation
- Regulator in BC is disconnected from this issue (auditor general recently challenged them so this is subject to change).

#### Policy / Regulatory

- Conversations around interim reclamation (AER)
  - Industry is being asked (Push) to complete interim reclamation yet re-establishing vegetation on portions of the site mean that the vegetation will have to be disturbed at the time of final reclamation or a variance will have to be approved at the time of certification for certain deficiencies in soils and landscapes). The Landscape component of the criteria will need to facilitate interim reclamation to allow for variances. Thus a formalized process that gives both industry and government confidence that this is acceptable is required.
  - Huge cost to industry if a variance is not allowed and they have to disturb areas on a site that they have already invested in for reclamation.

#### Responsibility / Communication / Process

- There isn't a lot of feedback from any of those agencies in my experience. It used to be an option to leave pads in place but the mandate from the AER has been to move away from that because of concerns with the issues outlined in the previous questions. However, there is no criteria to

determine if the pad remaining in place actually poses a problem to the functionality of the surrounding environment.

- AER is taking a risk based approach, thus they want details about what environmental considerations have been made about the improvement and implications of the pad being left in place.
  - Better information about the justification as to WHY from an environmental perspective that the decision is being made.
- Difficult timeline/arena with land managers
- Hasn't had to converse with AEP for the variance discussions.

#### Rationale / Objectives

- Explanation of why site wasn't reclaimed
- Has the overall land use capability been maintained for future overlapping tenure users (i.e., agricultural grazing, forestry cutblock)
- First Nations are the main stakeholder and they want pre-disturbance conditions. Not entirely sure how they are going to meet this expectation, but the conversation is started.
  - Haven't really had many conversations about this as of yet
- Consideration of location and accessibility

#### Information Needs

- Review of EFRs
- Review of construction records
- Review of detailed site assessment
- Conduct site visit
- Reclamation records
- Is wildlife using the site? Grazing on the site? Using the site bedding down?
- Have all contaminants of concern been removed and is there an appropriate cap of suitable material over any onsite sump areas or impacted areas?

#### Landscape

- Ponding, erosion, slumping and bare areas – how much is too much. 2010 Criteria provides some guidance around what is considered “small and localized (<4m<sup>2</sup>)”, but often a difference in opinion regarding professional judgement
- Broader landscape cut and fill conversations (contour) (what is “operable from a commercial forestry perspective”)
  - Erosion
  - Contours
- Subsidence

## Soils

- No guideline with respect to topsoil depths in terms of forest development. Trees grow everywhere.
- Topsoil replacement depth – there can be hang-ups with topsoil replacement and topsoil replacement depths, despite the fact that the site is thriving and well vegetated.
- Topsoil depths

## Vegetation

- Take a similar approach to forestry in a cutblock for weed tolerance. Ongoing debate. Do we go in with more herbicide and hurt the trees than what it's worth.
- Generally, I've had consensus that meeting/exceeding the woody stem requirements overrides deficiencies with herbaceous cover, weeds, soil, or landscape. The only time I had a variance request rejected for an upland site was one that had very low total herbaceous cover (acid-sulphate soil in the Chinchaga region). That was in ~2014 and SRD requested that we make an effort to seed it with native grass and improve the herbaceous cover.
- Vegetation trajectory (if the approver sees good growth)
- Vegetation establishment
- Are some of these weeds really impeding a forest. (Requires consideration for amount and volume of weeds in comparison). Good success with certification of these sites. Compare with cutblocks in the area. Getting regulator across all industries regulating similarly (forestry and oil and gas).
- Weeds – undesirable species or noxious weeds – little to no tolerance. Annual spraying can lead to a vicious cycle of spraying, replanting, waiting for re-growth of desirable herbaceous, spraying etc.
- Weeds
- Are invasive weeds obviously being outcompeted by desired species
- Weeds and productivity

## Hydrology

- Water issues
- Regional Drainage and hydrology are not impacting landscape and vegetation species

*9B: A mineral soil pad within a peatland*

## General

- Realistically the number of sites this refers to is multiple thousands of sites (pads that have functioning uplands (as islands) within a peatland. (more than 1,000 for Canadian Natural alone).
- Big pads can be a challenge (100 x 100 m x 1 m deep = a lot of mineral soil) – can cost \$1M for large in situ pad.

## Rationale

- End land use remains the same:
  - Traditional harvesting
  - Traditional recreation, hunting, hiking etc.
  - Wildlife habitat
- Although the lease does not share similar characteristics it is not creating ponding or inhibiting surface water flow offsite and overall vegetation growth and soil development offsite are not affected and a suitable macrosite is being created on the lease and access road.
- Come back to what they said they were going to do in the plan.
- When leaving a borrow, and creating a wetland, what led to that decision to ensure that it stays as a wetland.
- Explanation of why site wasn't reclaimed
- The level of disturbance required to fully reclaim it

## Information Needs

- Research in support of the strategy to leave a pad in place. Too much uncertainty to do the research and then pursuing it and then site rejected anyway
  - Groundwater focus – what is the pad going to do in the long term to the groundwater
  - Cumulative effect of multiple pads in an area.
  - Vision (overgrown/legacy veg is there) different. New pads – in areas to create upland islands within peatlands and discontinued from other linear features. One of the biggest questions is “what will you use for surface materials”. Need examples of this from a research perspective.
  - Operational applied research needs to be accepted as well (functional practical field level).
    - What study required to show whether pad impacts hydrology or not? What is even involved in that (cost/timeline).
- Review of EFRs
- Review of construction records
- Review of detailed site assessment
- Consideration of location and accessibility
- Conduct site visit
- Reclamation records
- What would the third-party impact be if the site were left in place (road or site).
- Have all contaminants of concern been removed and is there an appropriate cap of suitable material over any onsite sump areas or impacted areas?
- Does leaving the soil pad create/disrupt sensitive wildlife habitat areas (i.e., calving areas)
- Have attempts been made to distribute native woody debris and seed bank material;

## Examples

- Experimental block – which included one treatment where the surface was smoothed out.
  - Need to be open to trialing new techniques and processes if we are going to develop best management practices for sites under various conditions.
- Example: Well pad on a fen, removed most of the clay and made the surface rough and loose and turned it up, bringing peat up and sending clay down. Heterogeneous mix of organic/mineral on the surface. 50-90 cm of elevation difference.
- A third perspective was the example I provided in #8 where we relied on the EFR as a written pre-approval. In that case the individual was receptive to discussion of the 7 factors (see #6), but was hesitant to authorize the approval until the EFR was provided.
- Inverted pad on a site and currently in discussion (TBD whether certified)

## Responsibility / Process

- The discussion for pads was more difficult than upland sites and varied significantly by the approving individual. On the other hand, one individual I took on a field tour in the Chinchaga region (helicopter flight) and gained approval for several pads in one day by looking at the 7 factors outline in #6 for each site. Note that we also agreed on some pads that should be removed and agreed to disagree on others.
- Even when a site is “functioning as an “upland island” in the right environmental regional context and borrow pit is a functional wetland there is little interest in having a discussion about a change in land use. Stopped engaging in the conversations presently and defaulting these sites to a later date.
- In-Situ: A more holistic approach to “land use” – the overall land use doesn’t change, some of the sites may change slightly and the reclamation requirements may be slightly different but the end land use doesn’t change. Project level planning for reclamation.

## Communication

- Discussions with AEP in the fall of 2018 – Focused on the fact that the policy is to remove the pad and that is what they would like to see on all the sites, but if there are strong environmental reasons to leave it in place they would like recommendations from practitioners as to the sites that are most likely going to succeed with a change in end land use. Out of 50 sites in an area – this should only be relevant to a small handful (3-5).
- When a company is wanting to try something – don’t necessarily penalize them if it isn’t a complete success (i.e., you can’t ask for a trial and then expect it to finish with successful reclamation).
- Considerable challenges with discussion with AEP around land use changes
  - Easier to default to take the pad and return the mineral material to the borrow (conservative approach).
  - Not seeing the cost or prioritization of work for industry and impact of moving the material on the environment (both the peatland and to the borrow pit)
  - Need a more formalized process for the land use change discussions/decisions

## Reclamation Options

- Cut a portion of the pad down to leave only +/-20 cm of reveal. This should be discussed with the AEP rep prior to completing.
- Take the pad material and partially reclaim a borrow pit or cut down multiple pad sites and fully reclaim one borrow pit.

## Impacts of Removal / Impacts of Leaving in Place / Environmental Net Benefit

- Status or availability of borrow pit
- Has the overall holistic benefit/cost been determined of leaving the soil pad vs. removing?
- Functioning ecosystem, try to reclaim; remoteness and isolated without a lot of other pads would help to make the case.
- Borrow pit – open water, reclamation of borrow?

## Hydrology

- Drainage channels were insufficient for the long term.
- Drainage
- Disruption of watercourse
- Not impeding surface water flow or diverting water with pads or flow

## Landscape

- Contour and landscape - how will pad be recontoured?
- Stability of pad
- Geotextiles – what effect do they have if left in place on vegetation establishment and hydrological function.

## Soils

- Lack of topsoil, how to reclaim without topsoil if, even possible
- Topsoil replacement depths – upland or lowland etc.
- Suitability of pad material to support vegetation long term

## Vegetation

- Weeds, agronomics
- Are invasive weeds obviously being outcompeted by desired species;
- Species composition and balance

9C: *Transitional sites (i.e., sites with components considered upland and sites considered peatlands/wetlands, as is the case with many access roads)*

#### Examples

- 3 large pad sites in the thermal operation did multiple strategy. Removed some components, re-contoured, exposed peat, etc. Monitoring to determine success.
- Did a full pad removal that they are monitoring. Monitoring the groundwater component. Re-instated the peat component.
- Made the edge of a site into each (upland and peatland) then aim for certification with the respective criteria (also depends on the proportion of the site). If a site is predominantly one type – apply that criteria. If it is more evenly distributed then apply both criteria and/or have a discussion with regulator/AEP about options for reclamation.
- Many of their sites are on the edge or have a peninsula into a wetland (the pad itself – not talking about the access road)
  - Haven't formally done a land use change and used the criteria that was originally planned. Simply recontoured the site and applied the upland criteria to the area that had extended into the wetland. Several examples of success with AER accepting these applications.
- Removal of the patterned fen – EPEA required that they needed to remove/salvage peat
  - Peatlands were part of a larger peatland complex; underlying hydrological connectivity. Construction required that the fill material be applied on top and thus it would require it be removed at the end of the days.
  - Small peatlands that are not connected hydrologically to anything (independent pocket).

#### Policy / Regulatory

- Typically do not want to see trends in having numerous wellsites with justifications or not doing reclamation and hoping to get variances for everything. Typically want to see vegetation on a trajectory to becoming a mature forest and do not want any negative impacts to future land uses/users (large cut and fills, holes, refuse). They often have a more regional perspective as well, as practitioners are often only focused on the wellsite itself and may not have as much regional information.
- Asking for more clearly defined closure plans. It may make sense to use clay elsewhere, and it may not. Thus it is difficult to plan too far in advance.

#### Rationale

- Overall – try to address through front end planning to avoid delays in getting permission
- Explanation of why site wasn't reclaimed

#### Information Needs

- Information can be shared publicly over the next few years. Doing this in terms of wetland research iFROG (research group).

- Reclamation records
- Does leaving the site in the existing state/disrupt sensitive wildlife habitat areas;
- Have attempts been made to distribute native woody debris and seed bank material;
- Have all contaminants of concern been removed and is there an appropriate cap of suitable material over any onsite sump areas or impacted areas?
- Review of EFRs
- Review of construction records
- Review of detailed site assessment
- Conduct site visit
- Reclamation records
- For wellsites, it depends whether it would blend in with the surrounding topography.
- Regional siting and biophysical inputs

#### Reclamation Options

- For sites that are in a transition from peatland to upland – reclaim by using the pad material to create an extension of the upland area. This seemed to be the preferred method for the Peace River group.
- Generally, I've been able to treat transitional sites as upland and address them accordingly because they don't typically have borrow pits that require approval to leave as wetlands. That's because if the fill material is available on an upland side of a site they will take it from there instead of opening a separate borrow pit. The exception would be if it was necessary to pad a section of access road that required a borrow pit. In that instance the discussions proceeded as described above in part b. I have a good example of a site I am currently working with that fits this scenario.

#### Impacts of Removal / Impacts of Leaving in Place / Environmental Net Benefit

- Consideration of location and accessibility
- Status or availability of borrow pit
- Constructability
- Economics

#### Landscape

- Are there any significant contour/topography changes that impact the transitional areas and associated habitat both plants and animals?

#### Vegetation

- Weeds
- Are invasive weeds obviously being outcompeted by desired species



## Hydrology

- Consider hydrology and contour appropriate
- Is the regional and immediate hydrology/drainage impacted negatively

## Summary

- Concerns were expressed that there is a default “No” mentality emerging. Discussions regarding leaving pads in place were more difficult.
- Look to forestry experiences with tree growth and weeds rather than criteria numbers.
- Pads in peatlands occur in large numbers and cost to remove can be considerable – therefore consideration of cumulative effects of removal requests should be considered.
- Approaches to transitional sites varied from reclaim to both upland and peatland, or remove pad and reclaim to peatland, or leave pad and reclaim as upland.

10: *How did you come to a conclusion regarding certification/management of the sites discussed above?*

## General

- Usually involved lots of communication (email, phone), justifications, pictures, aerial photographs, a joint site visit and approval of a “plan” to leave site as is

10A: *What are the main reasons they said yes to certification?*

## General

- I have not received certification under these circumstances.
- Still waiting for certification.
- All of the considerations noted above were addressed and an evaluation was in favor of no further disturbance or work. Follow-up evaluations were a condition of the COR Applications two years after the certification.

## Process

- Pre-approved plan in place (written communication)
- Generally, try to get a pre-application clearance to not have to do a non-routine application because the process goes faster.
- In most instances for upland sites applications are submitted as non-routine and approved because appropriate justification is provided to demonstrate that a vegetation override was appropriate (i.e., the site met the vegetation criteria within the forested criteria) and the deficiencies were not impeding equivalent land capability (as evidenced by the vegetation established on the site).

- Need to provide more information about what the type of information that AEP, AER would require to have confident in professional justification decision.
  - We can provide examples for the type of information they are looking for with respect to the variances.
  - With respect to land use change – what are the main factors being considered and a formalized process for how to make the decisions.
  - Justification information available that is specific to the individual sites (a checklist for things to include when considering using professional justification and applying for a variance.

#### Communication

- Persistence, open discussion and providing a logical rationale
- The main reason seems to be willingness of the approving individual to discuss it. For upland sites it was willingness to accept a successful woody stem assessment as justification for other deficiencies. For peatland sites it was a willingness to discuss and consider the 7 points (see #6) instead of defaulting to a 'no' answer.

#### Rationale / Supporting Information

- Functioning ecosystem with little to no off site impacts.
- Meet applicable/applied criteria
- Detailed and scientifically rationale presented with good professional judgement
- Most have been based on the quality of the package and the professional justification. Photo documentation and why they feel it meets ELC. 98% of the time if the appropriate information is provided, these are being approved.
- Evidence of functioning ecosystem and otherwise compliance with reclamation criteria
- Focus was based on end land use and vegetation cover
- Assessing the potential negative effects of the overall disturbance to complete a site to meet criteria

*10B: What are the main reasons they said no to certification?*

#### General

- There is an on-going trend that shows that reclamation practices are not improving.
- Not relevant for upland sites. He doesn't typically make an application if he doesn't believe that it meets equivalent land capability.
- Insufficient information
- Criteria is not met on the site, therefore need to reclaim to standard

## Examples

- For the one peatland site where he suggested a mineral pad be left in place, the application was rejected because AEP did not feel the argument was strong enough from an environmental perspective.
- Never happened for upland except the one situation noted above where additional seeding was requested and warranted.
- The main reason a certification was denied on a transitional site was due to insufficient cover over an onsite sump area. The topography was slightly settled in this particular area and although it was not impacting the regional drainage/onsite drainage significantly, there was a concern that there may be capillary movement of COC's from the sump area without sufficient clean cap of material.
- Waiting for approval, but had the discussions with the regulator. Improvements in place rather than a land use change (access roads, etc.).
- For a large portion of the sites, the pad was removed via landscape borrow on access roads. As the sites are gas there isn't padded material on wellsite. Has seen some instances where they had to leave pad on-site left in place because of the pipeline.

## Process

- No pre-approved plan in place (written communication)

## Rationale / Supporting Information

- Cost justifications – it costs too much (uneconomical), borrow pit is too far away etc. without any other justification/rationale.
- Project level reclamation plans
  - (90,000 ha; 9 townships – approved footprint is only a small percentage (3%) (16,000 ha). – won't change the regional land use.
- If there is some "grey" when there could be a land use change (e.g., edge of a wellsite is within a peatland).

## Site Conditions / Land Use

- Off-site impacts – erosion, slumping, disruption in hydrology, within a caribou zone
- Borrow pit has open water and is not accepted

## Landscape

- There is a significant landscape issue that could be hazardous to land users or cause future problems on-site or off-site.

## Soils

- Large amounts of stockpiled soil on site
- No topsoil

## Vegetation

- Vegetation not desirable – maybe the woody stem requirements are met, but the species diversity isn't there, no structural layers to site etc.
- Depends on the DSA and if the species composition and densities are appropriate. Easier to apply rather than not and try to establish a good justification.

## Hydrology

- For peatland sites the main reason was a 'damning' effect to hydrology of a peatland
- Evidence of impacts to hydrology or ecological dysfunction
- Site impeded overall area drainage

## Summary

- Concerns were expressed that there is a default "No" mentality emerging. Discussions regarding leaving pads in place were more difficult.
- Some examples of refusals due to misses of specific were provided.
- Refusal appears to occur less frequently on upland sites than pad in place sites.

### ***The following questions apply to regulator/government representatives:***

11: *What are the main topics/issues/questions addressed in your discussions with practitioners and/or industry regarding reclamation and certification of:*

11A: *An upland wellsite with vegetation encroachment*

## General

- AEP only on the change in land use topic.
- Lessee wants this – "Please approve" – Not their role. They are not the landowner and that is not a good enough justification.
- Industry seems to want a black and white standard.
- 3<sup>rd</sup> party use
- Seasonal consideration
- Not sure how the construction would have occurred due to a transfer of the site from a historical perspective.
- What are the conditions of the site (is it in an area that is typically difficult to get things to grow within)

- Should each site be looked at as site specific?

#### Policy

- Industry/practitioner – what length of time that AEP is comfortable with before applying for a recert.
- Forested sites and caribou range – practitioners want to know what is enough, in terms of time, to ensure that AEP is confident that the forest is appropriately functional.
- Caribou range changes what would be accepted.

#### Criteria

- Looking for a minimum such as with the forested land criteria and that is generally the starting point. If the standard for the criteria can't be met then a dialogue needs to be initiated with local AEP staff.
- Aerial assessments (working on updating criteria to allow for more aerial assessments)

#### Information Needs

- Information requests from AEP to industry. Not enough information was provided thus AEP is forced to request more information.

#### Rationale

- If it would meet the criteria, then it would be approved.
- Ecological focus or cost savings.
- “What is the benefit”
  - Example, grazing lease increasing carrying capacity (water hole)
- Leaving pads in place on older sites that are fully vegetated.

#### Impacts of Removal / Impacts of Leaving in Place / Environmental Net Benefit

- “Doing more harm in going in there and removing” than if the site is left in place.
- Cost

#### Landscape

- Contour issues not meeting “criteria”; not overly concerned with 60/90 cm differences. Only paying attention to 3 m cuts.
- Erosion

## Soils

- Topsoil replacement depths with respect to 80% requirement
- Topsoil replacement; removing existing vegetation, regardless of the quality/composition of the vegetation if topsoil is available for replacement.
- Soil depths (only in certain areas)
- Not sure where the surface soil was stored.
- Short surface soil for portions of the lease

## Vegetation

- Weeds, agronomic species
- Vegetation (presence of weeds)
- Weeds
- How important is it weed control if native vegetation is encroaching?
- Offsite land use affecting onsite vegetation.
- “Trees are good, it’s going to do more damage to go in and complete reclamation activities than to leave it as is”.
  - This is not a strong enough argument. If the trees meet criteria, that is one thing. If they don’t, but there is growth on the site that is a different thing.
- Growth is “OK” and compatible in terms of composition but not necessarily comparable to offsite.
- Jackpine ecosites (a ecosite non-productive due to lack of herbaceous cover)

### *11B: A mineral soil pad within a peatland*

## General

- Industry seems to want a black and white standard.
- They don’t want to disturb anything that has been established.
- What is the offsite peatlands type – may be different but still meet criteria.
- How many assessment points are needed on access roads and wellsites that are transitional Forested and Peatlands sites?
- Example – Grazing disposition and a client came and was only talking about a borrow pit. No consideration was being given to the wellsite.
- Functionality of the wetland, and how it is being affected by the asset (well pad or access road). Need to have a good understanding of the implications for the decision, and that needs to be provided to enable a decision.
- Looking for a minimum such as with the forested land criteria and that is generally the starting point. If the standard for the criteria can’t be met then a dialogue needs to be initiated with local AEP staff.

## Policy / Regulatory

- Regulatory uncertainty on end land use, AEP and AER jurisdictions etc.

- Obtaining approval to leave pad in place from AEP.
- The WHY [a change in end land use is appropriate] needs to be addressed with better justification.
- We are looking at a 200 year horizon, thus if disturbing 5-10 years of growth is a minor setback in time, then that is appropriate. Re-contouring, soil, etc. are more important than a few years of vegetation growth.
- Industry/practitioner – what length of time that AEP is comfortable with before industry should be applying for a rec cert.

#### Environmental Net Benefit / Reclamation Options

- “Doing more harm in going in there and removing” than if the site is left in place.
- “What is the benefit”
- Cost
- Costs, feasibility, logistics and outcomes (does pad removal result in a better outcome and more desirable site type?) – this seems to be highly variable and dependent on so many factors
- Ecological focus or cost savings.
- Progressive reclamation of borrow pits – reclaimed to open water, nowhere to place fill at end of life from the pads
- They don’t want to put the borrow material back; they are focused on the borrow pit itself rather than the pad.
- Seasonal consideration (multiple water course crossings, timings, etc.) – may influence what would be required on a site
- Ability to re-contour site into the surrounding land, or is it just a big pad in the middle of a fen?

#### Landscape

- Geotextile removal and the problems it presents – not easy to remove or pick out
- Geotextiles settle below underlying water table and roots are not significantly restricted, but rather limited by the water table
- Shear strength of peat – claims that the stability is lost when top 40 cm of peat is salvaged

#### Soils

- Topsoil replacement depths, conversion to upland requirements, topsoil deficiencies for the project and lack of topsoil, less than 80% topsoil replacement depths
- What is the chemistry of the soil? (brittle sand stone – no structure to promote root growth, difficult to de-compact, sterile soil) – makes for great pads but do not grow anything; sulphate soils
  - Demonstrating poor vegetation growth

#### Vegetation

- Weeds and agronomic species

## Hydrology

- Hydrology and issues with pads restricting water movement and subsurface flow

## Impacts

- Offsite impacts assessed by surrounding vegetation and hydrology at each specific location.
- Is the mineral soil pad affecting – vegetation and drainage- cross site flow and water movement on the lease?

## Summary

- There is a sense that industry is avoiding reclamation via the variance and change in land use requests.
- Understanding the reason for departing from the criteria and the implications of redisturbing the site to undertake reclamation.

12: *How did you come to a conclusion regarding certification/management of the sites discussed above?*

## General

- Not necessarily certification, but authorization to proceed with reclamation plans that allow pads to remain in place
- Cost/benefit analysis – intuitive, based on professional judgement or empirical knowledge
- Was there progressive reclamation of the associated borrow pit?
- Judgement call.

12A: *What are the main reasons you have said yes to certification?*

## General

- Company track record; expectation within approval/disposition were met; justification for long term plan within an area; no adverse effects demonstrated by offsite vegetation and hydrology.
- Decisions are made with the benefit to the province/public in mind, thus it comes down to what an individual feels comfortable defending in a public context.
- If enough information and justification is provided, and it is reasonable, generally agree to certification to a variance.
- Approval for pad to remain has been provided.



## Rationale / Supporting Information

- Not AEP role, however if they agreed to an change in end land use it is for the following reasons:
  - Accept the change in end land use based on the information provided fitting into (1) an integrated land management plan (for upland sites or pads within peatlands); (2) justification provided that demonstrates the implications/rational for the decision from an environmental perspective with a long term outlook; (3) mineral pads have been partially removed, decompacted and re-contoured to blend with the surrounding landscape and a minimum of 4 years of growth can be used to qualify the trajectory of the site.
- Site specific plans and detailed rationale as to which pads were remaining in place and why
- Magnitude of requirement (Example, wood pile that was a potential fire hazard) – only a consideration for older sites.
- Reclamation material balance checks out for the entire project, or proposed “alternate plan to obtain topsoil” makes sense based on information provided
- Detailed discussion on site prep techniques, mitigative measures and adaptive management, and monitoring
- Demonstration equivalent land capability is achieved using indicators from 2010 criteria or as outlines within plans and proposals
- Holistic approach to justification was provided.
- Grazing sites are pretty easy. Good justification provided, thus site meets appropriate criteria.
- Consideration for the surrounding area. Does a change in the land use meet the objective of the overall plan for the surrounding disposition.
- Strong/ reasonable justification for the change in land use is aligned with the surrounding land uses.
- Completely depends on the strength of the argument
  - Includes access and what is prohibiting them from going back in.
  - The more information that is provided the better the application submission will go. [complete information is very difficult]

## Environmental Net Benefit

- Removing the pad would cause more damage to the site if fully vegetated.
- Did consider costs from industry perspective as well as the amount of disturbance that would be required to go and reclaim a smaller disturbance.
- Spraying weeds would cause more damage to a site where vegetation is on the right trajectory – weeds decreasing and native vegetation on the correct trajectory.

## Vegetation

- Appropriate revegetation
- Vegetation establishing well as shown by the data and photos over a few years.
- The site is remote and fully vegetated.

12B: *What are the main reasons you have said no to certification?*

#### General

- No approval or variance for failures
- If it is being driven purely for financial reasons.

#### Uncertainty

- Uncertainty around outcomes – what is actually best and will result in best outcome? When in doubt, the default is always back to the approval conditions.
- Need more acceptable practice to assess sites this way

#### Justification / Rationale / Supporting Information

- AEP will not approve a change in land use if appropriate rationale is not provided. Stating: removing the pad will do more harm than good; is not strong enough justification to make the decision. The implications for the decisions are required. Cost cannot be the only factor in the rationale.
- Site wasn't a legacy site.
- Insufficient information – lack of justification (weak arguments, lack of scientific evidence or research), insufficient detail and lack of a plan, poor assessment and lack of data on the project as a whole, justification based on costs savings alone
- Didn't consider the regional perspective and/or cumulative impacts.
- No range improvements, etc.
- No justification provided that had any ecological information associated with it.
- No information.
- Not enough information was provided.
- No environmental benefit was provided.

#### Alternative Approaches Possible

- If it is clear that the site would be more productive if reclamation were completed.
- Did not believe the site met equivalent land capability due to lack of soil in areas of the lease and excess soil in others – requested the site be mulched, the soil be redistributed and the site revegetated. Seedbank was present as a result of the vegetation that was growing therefore re-establishment does not take as long as one may think and there are less concerns about the long-term capability of the site to reach a mature functioning ecosystem.
- If the borrow pit is available for the mineral material to be returned to, it is unlikely that a change in land use would be approved. The borrow pit and pad MUST be considered together. [e.g., said no to a change in land use for leaving a pad in place because the borrow pit was not considered in the application].
- Site was accessible
- The site is not remote and vegetation does not meet criteria.

## Soils

- Topsoil deficiencies or material balance deficiencies that are not sufficiently addressed with a plan (lack of detail and data, too conceptual)

## Vegetation

- Vegetation is not growing well in a large part of the site.
- Significant areas of vegetation deficiency. Bare areas. No evidence of similar examples in the area (Example, sand blow out)

## Summary

- “Yes” comes from strength of the argument and supporting information.
- “No” comes from poor rationale for departing from the normal process and criteria, lack of, or poor quality of, supporting information, and the potential for reclamation or partial reclamation to improve the site.

## *Other Comments*

### General

- Site is required to be reclaimed – and it needs to be demonstrated that it would meet reclamation criteria.
- Quote: “Just because you didn’t have to do it before doesn’t mean that it shouldn’t be done– companies need to be re-visiting what they said they would do when the disposition was granted and budget resources accordingly.”
- Regulator and government need to be willing to integrate changes.
- Every region might have completely different drivers.
  - Socio-economic concerns
  - Wildlife
  - Access
  - Etc.
- Seismic line reclamation
  - Many years of seismic lines (8 m) wide that are being used and re-used

### Policy / Regulatory

- AER needs to be able to stand behind the decision and they need to be comfortable with making the decision.
- In-situ projects – all have to do a wetland research trial (condition within the approval). All conditions are the same for all companies. It would be more strategic to create different

requirements under different approval conditions. Identify the questions that the AER has and ensure that they are being addressed strategically at different locations.

- 10 companies addressing the same question. End up repeating the same experiments and not generating a lot of new information.
- Companies are eager to do other things but their hands are tied because their approvals have very specific requirements.
- Asking them to do a trial but then asking them to ensure they are going to be successful.
- In general, the government should stop doing draft guidance documents. If a guidance document does not advance to a fully-fledged guidance document, it should not be released because it sets unrealistic expectations. Industry will begin to use the “drafts” without recognizing that the “rule of the day” is still the existing documents.
- As a government body they cannot be prescriptive about what they tell a company to do if it is not meeting criteria (because then they are responsible if it fails). Do detail why the site is not satisfactory but DO NOT tell them WHAT to do about it.
- Security in the fact that it was the “requirement of the day” – as long as it is not causing severe limitations, then requests would not be made to disturb areas that had been previously reclaimed and planted.
  - Forest cover is highly variable and dynamic and some variation is not a bad thing so as long as it is compatible it would be acceptable.
- These are legacy sites and we need to be reasonable in our expectations as the regulator.

## Process

- Main interest is to develop some guidance around certification of padded sites.
- The biggest thing we can get out of this project is a formalized process to approve land use change that AEP uses to inform the decisions they make with respect to land use change requests.
- Want a framework for land use change that is appropriate and gives the government confidence that the industry is going to reclaim the sites into functioning uplands appropriately.
- Regulatory guide/rules for which sites you can leave pads in place and which sites you can't would be helpful
  - Ex. First Nations territory but not reserves and they were told they can't leave them without an “environmental context”
- AER is trying to make things simpler, check-box approach, but it is unclear how AEP can best utilize the simple checkboxes to consider change in land use or to approve an “improvement” in place.
- Process to get to approval has changed and it is more convoluted. But, on the other side (construction) practices have generally remained the same. The equipment and practices are the same to construct a site - they build a road, build a lease, get a borrow pit, etc. Nothing has changed. Activities haven't changed therefore why are we changing the directives for how we approve reclamation.
- Is there a thought for how to understand the needs for aboriginal stakeholders??
  - And/or any other stakeholder engagement
  - Consideration for how to incorporate “integrated land management” into the decision making process.
- When asking for variance or change in land use industry NEEDS to provide good information and justification for the variance/change in land use.

## Criteria

- If you have a peatland that is not deep (less than 1.5 m of peat) – the fill can be removed easily and can likely be re-used. However the criteria is not set up to encourage it. Criteria encourages companies to convert bogs to fen and introduce different species. [particularly relevant to access roads- that don't have a significant volume of mineral material]
- Difficult to “nail the jello to the wall” (hard to develop a checklist that covers the entire province); there does need to be an element of professional judgement because there are so many regional differences.

## Regional Context

- Overall – focus has been on a site by site but need to be looking at things from a holistic perspective. Need to be considering this from a regional perspective (potentially with other operators)
  - As an industry – from a regional perspective there would be an opportunity to consider the cumulative impacts. Net environmental benefits and impact.
  - Or even within a given peatland.
- With a lot of other upland sites – it would be beneficial to consider an integrated land management approach.
  - Integrated land management – need to consider what other land uses are occurring within an area and come up with creative solutions in collaboration with AEP to meet multiple land use goals within an area (i.e., Develop an alternative land use plan with appropriate justification).
    - There is a lot of other recreational pressures on land
    - Particularly for roads – network of opportunities
    - ATV staging area for a quad trail

## Examples

- Road was impeding water flow; try for full reclamation rather than partial pad removal. Site demonstrated good success and rebounded
- Road at JACOS
  - Peat is 4-5 meters thick with approximately 5 metres of clay on top.
  - Don't want to pull all the clay out – want to lower the surface to re-establish the right about of peatland vegetation.
- Road was used as an ice-road at a later date – thus they may have influenced the success of re-establishment. [haven't re-visited the site since year 2].
- 2010/2011 initiated project; 3 experimental blocks.
  - 1) Lowered road down to water table and set up vegetation plots.
  - 2) Refilled some with peat (at different depths)
  - 3) Half road revegetated with mineral, half with peat.
  - Earthworks completed in October 2018.

- Revegetation treatments in 2019.
- Found going down to water table is a too low.
- Site they are on now is a nice pine wall where the edge drops off into a large peatland. The mineral material is being re-contoured and removed from the wetland to be incorporated into the access and site. Not that difficult to do.

## Reclamation Methods

- Partial Pad Removal – total waste of time to take out some of the mineral material and not remove it all. A bit of mineral material changes the reclamation trajectory dramatically. Ultimately, not likely going to save any money because it will be difficult to meet criteria for either upland or peatland. Highly recommends this is not a favorable direction.
- Transitional Linear features
  - AEP is willing to meet in the middle (remove some, leave some); open a dialogue and discuss the options that meet the needs of the area and the environment.
  - Upland portions should be reclaimed back to what they were (no exceptions).
  - Do a deep rip on the other areas within the wetland [expectation for vegetation – let it naturally evolve with both upland and wetland species]. Do not restrict the peatland to function under the road itself and not prevent any vegetation growth. No planting required.
  - Pull areas of road to restrict access to recreational use.
- Significant benefit to progressive reclamation to reforest areas that interim reclamation can completed on

## Soils

- Quote: “If it grew trees once, it can grow trees again, but the dirt will never move itself back”
- How to create an appropriate growing medium?
  - Compost piles (with drilling wastes) – as long as the contaminant criteria are met then re-use the materials.
  - Amendments are an appropriate option for establishing a growing medium for pads left in place.
- Decompaction is a key thing that needs to be addressed.
  - Sites have been left in place and re-vegetated.
  - Significant limitation to achieving ELC
  - Corduroy/filter cloth that will limit root development in the future (long term impacts for achieving ELC)

## Vegetation

- When they were in government as Forest Officer they were responsible for reclamation in Red Earth and they had a lot of applications where sites was growing trees and the applicant claimed that they thought it was growing well but the species were either irrelevant (completely different than surrounding area) or it was scrub brush. This was not an acceptable argument then, and it

shouldn't be now. For a vegetation override to be applicable, the vegetation should meet the forested criteria.

- If the site already has some vegetation established then the weed management is easier to manage from a weed perspective. Requires a very targeted approach.
  - Perennial Sow thistle
  - Scentless Chamomile
  - Buttercup
  - Canada thistle
- Multiple years of weed management if the site is a full disturbance site. Reclamation disturbance. (i.e., need to consider the implications of the disturbance to conduct reclamation (particularly full reclamation) activities.

---

## APPENDIX B: SUMMARY OF CASE STUDIES

---

### *B1: Complete Pad Removal Case Studies*

#### Case Study 1: Complete Removal of Pad and Peat Inversion (IPAD) in a Bog

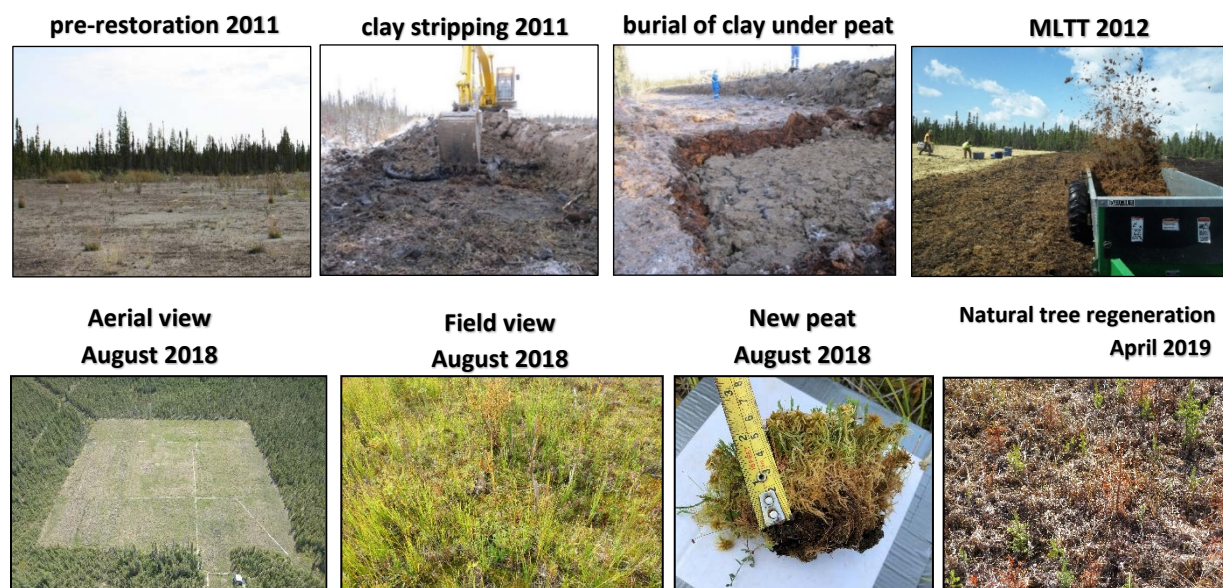
The IPAD (acronym referring to well Pad Inversion) is located within a treed bog/poor fen complex about 50 km northeast of the town of Peace River (56.397°N, 116.890° W), Alberta. This area is characterized by typical continental climate, with a mean temperature of 13.8 °C and mean precipitation of 214.4 mm during growing season (June – September) between 1981 to 2010 (Government of Canada, 2019). The peatlands surrounding the well pad are dominated by *Picea mariana*, *Salix* spp., *Rhododendron groenlandicum*, *Vaccinium vitis-idaea*, *Carex* spp. (sedges), *Sphagnum* spp. (peat mosses) and fen mosses including *Aulacomnium palustre* and *Tomenthypnum nitens*.

The 1.4 hectare well pad (120 m x 120 m) was constructed in December 2006 by laying down the woody vegetation, covering the area with a semi-permeable geotextile liner and introducing a 1.4 m thick clay overburden excavated from a nearby upland site (Figure 9). The site was then drilled but not actually operated (i.e., no oil was produced). Prior to reclamation in 2011, the mineral pad was mostly barren with scattered upland forest species and weeds (Figure 9).

The well pad was reclaimed using an inversion technique in which the underlying peat substrate was inverted either with or without the burial of some of the mineral soil fill depending on the amount of compression of the peat profile compare to the surface level of the surrounding natural peatland (Bird et al., 2017b). An excavator was used to remove the layer of mineral fill that were higher than the level of hollows (low-points) of the surrounding natural peatland. The removed soil was returned to a nearby borrow pit used in the original well pad construction. In areas where peat under the pad was deep (>1 m), the remaining clay fill and geotextile was completely removed and the buried peat (up to 1 m deep) fluffed with an excavator bucket (Figure 9). For simplicity, this treatment is referred to as “Peat Inversion (PI)”. In areas where very shallow peat was present (less than 1 m), the remaining mineral soil fill thickness (and associated geotextile liner) was buried under excavated peat, resulting in an inverted soil profile compared to the original pad. This treatment is referred to as “Clay Inversion (CI)”. The result after site adjustment was the creation of a uniform, flat peat surface with an elevation ~10 cm below the adjacent natural peatland hollows at the four corners of the pad.



Revegetation started in June 2012. As per the Moss Layer Transfer Technique (MLTT) developed for harvested peat fields, moss fragments, along with roots, rhizomes, seeds, and spores were collected from three distinctive communities (*Sphagnum* dominated, brown moss dominated, and *Polytrichum* dominated) from the surrounding cutlines. At each donor site, the top 10 cm of the living moss was harvested with a rototiller and spread across the restored site, following the standard MLTT protocol. The entire site was then fertilized with rock phosphate (0-13-0, 150 kg/ha) to promote the growth of the *Polytrichum strictum*. Refer to (Sobze et al., 2012) for detailed description on the moss collection and transfer procedures.



**Figure 9. The IPAD site during site work and MLTT and field performance as of 2018 and 2019.**

#### Learnings:

- The pad is doing very well with high peatland plant cover including a healthy moss as thick as 10 cm in some areas.
- Mosses account for almost half (50%) of all vegetation. *Sphagnum* moss start to develop in the drier areas while true mosses dominate the low lying areas.
- Cattail was no longer abundant and dominant in wet areas, and overall there was very little weed present.
- There is a good amount of litter accumulating across the site.
- There was not obvious distinction among different treatment areas.
- The site is stable without signs of erosion, gulying or presence of industrial debris.
- The site is well on its way towards a functional peatland. It has passed two separate assessments using the provincial peatland criteria, in 2015 and 2018.

## Case Study 2: Complete Pad Removal and Peat Inversion (8-22) in a Fen

Pad 8-22 was a full pad replicate utilizing the learnings from the first IPAD trial. Civil earthwork started in January 2015, but due to inclement weather conditions was deferred to November 2015. The entire pad was removed and the clay returned to reclaim the original borrow pit. The buried peat was fluffed to raise the surface elevation, then smoothed to remove air pockets and create a uniform surface. Donor moss was immediately transferred from a nearby cutline, and roughly 1,200 black spruce seedlings were planted in June 2016.

NAIT CBR team visited the site in 2018 and found that the moisture condition has greatly improved (Figure 10) since 2016. Graminoid and brown moss species have established across the site and there is less standing water than in previous years. Compared to the IPAD, the surrounding areas are treed fen and the reclaimed area is overall wetter. Local hydrology and peat chemistry likely contributed to the development of fen and marsh like communities. There is less *Sphagnum* development as a result. However, the entire site is dominated by wetland and peat-forming species.



**Figure 10. Pad-22 during a visit in July 2018.**

Top: overview of the reclaimed pad. Lower Left: pool of moss developing in an open area of the pad. Lower Right: Close up view of a densely vegetated area of the pad.

#### Learnings:

- Complete pad removal in a fen led to more flooding in early years
- Donors from bog had little influence on vegetation, there is very low establishment of Sphagnum mosses across the site.
- Instead, hydrology and soil chemistry played critical roles in vegetation development
- Vegetation is marsh like but ground layer is dominated by true mosses
- There is a visible decline in cattail dominance in many areas

#### Case Study 3: Burial of Wood Chips under Peat – the Wood Chip Road in a Fen.

A 400 m long temporary access road was built through a wet, circumneutral fen (Figure 11). An average of 1 m wood chips was placed directly on top of fen peat with a separating geotextile layer. Although abundant seed sources were present adjacent to the road, the wood chip surface prevented successful re-establishment of any vegetation. Civil earthwork was carried out in February 2015 to invert the wood chip layer with the buried peat beneath to create a moist surface for fen vegetation establishment (Figure 11, top right). This negated the transportation costs associated with removing the chips off site. Adapting the peat inversion technique developed at our first IPAD trial, the chips were first removed to the side, the buried peat then excavated to another pile, and the chips replaced in the bottom of the hole followed by placing the excavated peat on top (Bird et al., 2017a).



**Figure 11. Burial of Wood Chips under Peat.**

Top left: the woodchip road before reclamation in 2014. Top right: field operation and burial of woodchips under excavated peat. Bottom left: The road in summer 2015. Bottom right: the road in August 2018

The peat surface was smoothed to remove air pockets and to create a uniform surface, then left to settle over the next 6 months. Below average precipitation in early summer of 2015 resulted in less than expected peat settling and dry surface conditions. In August 2015 a dozer was brought in to track pack the surface, lowering it by another 15-20 cm (Figure 11, bottom left). Because the road was only 6 m wide and abundant wetland propagule sources were present on either side of the road, the reclaimed road was

left to naturally regenerate, except for the planting of 750 black spruce (contractor) and 750 larch (NAIT) in June 2016.

### *B2: Partial Pad Removal Case Studies*

#### Case Study 4: Partial Pad Removal – SKEG sites (Vitt et al., 2011a)

SKEG Pads 12 and 16 were the first trials to initiate fen vegetation on rewetted mineral substrate (mineral initiation or paludification) of in-situ well pads. Both pads were built in the early 2000s in a treed poor fen near the central processing facility of CNRL (formerly Shell). On each pad, 25 m by 120 m of the pad bordering nearby peatlands was reclaimed by removing most of the overburden clay in 2007. Trenches were created to connect the pads with the surrounding peatlands and to promote seasonal inundation of the mineral surface (Figure 12a and Figure 12b). The lowered soil surface was either fluffed or left alone, then amended with various materials including woodchips and farm peat, followed by planting of various wetland species including willow cuttings, sedge transplants, and stock larch trees (Figure 12c). The lower section of each site is dominated by sedges, both planted and natural ingression, and willows, resembling an early successional fen community growing on wet mineral substrate. Higher sections of both sites suffer from presence of weeds and upland species. Stockpiled farmer's peat contributed to weed infestation in these areas.

NAIT CBR finished a criteria assessment of both pad 12 and 16 in 2017. They concluded that both areas suffered from high undesirable species cover and therefore failed to meet the peatland criteria as of 2017. Parts of both pads were too high and dry during the growing season, leaving room for non-wetland species to establish (Figure 12d). In the lower, wetter sections, water table is closer to surface facilitating growth and dominance of sedges and willows. True moss is starting to grow but its cover is still very low.



**Figure 12. SKEG pad 12.**

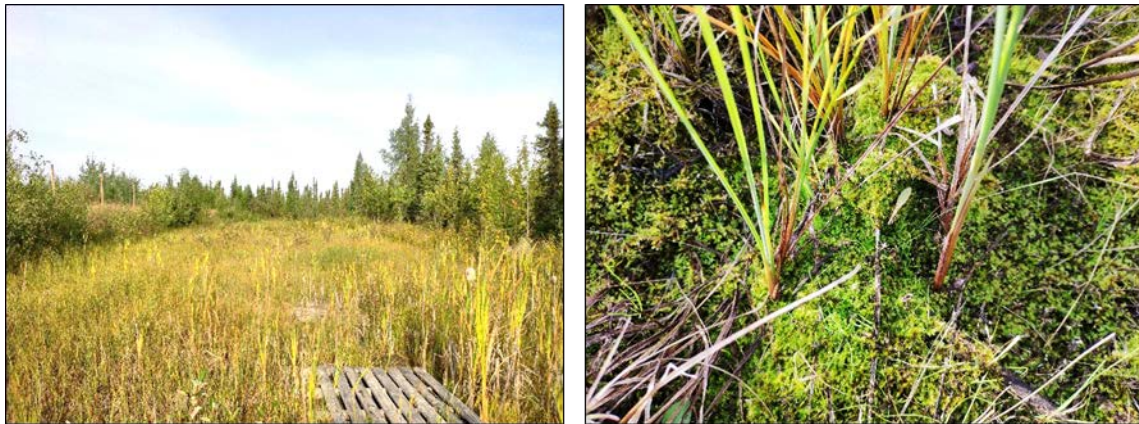
a: trenching after partial pad removal in 2007. b: experimental blocks (2 m x 2 m) with different soil amendment treatments. c: planted sedge seedlings in 2008. d: overview as of July 2018.

#### Case Study 5: Partial Pad Removal + MLTT – ASPEN PAD (Gauthier et al., 2018)

About 2 km away from the SKEG sites, a section of a well pad (10 m x 100 m) was reclaimed by mechanically shaving and reprofiling clay loam to the average elevation of the surrounding peatland water table (close to peat surface) in 2009. On average a layer of 20-25 cm of clay was left in place on top of the buried peat, due to subsidence created by the weight of the pad. The excavated fill was piled next to the lowered section. Donor plant material was collected from nearby treed and shrubby fens and spread across rewetted mineral fill by hand following MLTT (Gauthier et al., 2018).

True mosses such as *Tomenthypnum nitens* and *Aulacomnium palustre*, both typical of fens established quickly, covering up to 58% of ground cover after only one growing season. The origin of the plant community, rather than the substrate type, was the determining factor for vegetation growth. Sphagnum mosses were abundant in the donor communities but did not establish successfully on the reclaimed mineral pad. Vascular plant establishment was slow and highly variable.

Based on field observation in 2018, different soil adjustment and vegetation treatment is no longer discernable from each other (Figure 13). Cattail is not a dominant species on site. Shrub cover has increased significantly while ground layer cover by true moss is approaching 100% in some areas.



**Figure 13. Partial Pad Removal + MLTT.**

Left: Partial removal pad 9 years after reclamation. Note the elevated berm on the left side where excavated mineral fill was piled. Right: Close up of the ground layer bryophytes (true mosses) typical of fen communities.

#### Learnings:

- Partial pad removal followed by MLTT is very successful to promote moss dominated ground layer vegetation development.
- Source of donor plant material is more important than the substrate treatment alone.

- True mosses from fens establish well on wet mineral substrate while Sphagnum mosses, typical of bogs and poor fens, do not grow well, at least in early stages.
- Woody species establishment will be slow and highly variable. Fen shrubs are most successful colonizers.

#### Case Study 6: Partial Removal, Planting, and Natural Regeneration – Airstrip

A mineral linear feature (airstrip) was built in the 1960s through the edge of a peatland complex with the complete peat profile removed down to the mineral subsoil. The reclaimed area is roughly 4 hectares. No buried peat or nearby donor peat material could be found so the area was reclaimed as a mineral wetland with a variety of stock seedlings planted in 2015.

Civil earthwork was completed in June 2014 after the partial removal of mineral fill and trenching, followed by revegetation in June of 2015. The adjacent natural area consists of a sedge fen, a treed bog and an open area near the original drainage feature across the road. A vegetated berm separating the airstrip from the natural areas was rolled over onto the reclaimed area to introduce vegetative diaspores. Three planting treatments plus a control were installed in each area in summer 2015. Fixed densities of willow seedlings + sedges, sedges only, and willow cuttings + sedges were planted while non-planted treatments served as control. Low densities of larch and birch were also deployed on suitable microsites. After four growing seasons, the site hydrology has stabilized, and the wetland is dominated by obligate wetland species (up to 45% percent cover) with a community similar to marshes (sedge and graminoid dominance) typical of the region. True mosses now account for up to 15% of the total cover in many parts of the site (Figure 14). They were not introduced in the initial revegetation but have come on site through water flow or wind. Bayley and Mewhort (2004) had shown that the distinction between marshes and fens is driven by surface water level and the presence/absence of true mosses despite otherwise similar vegetation assemblages. The reclaimed airstrip wetland is a combination of marsh and emerging fen communities. Over time, the system may evolve more towards fens as the ground layer of mosses further develop and acidify the substrate.



**Figure 14. Partial Removal, Planting, and Natural Regeneration**

Left: overview of the intermediate area in 2018. Right: close up of the ground in the dry area showing moss growth in-between sedges.

Leanings:

- By 2018, the reclaimed wetland areas are dominated by obligate wetland species with total cover ranging between 35% and 45%.
- Moisture conditions have greatly improved, and the site has remained wet to inundated through the entire summer.
- The dry area has switched from an area dominated with upland and ruderal species to a diverse wetland, with mosses accounting for up to 15% of the total vegetation.
- All wetland areas are dominated by graminoids, mainly sedge species. Planted individuals are no longer distinguishable and most of the plants on site developed through natural ingress and lateral expansion.
- Ground layer true mosses are developing in many areas. The impact of their growth on soil chemistry and hydrology will be monitored closely in the next few years.

Case Study 7: Partial Pad Removal and Natural Regeneration – Cold Lake

Imperial’s Cold Lake Operations commenced a wetland reclamation trial in 2008 at Mahihkan H-38 pad. The pad was constructed in 2002 with 38,800 m<sup>3</sup> of borrow fill material on a treed rich fen that had an average depth of 148 cm of organic material (peat). This wetland reclamation trial included partial and complete pad removal. The trial reclamation was conducted in the north-east corner with full or partial pad removal followed by spontaneous colonization by plants (i.e., no active revegetation strategy). In spring 2008, the first section was reclaimed by completely excavating the mineral soil fill and geotextile liner. Due to peat compression that occurred during well-site construction and use, up to 4 m of fill was excavated, resulting in deep inundation. Based on these results, the next section was reclaimed by scraping the surface mineral fill down to the level of the adjacent peatland in fall 2009 with the goal to



limit flooding (Figure 15). Some areas of the pad remain unreclaimed with all mineral soil fill intact and act as a negative control. The reclaimed areas were left to naturally re-vegetate.



**Figure 15. Partial Pad Removal and Natural Regeneration – Cold Lake.**

Left: Partial removal section of H38. Right: Peat formation from true mosses and sedges above mineral substrate.

#### Learnings:

- Partial pad removal leaving remnant fill in place does not hinder peatland vegetation, particularly moss, development if the surface is suitably saturated. Pad H38 borders a wet fen to the north. Water flows freely around the reclaimed areas, bringing propagules for natural revegetation.
- Open water areas are too deep for most wetland species to establish, although floating moss mats start to occur along the edges in some areas. Deep open water should be avoided as much as possible.
- Achieving proper surface elevation and restoring hydrological connectivity is critical in order to reclaim mineral material well pads like H38.
- Almost all treatments measured on the reclaimed well pad had net CO<sub>2</sub> exchange under full light conditions that were similar to the adjacent undisturbed fen.
- Remnant fill left during well pad reclamation to peatland does not appear to result in large mineral N pools or elevated N<sub>2</sub>O emissions. This indicates that partial pad removal is likely a viable reclamation option considering biogeochemical function.

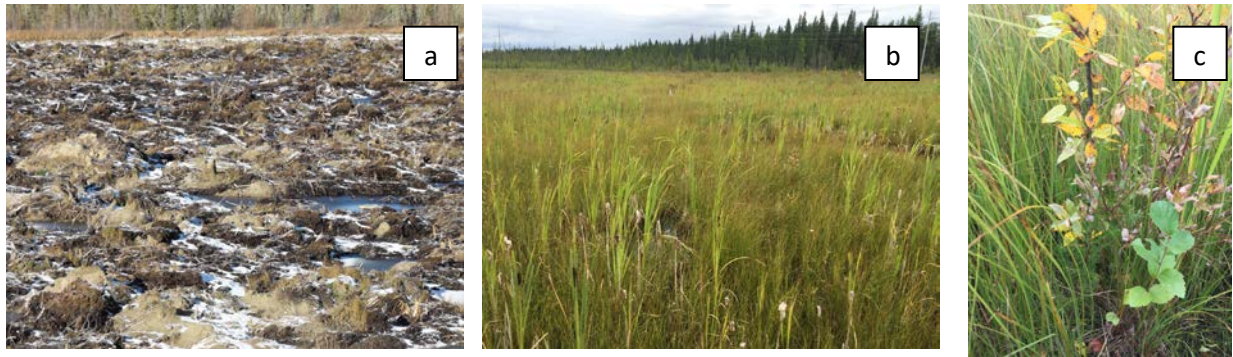
#### Case Study 8: Partial Pad Removal, Site Adjustment, Donor Transfer and Planting (CNRL PAD Terry Osko)

A pad (140 m x 130 m) built in a treed poor fen was reclaimed in 2011. Instead of synthetic geotextile, mineral fill was placed over corduroy constructed from on-site woody debris over peat surface. Most of the clay-loam fill was removed in November 2010 and returned to the original borrow 100 m west of the pad. The remaining fill (~10 cm thick) was mounded using two track-hoes to bring buried peat to surface and incorporate the remaining fill underneath, resulting in a rough (up to 1 m relief) mounded surface of exposed peat and thin fill veneer across the site (Figure 16a).

Sub-sections of the site was later compacted to create smooth macroplots (<15 cm relief) in 2012. Both rough and smooth macroplots were divided into sub-plots to receive live fen moss transfer or left for natural recovery. These sub-plots were further divided to compare natural recovery (with or without moss transfer) to recovery through live transplants of black spruce, Labrador tea, and sedges from adjacent fens.

Site assessments were conducted in 2013 and 2017. Initial survival of woody species (black spruce, Labrador tea) were high (40-79%) but declined in 2013. Smooth plots saw further decline in survival rates, particularly Labrador tea, by 2017. The entire site is dominated by herbaceous species such as *Carex* spp. and cattail although trees and woody vegetation are slowly colonizing the site (Figure 16b). Woody species cover remained low as most of the site remains wet to flooded due to the close proximity to a highway and overall poor drainage.

Shunina et al. (2016) studied early development of vegetation in 2012 and 2013, one and two growing seasons after reclamation. Rough areas had higher species richness through natural recovery of trees, shrubs, and perennial herbs. Survival of transplanted woody species were also greater at the top and mid positions. Acrotelm application had no impact on overall vegetation growth during the first two seasons. By 2017, there was no difference in species richness and diversity among different surface roughness or moss application. Natural regeneration of larch, willow, birch was common across the site regardless of surface treatment or moss application (Figure 16c). However, bryophyte species richness was higher in plots received moss application. Moss application also led to differences in species composition in 2017. Typical fen mosses such as common hook moss (*Drepanocladus aduncus*), rusty hook moss (*Drepanocladus revolvens*), small red peat moss (*Sphagnum capillifolium*), and wooly feather moss (*Tomenthypnum nitens*) were commonly associated with plots that received moss application (Osko, 2018).



**Figure 16. Partial pad removal, site adjustment, donor transfer and planting.**  
 a: the well pad after partial removal of mineral fill and mounding in 2011. b: site overview in August 2017. c: natural ingress of poplar, birch, willow and larch in 2017.

#### Case Study 9: Partial Mineral Fill Removal – JACOS Road

The JACOS road is an access road built with mineral borrow and geotextile in a treed bog/poor fen. The JACOS Road Reclamation Study includes two phases. The initial trials (first phase) were carried out in three blocks in 2010 by removing 80 cm of the mineral fill from each block (Figure 17 left). This was followed by the establishment of study plots where a number of revegetation treatments were applied. Vegetation recovery was assessed in 2012 and 2013. In addition, off-site hydrology, vegetation, GHG dynamics, and nutrient dynamics were studied from 2010 through 2014. Two of the blocks experienced prolonged flooding, leading to cattail prevalence and large areas of standing water. The third block was least flooded and had the best natural revegetation by 2014.

The second phase of the study is to reclaim the rest of the road (~200 m) including the two flooded blocks. In 2018, JACOS worked with University of Laval and NAIT to test two different approaches of mineral removal and transfer of moss donors onto rewetted peat or mineral substrates. Drainage devices made of wood corduroy and hay bales were installed to ensure subsurface flow. In the peat substrate study, 50-100cm of mineral fill was removed and filled with salvaged peat back to the surrounding peatland elevation. *Sphagnum* dominated moss donor material was collected and spread on the peat surface as per MLTT, followed by mulch covering and fertilization with rock phosphate. In the mineral substrate study, mineral fill was partially removed, and the surface lowered to the surrounding peatland elevation. Half of the mineral surface was scarified to create roughness (~0.5 m relief) using a track hoe while the other half remained relatively flat (Figure 17 centre). Fen donor material was applied as per MLTT on the rough and smooth mineral surfaces, followed by mulch covering and no fertilization (Figure 17 right). Hydrologic responses to the reclamation treatments, and the effectiveness of drainage structures to facilitate water flow across the road will be evaluated. Peat-forming vegetation development in response

to MLTT on peat vs. mineral substrates will be monitored and assessed to inform reclamation practices for future trials on mineral in-situ footprint reclamation in peatlands. The second phase is ongoing as of April 2019.



**Figure 17. Partial Mineral Fill Removal – JACOS Road**

Left: three reclaimed basins in 2017. Two of the sections were reclaimed in 2018. Centre: partial removal of mineral fill, followed by surface treatment in 2018. Right: transferred donor covered with straw mulch to preserve surface moisture in 2019.

**Learnings:**

- Site progress is very good considering the minimal site preparation and revegetation efforts.
- Surface conditions are promising for further peatland vegetation development.
- The road surface is level with surrounding areas.
- Significant increases in overall vegetation cover since 2017, driven by exponential growth of sedges and the establishment of mosses.
- Woody species remain low in abundance and cover in the permanent plots.
- Planted tree seedlings are visually healthy.

---

## APPENDIX C: ECOLOGICAL FUNCTIONALITY OF UPLAND FORESTS

---

### *C1: Evaluating Functional Forest Ecosystems*

In addition to the discussion of evaluating ecosystem function presented in Section 3.1, a few other papers and reports discussed alternative methods that are summarized here.

Other work on monitoring previously certified forested wellsites in Alberta suggests that the key metrics of ecosystem development on reclaimed wellsites are those influenced by construction and reclamation and are thus indicators of ecological recovery (Lupardus et al., 2018). Factors identified in the study were soil bulk density, pH, introduced species richness, grass cover, live tree basal area, noxious weed presence, canopy cover, downed wood cover and LFH depths (Lupardus et al., 2018). Some of these parameters may not be ideal indicators. For example, introduced species richness may not be relevant as the impact of introduced species may depend on the specific species in question. Also, bulk density may not be a suitable indicator due to difficulties in sampling representative horizons and confounding effects of soil replacement. Reclaimed topsoils may be the mixture of the LFH and underlying Ae horizon, while in undisturbed soils the LFH and Ae horizons remain distinctly intact.

Oil sands reclamation research has also identified criteria and indicators that can be used to measure ecosystem sustainability, in this case specifically in reconstructed oil sands soils. Soil characteristics proposed included nutrient supply (soil solution supply, net/gross/potential mineralization rates), organic matter quality (carbon pools and forms, carbon structural composition and molecular biomarkers) and microbial communities (microbial biomass and activity and structural, molecular and functional diversity) (reviewed in Macdonald et al. (2012)). The use of simple microbial functional profiles (community level physiological profiling (CLPP)) has recently been found to be useful for assessing the effects of stockpiling on soil quality, and provides results that are comparable to other more sophisticated methods (Gupta et al., 2019).

### *C2: Forest Ecosystem Recovery after Industrial Disturbance*

Forest ecosystem recovery after disturbance and reclamation depends on the re-creation of the necessary abiotic and biotic components as well as the structure, composition and function of the boreal forest (Audet et al., 2015; Lupardus et al., 2018; Polster, 2011). Reclamation success is not achieved by a re-establishing vegetation, but by establishing the entire self-sustaining ecosystem (Bradshaw, 1984; Ruiz-Jaén and Aide, 2005).

The factors that drive regeneration after natural disturbances (e.g., fire) in boreal forests, listed below, are the same factors that drive recovery from industrial disturbances (Bergeron et al., 2014; Macdonald et al., 2012):

- Availability of reproductive propagules (regional species pool)
- Microenvironment (site and environmental conditions)
- Regeneration microsites
- Species traits

These factors are in turn determined by site level factors (landscape composition, soil conditions, climate, and pre-disturbance stand composition) and disturbance characteristics (severity, frequency and size), all with the underlying impact of stochasticity (random chance; typically includes uncontrollable elements such as dispersal events, seed rain and weather patterns) (Bergeron et al., 2014; Macdonald et al., 2012). After regeneration, longer term vegetation trajectories are determined by competitive and facilitative interactions between species. The main difference between recovery from fire and from industrial disturbance are the conditions created by the disturbance and how that impacts the four factors listed above.

The first factor that determines forest regeneration is the availability and composition of propagules. Wellsite construction removes the pre-disturbance vegetation on the site, limiting the sources of plant material for revegetation to the following three pools: viable seeds in the seed bank of the on site topsoil, re-sprouting vegetative plant parts in the on site topsoil (propagule bank) and seed dispersed into the revegetating area from surrounding undisturbed areas (reviewed in Macdonald et al. (2012) and Skringo (2005)). The availability and composition of propagules for regeneration is impacted by the following factors (Bergeron et al., 2014; Macdonald et al., 2012):

- Vegetation composition on site prior to disturbance and in surrounding areas
- Pre-disturbance propagule bank composition and density
- Distance to undisturbed forest
- Nature and severity of the disturbance:
  - Construction practices (soils disturbed or undisturbed)
  - Topsoil salvage depth
  - Topsoil placement depth
  - Length of stockpiling

The second factor in forested regeneration is the microenvironmental conditions present on the site after the disturbance. Ultimately the post-disturbance microenvironment determines the levels of the five

limiting factors for plant growth (light, temperature, nutrients, moisture/aeration and competition). Sites with low levels of resources for plant growth (e.g., low moisture, low nutrients) have lower productivity and thus more growing space which results in reduced levels of competition (Alberta Environment, 2010). In contrast, when there are no limitations for plant growth, plant establishment and productivity is much greater, growing space and access to light is reduced and there are higher levels of competition (assuming that the necessary propagules adapted to those conditions are available in sufficient abundance). At reclamation initiation, the lack of vegetation on the site results in increased light and temperature on the site through the removal of shade, which can also result in reduced humidity and moisture at the soil surface (Roberts, 2004). At increased light levels, shade intolerant species are favoured over shade tolerant ones. Warmer soil temperatures have positive impacts on seed germination (Gärtner et al., 2011) and aspen sucker expansion (Landhäusser et al., 2006), and can stimulate aspen and white spruce seedling root growth, and aspen leaf and shoot growth (at temperatures greater than 5 °C (Landhäusser et al., 2001)). Warmer temperatures can also have impacts on microbial activity, and thus on decomposition and nutrient cycling. Specific microenvironmental conditions that occur on a site are impacted by the following (Bergeron et al., 2014; Macdonald et al., 2012):

- Pre-disturbance site and soil conditions
- Nature and severity of the disturbance:
  - Construction practices (soils disturbed or undisturbed)
  - Topsoil salvage depth
  - Topsoil placement depth
  - Length of stockpiling
  - Compaction

Propagule availability and microenvironmental conditions related to soil organic matter and nutrients are affected by disturbance and reclamation in similar ways. In the context of forest reclamation, topsoil is salvaged as a mixture of the litter layers and some of the underlying mineral soil. Ideally, forest topsoil is salvaged as the LFH and the Ah, Ahe and Ae horizons; however, if the A horizons are greater than 15 cm, best practice is to limit the salvage depth to 15 cm and any additional Ae material below 15 cm should be salvaged separately (Alberta Environment and Sustainable Resource Development, 2013a). Incorporation of subsoil material from the B horizon with the LFH and A horizons (admixing) during soil salvage prior to wellsite construction is generally not encouraged as subsoil typically has a higher clay content and a firmer consistence which can be detrimental to plant establishment; however, depending on the actual soil texture of the topsoil and subsoil “improvements in texture class [...], or water holding capacity, on the

lease compared to the control would be acceptable” according to the forested land criteria (Alberta Environment and Sustainable Resource Development, 2013a). The actual depth of the litter layers and depth at which salvage occurs affects the ratio of the litter layer to mineral soil. Increased mineral content may result in dilution of the propagule bank and organic matter found in the litter layers, resulting in fewer propagules at the surface at placement as well as changes carbon, nitrogen and available nutrient concentrations, water holding capacity, pH, impacts to the microbial community composition and the reactions they mediate, and increased surface bulk density compared to natural LFH layers (Beasse, 2012; Frerichs, 2017; Hahn, 2012; Jones et al., 2018; Mackenzie, 2013; Mackenzie and Naeth, 2010; McMillan et al., 2007; Naeth et al., 2013). Deeper salvage depths (e.g., greater than 20 or 30 cm), through their increased mineral content, may provide greater soil contact for root fragments (Wachowski, 2012). Effects of differences in salvage depths on vegetation response may become more pronounced with deeper salvage depths (40 cm) (Fair, 2011; Naeth et al., 2013) and are influenced by the ecosite and soil conditions of the site (Alberta Environment, 2010; Alberta Environment and Water, 2012; Archibald, 2014; Naeth et al., 2013).

Stockpiling (particularly longer term stockpiling, greater than 8 months) has additional impacts on soil properties and propagules banks. Seed and propagule viability can decline substantially due to anaerobic conditions (Dickie et al., 1988; Mackenzie, 2013), high temperature and moisture (Rokich et al., 2000), in situ germination (Mackenzie, 2013; Rivera et al., 2012) and decay or rotting (Mackenzie, 2013). The effects of stockpiling on propagule viability may vary with the size of the pile (Mackenzie, 2013). Stockpiling for 8 months can result in changes in available nutrients; magnitude of changes varies with porosity (impacted by texture), organic matter content, water content and temperature (Mackenzie, 2013). Research on impacts to organic matter and nutrient contents in long term stockpiles are inconclusive. Some studies seem to show declines in organic matter over 10 years (e.g., Ghose (2001)), while others show no negative impact of stockpiling on organic matter over 5 to 10 years (e.g., Anderson et al. (2008); Gupta et al. (2019)), but there are confounding factors. Some studies do not examine the effects on the same materials over time, rather samples were collected from materials of different ages; observed trends could be related to natural differences between these soils (e.g., if they came from different ecosites). The impacts at multiple depths within the stockpile are not well studied; studies that do examine different depths exist, but are not long term (e.g., MacKenzie (2013); Visser et al. (1984)).

Topsoil placement depth has implications for propagule burial and also determines the volume of soil organic matter and nutrients that are available for plant growth and influences the ability of soil to hold



water. In oil sands mining reclamation research, depth of topsoil placement may have a greater effect on plant community development than salvage depth, depending on the ecosite and substrate (Mackenzie and Renkema, 2013; Naeth et al., 2013). In contrast to oil sands mining reclamation, where soils from large mining areas are stockpiled together and then divided up over time among reclamation areas as they become available, for wellsite reclamation, placement depth is fixed by the amount of material that was salvaged on the site. Topsoil placement at depths greater than 5 cm likely results in burial of seeds at depths from which they cannot emerge (Grant et al., 1996), although maximum depth from which emergence can occur varies with soil texture (Benvenuti, 2003). Shallow topsoil placement depths (less than 10 cm) may also result in increased admixing of topsoil with the underlying material during soil placement (Mackenzie and Naeth, 2010).

Soil salvage, stockpiling and placement collectively cause damage to propagules through severing, wounding and fragmentation (Frerichs, 2017; Jones et al., 2018; Landhäusser et al., 2015; Osko and Glasgow, 2010; Wachowski et al., 2014). Additionally, excavation results in mixing of seeds within the seed bank – the composition, density and viability of which is naturally stratified by depth (Rydgren and Hestmark, 1997; Whittle et al., 1997) – and ultimately alters the expression of the seed bank compared to natural recovery trajectories from undisturbed seed banks.

Microenvironment is additionally impacted by soil compaction. Soil compaction occurs as a result of vehicle and heavy equipment traffic on the wellsite during operation and reclamation of the wellsite and is exacerbated when soils are wet. Compaction is especially a problem on mineral soil pads left in place because they are compacted during construction to create a flat, level surface for drilling operations. Soil compaction can damage soil structure, reduce aeration porosity, water infiltration and drainage, restrict nutrient availability and impede root penetration and growth (Mackenzie and Renkema, 2013; McNabb et al., 2013; Powers, 1999). Tree growth can be restricted by compacted soils (Corns, 1988), and at severe levels of compaction, growth of herbaceous plants and shrubs can also be impacted (Mackenzie and Renkema, 2013). A variety of decompaction techniques can be applied to the site to mitigate compaction effects. Impact of soil compaction and effectiveness of decompaction techniques varies with soil texture.

The third factor in regeneration of forested sites is the availability of regeneration microsites (Bergeron et al., 2014; Macdonald et al., 2012). Microsites can modify the microenvironmental conditions and create greater surface heterogeneity. Theoretically, greater surface heterogeneity results in variations in resource availability (e.g., moisture, temperature) which accommodates a wider variety of species with

different tolerances, and decreased competition through spatial segregation (Beatty, 2003). Availability of regeneration microsites is impacted by the following:

- Range of regeneration microsites available after reclamation and whether reclamation practices that create microsites were conducted (e.g., soil microtopography vs. coarse woody debris)
- Correspondence between available microsites and microsites required for the species that are available to regenerate

Species life history traits are a fourth factor that interacts with the previous three to drive regeneration (Bergeron et al., 2014). The post-disturbance vegetation community is impacted by the differential abilities of species to do the following (Macdonald et al., 2012):

- Survive the disturbance  
The ratio of species that survive the disturbance as remnant roots and rhizomes vs. seed is impacted by the disturbance type and severity (Archibold, 1979; Rydgren et al., 2004; Whittle et al., 1997).
- Disperse onto the site  
Wind and animal dispersal of seeds generally occurs across larger distances than vegetative spread through rhizomes and stolons, which are relatively local (Lee, 2004).
- Establish on the site after disturbance  
Species that become established on the site are those whose germination cues, microsites preferences and habitat requirements such as shade tolerance/intolerance, nutrient demand and other substrate needs are compatible with the site microenvironment and microsites. Species that are tolerant to a wide range of conditions may be more able to establish on disturbed sites.

Once species have become established on a site after disturbance, dynamics between species play an increasing role in determining the trajectory of the plant community that develops (Macdonald et al., 2012). For forest development, the key interplay is between understory species and trees. As understory grasses, forbs and shrub species grow and expand, they can compete with tree species and can have an impact on their establishment and growth (Landhäusser and Lieffers, 2011; Lieffers et al., 1993; Mundell et al., 2007). When trees are suppressed, the forest recovery trajectory is arrested, as a key structural layer of the forest ecosystem is not able to form. Noxious and problem weeds and seeded non-native agronomic species can have the same impact, and can additionally also suppress native herbaceous vegetation, further altering the recovery trajectory. The outcome of competition between desirable tree and understory species and undesirable species depends on which species colonize and establish on the site first and the competitive ability of the species in question (Small et al., 2018). If tree species do become established, the composition of the tree canopy is a function of habitat preferences and ecological properties of individual species (e.g., growth rate) (Macdonald et al., 2012). Faster growing shade intolerant trees such as aspen, poplar and pine tend to dominate the canopy initially, while slower

growing shade tolerant spruce can become more dominant later on as the earlier species senesce (Bergeron et al., 2014; Macdonald et al., 2012).

*C3: Suggested Further Reading*

Boreal forest specific papers are bolded (sorted chronologically)

Ecological Recovery

**Macdonald, E., S. Quideau and S. Landhäusser, 2012. Rebuilding Boreal Forest Ecosystems after Industrial Disturbance. Chapter 7 IN: Restoration and Reclamation of Boreal Ecosystems: Attaining Sustainable Development. Vitt, D.H. and J.S Bhatti (Editors). Cambridge University Press, New York. pp. 123-160.**

**Bergeron, Y., H.Y.H. Chen, N.C. Kenkel, A.L. Leduc and S.E. Macdonald, 2014. Boreal Mixedwood Stand Dynamics: Ecological Processes Underlying Multiple Pathways. The Forestry Chronicle 90(2): 202–213.**

Salvage and Placement Effects – Propagules

Tacey, W.H., and B.L. Glossop. 1980. Assessment of topsoil handling techniques for rehabilitation of sites mined for bauxite within the jarrah forest of Western Australia. *Journal of Applied Ecology* 17():195-201.

Grant, C.D., Bell, D.T., Koch, J.M., and W.A. Loneragan. 1996. Implications of seedling emergence to site restoration following bauxite mining in Western Australia. *Restoration Ecology* 4():146-154.

Koch, J.M., S.C. Ward, C.D. Grant and G.L. Ainsworth, 1996. Effects of Bauxite Mine Restoration Operations on Topsoil Seed Reserves in the Jarrah Forest of Western Australia. *Restoration Ecology* 4(4): 368–376.

Rokich, D.P., Dixon, K.W., Sivasithamparam, K., and K.A. Meney. 2000. Topsoil handling and storage effects on woodland restoration in Western Australia. *Restoration Ecology* 8():196-208.

**Mackenzie, D.D. and M.A. Naeth, 2010. The Role of the Forest Soil Propagule Bank in Assisted Natural Recovery after Oil Sands Mining. *Restoration Ecology* 18(4): 418–427.**

**Fair, J.M., 2011. The Potential of Forest Floor Transfer for the Reclamation of Boreal Forest Understory Plant Communities. M.Sc. Thesis. Department of Renewable Resources, University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta. 140 pp. Available at: <https://era.library.ualberta.ca/items/fc32bb36-22de-483c-bb29-80adceca5df9/download/f68f4445-2a43-4dcb-b21a-4c4e35bb9e0c>.**

**Wachowski, J., 2012. Transfer of Live Aspen Roots as a Reclamation Technique – Effects of Soil Depth, Root Diameter and Fine Root Growth on Root Suckering Ability. M.Sc. Thesis. Department of Renewable Resources, University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta. 105. Available at:**

[https://era.library.ualberta.ca/rails/active\\_storage/blobs/XTCuQMtQYgsoqY8kF9wpZN2V/Wachowski\\_Julia\\_Fall-202012.pdf](https://era.library.ualberta.ca/rails/active_storage/blobs/XTCuQMtQYgsoqY8kF9wpZN2V/Wachowski_Julia_Fall-202012.pdf).

Mackenzie, D.D., 2013. Oil Sands Mine Reclamation Using Boreal Forest Surface Soil (LFH) in Northern Alberta. Ph.D. Thesis. Department of Renewable Resources, University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta. 240 pp. Available at: [https://era.library.ualberta.ca/rails/active\\_storage/blobs/nvpAotmV7b6SKN7XtjA1kkLP/MacKenzie\\_Dean\\_Winter-202013.pdf](https://era.library.ualberta.ca/rails/active_storage/blobs/nvpAotmV7b6SKN7XtjA1kkLP/MacKenzie_Dean_Winter-202013.pdf).

Naeth, M.A., S.R. Wilkinson, D.D. Mackenzie, H.A. Archibald and C.B. Powter, 2013. Potential of LFH Mineral Soil Mixes for Reclamation of Forested Lands in Alberta. Oil Sands Research and Information Network Report No. TR-35. Oil Sands Research and Information Network, School of Energy and Environment, University of Alberta, School of Energy and the Environment, Edmonton, Alberta. OSRIN Report No. TR-35. 64 pp.

Archibald, H.A., 2014. Early Ecosystem Genesis Using LFH and Peat Cover Soils in Athabasca Oil Sands Reclamation. M.Sc. Thesis. Department of Renewable Resources, University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta. 297 pp. plus appendices. Available at: <https://era.library.ualberta.ca/items/051068f2-5b79-4496-9b9c-ed77ae087400/download/630e6293-b4bc-4cc8-ad58-0d2246c2a4e1>.

Frerichs, L.A., 2017. Decadal Assessment of Successional Development on Reclaimed Upland Boreal Well Sites. M.Sc. Thesis. Department of Renewable Resources, University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta. 144 pp. plus appendices. Available at: [https://era.library.ualberta.ca/items/30fb8946-3f74-437d-9d4a-41622810385d/view/11e56e33-7c34-4899-bb65-eed88d69279c/Frerichs\\_Laurie\\_A\\_201701\\_MSc.pdf](https://era.library.ualberta.ca/items/30fb8946-3f74-437d-9d4a-41622810385d/view/11e56e33-7c34-4899-bb65-eed88d69279c/Frerichs_Laurie_A_201701_MSc.pdf).

Frerichs, L.A., E.W. Bork, T.J. Osko and M.A. Naeth, 2017. Effects of Boreal Well Site Reclamation Practices on Long-Term Planted Spruce and Deciduous Tree Regeneration. *Forests* 8(6)(201). Available at: <https://www.mdpi.com/1999-4907/8/6/201/pdf>.

Jones, C.E., 2016. Early Vegetation Community Development and Dispersal in Upland Boreal Forest Reclamation. M.Sc. Thesis. Department of Renewable Resources, University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta. 118 pp. Available at: <https://era.library.ualberta.ca/items/3249f37b-95f2-42e6-aa0e-58357fde1ec9/download/43d6115e-0e6a-456c-b108-165f3d580450>.

Jones, C.E., S. Bachmann, V.J. Lieffers and S.M. Landhäusser, 2018. Rapid Understory Plant Recovery Following Forest Floor Protection on Temporary Drilling Pads. *Restoration Ecology* 26(1): 48–55.

#### Salvage and Placement Effects – Soil Properties

Stahl, P.D., B.L. Perryman, S. Sharmasarkar and L.C. Munn, 2002. Topsoil Stockpiling versus Exposure to Traffic: A Case Study on in Situ Uranium Wellfields. *Restoration Ecology* 10(1): 129–137.

McMillan, R., S.A. Quideau, M.D. MacKenzie and O. Biryukova, 2007. Nitrogen Mineralization and Microbial Activity in Oil Sands Reclaimed Boreal Forest Soils. *Journal of Environmental Quality* 36: 1470–1478.

Mackenzie, D.D. and M.A. Naeth, 2010. The Role of the Forest Soil Propagule Bank in Assisted Natural Recovery after Oil Sands Mining. *Restoration Ecology* 18(4): 418–427.

Beasse, M. 2012. Microbial communities in organic substrates used for oil sands reclamation and their link to boreal seedling growth. MSc thesis. University of Alberta, Department of Renewable Resources. Edmonton AB. 97 pp.

Hahn, A.S., 2012. Soil Microbial Communities in Early Ecosystems. M.Sc. Thesis. Department of Renewable Resources, University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta. 104 pp. plus appendices. Available at: <https://era.library.ualberta.ca/items/39c61db3-cf7c-49dc-bf18-41217d5142cd/download/fc9c2a4c-7e27-4799-918a-e665f9140529>.

Larney, F.J., A.F. Olson, P.R. DeMaere, 2012. Residual effects of topsoil replacement depths and one-time application of organic amendments in natural gas wellsite reclamation. *Canadian Journal of Soil Science* 92: 883-891.

Mackenzie, D.D., 2013. Oil Sands Mine Reclamation Using Boreal Forest Surface Soil (LFH) in Northern Alberta. Ph.D. Thesis. Department of Renewable Resources, University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta. 240 pp. Available at: [https://era.library.ualberta.ca/rails/active\\_storage/blobs/nvpAotmV7b6SKN7XtjA1kkLP/MacKenzie\\_Dean\\_Winter-202013.pdf](https://era.library.ualberta.ca/rails/active_storage/blobs/nvpAotmV7b6SKN7XtjA1kkLP/MacKenzie_Dean_Winter-202013.pdf).

Naeth, M.A., S.R. Wilkinson, D.D. Mackenzie, H.A. Archibald and C.B. Powter, 2013. Potential of LFH Mineral Soil Mixes for Reclamation of Forested Lands in Alberta. Oil Sands Research and Information Network Report No. TR-35. Oil Sands Research and Information Network, School of Energy and Environment, University of Alberta, School of Energy and the Environment, Edmonton, Alberta. OSRIN Report No. TR-35. 64 pp.

Frerichs, L.A., 2017. Decadal Assessment of Successional Development on Reclaimed Upland Boreal Well Sites. M.Sc. Thesis. Department of Renewable Resources, University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta. 144 pp. plus appendices. Available at: [https://era.library.ualberta.ca/items/30fb8946-3f74-437d-9d4a-41622810385d/view/11e56e33-7c34-4899-bb65-eed88d69279c/Frerichs\\_Laurie\\_A\\_201701\\_MSc.pdf](https://era.library.ualberta.ca/items/30fb8946-3f74-437d-9d4a-41622810385d/view/11e56e33-7c34-4899-bb65-eed88d69279c/Frerichs_Laurie_A_201701_MSc.pdf).

Frerichs, L.A., E.W. Bork, T.J. Osko and M.A. Naeth, 2017. Effects of Boreal Well Site Reclamation Practices on Long-Term Planted Spruce and Deciduous Tree Regeneration. *Forests* 8(6)(201). Available at: <https://www.mdpi.com/1999-4907/8/6/201/pdf>.

Howell, D.M. and M.D. MacKenzie, 2017. Using Bioavailable Nutrients and Microbial Dynamics to Assess Soil Type and Placement Depth in Reclamation. *Applied Soil Ecology* 116(September 2016): 87–95. Available at: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.apsoil.2017.03.023>.

Bockstette, J., 2018. The Role of Soil Reconstruction and Soil Amendments in Forest Reclamation. M.Sc. Thesis. Department of Renewable Resources, University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta. 83 pp. Available at:

[https://era.library.ualberta.ca/rails/active\\_storage/blobs/UpFTX6SfVKDud48qm1wApWeA/Bockstette\\_Jana\\_201809\\_MSc.pdf](https://era.library.ualberta.ca/rails/active_storage/blobs/UpFTX6SfVKDud48qm1wApWeA/Bockstette_Jana_201809_MSc.pdf).

### Stockpiling

Abdul-Kareem, A.W. and S.G. McRae. 1984. The effects on topsoil of long-term storage in stockpiles. *Plant and Soil* 96: 357-363.

Visser, S., J. Fujikawa, C.L. Griffiths and D. Parkinson, 1984. Effect of Topsoil Storage on Microbial Activity, Primary Production and Decomposition Potential. *Plant and Soil* 82(1): 41–50.

Dickie, J.B., Gajjar, K.H., Birch, P., and J.A. Harris. 1988. The survival of viable seeds in stored topsoil from opencast coal working and its implications for site restoration. *Biological Conservation* 43:257-265.

Kundu N.K. and M.K. Ghose, 1997. Shelf life of stock-piled topsoil of an opencast coal mine. *Environmental Conservation* 24(1): 24–30.

Rokich, D.P., Dixon, K.W., Sivasithamparam, K., and K.A. Meney. 2000. Topsoil handling and storage effects on woodland restoration in Western Australia. *Restoration Ecology* 8:196-208.

Ghose, M.K., 2001. Management of Topsoil for Geo-Environmental Reclamation of Coal Mining Areas. *Environmental Geology* 40: 1405–1410.

Anderson, J.D., L.J. Ingram and P.D. Stahl, 2008. Influence of Reclamation Management Practices on Microbial Biomass Carbon and Soil Organic Carbon Accumulation in Semiarid Mined Lands of Wyoming. *Applied Soil Ecology* 40(2): 387–397.

Rivera, D., B.M. Jáuregui and B. Peco, 2012. The Fate of Herbaceous Seeds during Topsoil Stockpiling: Restoration Potential of Seed Banks. *Ecological Engineering* 44: 94–101.

**Mackenzie, D.D., 2013. Oil Sands Mine Reclamation Using Boreal Forest Surface Soil (LFH) in Northern Alberta. Ph.D. Thesis. Department of Renewable Resources, University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta. 240 pp. Available at:**  
[https://era.library.ualberta.ca/rails/active\\_storage/blobs/nvpAotmV7b6SKN7XtjA1kkLP/MacKenzie\\_Dean\\_Winter-202013.pdf](https://era.library.ualberta.ca/rails/active_storage/blobs/nvpAotmV7b6SKN7XtjA1kkLP/MacKenzie_Dean_Winter-202013.pdf).

**Gupta, S. Das, W. Kirby and B.D. Pinno, 2019. Effects of Stockpiling and Organic Matter Addition on Nutrient Bioavailability in Reclamation Soils. Soil Science Society of America Journal . Available at:**  
<https://dl.sciencesocieties.org/publications/sssaj/abstracts/0/0/sssaj2018.07.0273>.

### Compaction and Lack of Topsoil

**Bulmer, C. E., Schmidt, M. G., Kishchuk, B. and Preston, C. 1998. Impacts of blading and burning site preparation on soil properties and site productivity in the sub-boreal spruce zone of central British Columbia. Inf. Rep. BC-X-377. Canadian Forest Service, Victoria, BC.**

Bulmer, C.E. and M. Krzic, 2003. Soil Properties and Lodgepole Pine Growth on Rehabilitated Landings in Northeastern British Columbia. *Canadian Journal of Soil Science* 83: 465–474.

Bulmer, C., K. Venner and C. Prescott, 2007. Forest Soil Rehabilitation with Tillage and Wood Waste Enhances Seedling Establishment but Not Height after 8 Years. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research* 37: 1894–1906.

Campbell, D.B., C.E. Bulmer, M.D. Jones, L.J. Philip and J.J. Zwiazek, 2008. Incorporation of Topsoil and Burn-Pile Debris Substantially Increases Early Growth of Lodgepole Pine on Landings. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research* 38: 257–267.

Osko, T. and M. Glasgow, 2010. Removing the Wellsite Footprint: Recommended Practices for Construction and Reclamation of Wellsites on Upland Forests in Boreal Alberta. University of Alberta, Department of renewable Resources, Edmonton, Alberta. 57 pp. plus appendices. Available at: [http://www.biology.ualberta.ca/faculty/stan\\_boutin/ilm/uploads/footprint/UplandRecommendations - Final Revised - Small File.pdf](http://www.biology.ualberta.ca/faculty/stan_boutin/ilm/uploads/footprint/UplandRecommendations-FinalRevised-SmallFile.pdf).

Mackenzie, D. and K. Renkema, 2013. In-Situ Oil Sands Extraction Reclamation and Restoration Practices and Opportunities Compilation. Canada's Oil Sands Innovation Alliance, Edmonton, Alberta. 80 pp. plus appendices. Available at: [https://www.cosia.ca/sites/default/files/attachments/COSIA\\_In-Situ\\_Extraction\\_Reclamation\\_and\\_Restoration\\_Compilation.pdf](https://www.cosia.ca/sites/default/files/attachments/COSIA_In-Situ_Extraction_Reclamation_and_Restoration_Compilation.pdf).

McNabb, D.H., J.-M. Sobze and A. Schoonmaker, 2013. Practices to Effectively Till Industrial Forest Soils. *Canadian Reclamation* 13(1): 40–42.

#### Microtopography

Lieffers-Pritchard, S.M. 2005. Impact of slash loading on soil temperatures and aspen regeneration. M.Sc. Thesis. Department of Soil Science, University of Saskatchewan. 129 pp. plus appendices.

Vinge, T. and M. Pyper, 2012. Managing woody materials on industrial sites: Meeting economic, ecological and forest health goals through a collaborative approach. Department of Renewable Resources, University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta. 32 pp.

Brown, R.L. and M.A. Naeth, 2014. Woody Debris Amendment Enhances Reclamation after Oil Sands Mining in Alberta, Canada. *Restoration Ecology* 22(1): 40–48.

Forsch, K.B.C., 2014. Oil Sands Reclamation Using Woody Debris with LFH Mineral Soil Mix and Peat Mineral Soil Mix Cover Soils: Impacts on Select Soil and Vegetation Properties. M.Sc. Thesis. Department of Renewable Resources University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta. 110 pp. Available at: [https://era.library.ualberta.ca/items/cdfd1a69-8e4e-43de-af43-f6a6e7fed202/view/4b0c4ed0-1594-4411-a60c-c19cef289c65/Forsch\\_Katryna\\_BC\\_201407\\_MSc.pdf](https://era.library.ualberta.ca/items/cdfd1a69-8e4e-43de-af43-f6a6e7fed202/view/4b0c4ed0-1594-4411-a60c-c19cef289c65/Forsch_Katryna_BC_201407_MSc.pdf).

Schott, K.M., J. Karst and S.M. Landhäusser, 2014. The Role of Microsite Conditions in Restoring Trembling Aspen (*Populus Tremuloides* Michx) from Seed. *Restoration Ecology* 22(3): 292–295.

**Melnik, K., S.M. Landhäusser and K. Devito, 2018. Role of Microtopography in the Expression of Soil Propagule Banks on Reclamation Sites. Restoration Ecology 26(2): S200–S210.**

Forest Dynamics

**Chen, H.Y.H and R.V. Popadiouk, 2002. Dynamics of North American boreal mixedwoods. Environmental Reviews 10: 137–166.**

**Hart, S.A. and H.Y.H. Chen, 2006. Understory Vegetation Dynamics of North American Boreal Forests. Critical Reviews in Plant Sciences 25: 381–397.**



---

## APPENDIX D: ECOLOGICAL FUNCTIONALITY OF PEATLANDS

---

### *D1: Key Factors that Control Functional Peatland Ecosystems*

Peatlands are important ecosystems of global significance, accounting for 56% of all organic soil carbon in Canadian soils. They play an important role in the global carbon cycle by removing atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> and storing it in the form of peat and releasing significant amounts of greenhouse gases (GHGs) such as CH<sub>4</sub>, and supplying dissolved organic carbon (DOC) to downstream ecosystems (Price et al., 2016; Tarnocai et al., 2009). Sequestration of carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) and the storage of peat has had a net cooling effect of global climate since the late Holocene (Frolking et al., 2006). Initiation of peatlands in continental Canada began around 12,000 – 15,000 years ago after glacier retreat, through primary peat formation on wet, unvegetated mineral soil and infilling of wet basins and depressions as wetland vegetation developed and built up (terrestrialization). However, the majority of boreal peatlands in western Canada formed through cycles of paludification or swamping of previously dry mineral soil vegetated with non-wetland species (Kuhry and Turunen, 2006). Paludification started relatively late in the Holocene (around 8,000 years ago) as the climate of western continental Canada became wetter and cooler. A young, paludifying wetland that is actively accumulating peat through the growth of peat-forming plants is called a “mire” (Rydin and Jeglum, 2015; Sjors, 1948). A mire is not yet a peatland as it lacks the 40 cm of peat. The distinction between mire and peatland is critical for peatland management and restoration because in most cases newly reclaimed sites with a developing, peat-forming vegetation are essentially mires with the hope that they are on a trajectory towards becoming true peatlands by definition.

After initiation, development of a peatland usually proceeds along two pathways (Kuhry and Turunen, 2006; Yu, 2006). First, newly formed wetlands (e.g., marshes) develop into either poor or rich fens that can persist on the landscape for thousands of years under the influence of overriding effects of allogenic (external) factors of climate and local water chemistry with little successional change. Secondly, early marshes and fens undergo successional changes driven by autogenic (internal) factors including the isolation of growing peat surface from local groundwater as peat builds up, acidification, and oligotrophication, which leads to the eventual formation of bogs (Bauer et al., 2003).

Broadly speaking, boreal peatlands can be divided into ombrogenous bogs and minerogenous fens based on topography, hydrology, chemistry (Halsey et al., 2003; Vitt et al., 1994). Bogs are different from all other types of peatlands in that bogs receive water and nutrient inputs only from precipitation (snowfall and rain) and the live growing surface is isolated from mineral rich water. They are usually dominated by

oligotrophic species of peat mosses (genus *Sphagnum*). Fens can be topogenous (influenced by stagnant waters pooled in depressions), soligenous (influenced by seepage), or limnogenous (influenced by flood waters from water courses) (von Post and Granlund, 1926; Rydin and Jeglum, 2015). As such, fens are supplied with water that had contact with mineral rich soils from the surrounding area. These minerogenous waters have nutritional and buffering effects and can support the development of a wide range of fen types, from sedge-dominated open fens to larch- or birch-dominated wooded fens (Bragazza and Gerdol, 2002; Tahvanainen, 2004; Wood et al., 2016). Calcareous rich fens are characterized by the high number of species of high fidelity (e.g., true mosses) to basic to slightly acid, base cation-rich environment. Poor fens have relatively few differential species in comparison. They are acid, have low base cations, little or no alkalinity, and are dominated by *Sphagnum* mosses.

Within each peatland type, vegetation can vary greatly, both structurally and compositionally. All peatlands can be dominated by a combination of species in the tree layer (black spruce, larch), the shrub layer (birch, willow), the field layer (sedges, forbs, and grasses), and the ground layer (mosses) (Zoltai and Vitt, 1995). Therefore, vegetation of a peatland is usually not a good indicator of basic peatland types (bogs, poor fens, and rich fens), unlike non-peat forming wetlands that can be easily distinguished by species in the tree layer (swamps) or the field layer (marshes). In Alberta, mature bogs are usually wooded with an open canopy while fens vary greatly from open to wooded. Growth of trees in peatlands significantly lags behind upland counterparts (Dimitrov et al., 2014; Wieder, 2006). Therefore, slow tree growth on reclaimed peatland sites should not be considered a critical factor or failure unless other functions rely on the fast recovery of the tree layer (e.g., wildlife habitat restoration).

A key concept in peatland ecology is the “Acrotelm/Catotelm Model” first developed by Clymo (1984). A peat bog is simplified and divided into two layers: a top, aerobic layer (acrotelm) and an underlying anaerobic layer (catotelm). Primary productivity and aerobic respiration (both microbial and autotrophic) occurs in the acrotelm layer where a surficial ground layer of mosses and associated litter, roots and moss plants exists. The catotelm layer receives biomass from the above acrotelm that undergoes slow anaerobic decomposition which produces CH<sub>4</sub> that can be released back to the atmosphere or DOC that can be lost through subsurface water flow. The separation between the two layers is not well defined for fens and subject to climate and water table fluctuation. This concept is a simplification but critical to understanding the functioning of natural peatlands and the effective reclamation of disturbed peatlands. In essence, peatland restoration is the process of recreating a functional acrotelm/catotelm profile driven by fluctuating water tables and a developing peat forming vegetation on top (Joosten et al., 2016).

A ground layer of bryophytes, often covering 80-100% of the surface, is a unique and defining characteristic of boreal peatland ecosystems. Bogs and poor fens are dominated by *Sphagnum* spp. while rich fens are dominated by true mosses (Bryopsida) (Rydin and Jeglum, 2015). The development and succession of different vegetation as a peatland evolves is not only a result of local hydrology and water chemistry but also a self-regulated process driven by highly adapted vegetation, particularly mosses. Unlike higher plants, bryophytes lack vascular tissues to transport water and nutrients over long distances (Glime, 2009). Germination and growth of bryophytes are highly sensitive to moisture and temperature (Glime, 2007). This is critical for the introduction of suitable peatland vegetation, particularly bryophytes, in reclamation. The reclaimed substrate should be moist and relatively flat to ensure good contact of introduced moss plants (e.g., spores, fragments) with the substrate. The surface can be covered with straw mulch or other types of material to preserve near surface moisture for bryophyte germination.

All mosses, and particularly *Sphagnum* mosses, common in bogs and poor fens can acidify the environment they are growing in, through the production of acids through decomposition (organic acidity) and through the exchange of cations by releasing  $H^+$  (inorganic acidity) (Clymo, 1984). pH of 5.5 is a fundamental dividing point in the habitat preference of many peatland species. Alkalinity (bicarbonate) is completely absent below pH 5.5 and increases to about  $150 - 200 \text{ mg L}^{-1} \text{ HCO}_3^- + \text{CO}_3^{2-}$  at pH 8.0 (Vitt, 2017). Abundance of oligotrophic *Sphagnum* mosses decreases from bog, poor fen to fens with surface water pH over 5.5 where true mosses dominate the ground layer. Some mesotrophic *Sphagnum* moss species can grow in environments where  $\text{pH} > 5.5$  and the continued growth of mosses will lower the site pH over time. Eventually oligotrophic *Sphagnum* species will take over and further lower the site pH below 5.5, eliminating early fen species and create true ombrotrophic conditions by elevating the growing surface away from mineral rich groundwater (Vitt, 2017). Therefore, pH less than 5.5 is not a feasible condition to create through reclamation since either the acidifying vegetation is lost (compression of surface, clearing of vegetation) or the introduction of mineral soil (e.g., well pad, roads) changes the surface water chemistry which is needed to support the oligotrophic vegetation. In other words, re-creation of bogs and poor fens with a ground layer dominated by *Sphagnum* mosses is NOT a feasible end goal in the time span of a reclamation project. Instead, a fen type of community with a true moss dominated ground layer should be targeted with the assumption that these systems will either remain as fens or evolve towards poor fens and bogs following natural peatland development pathways.

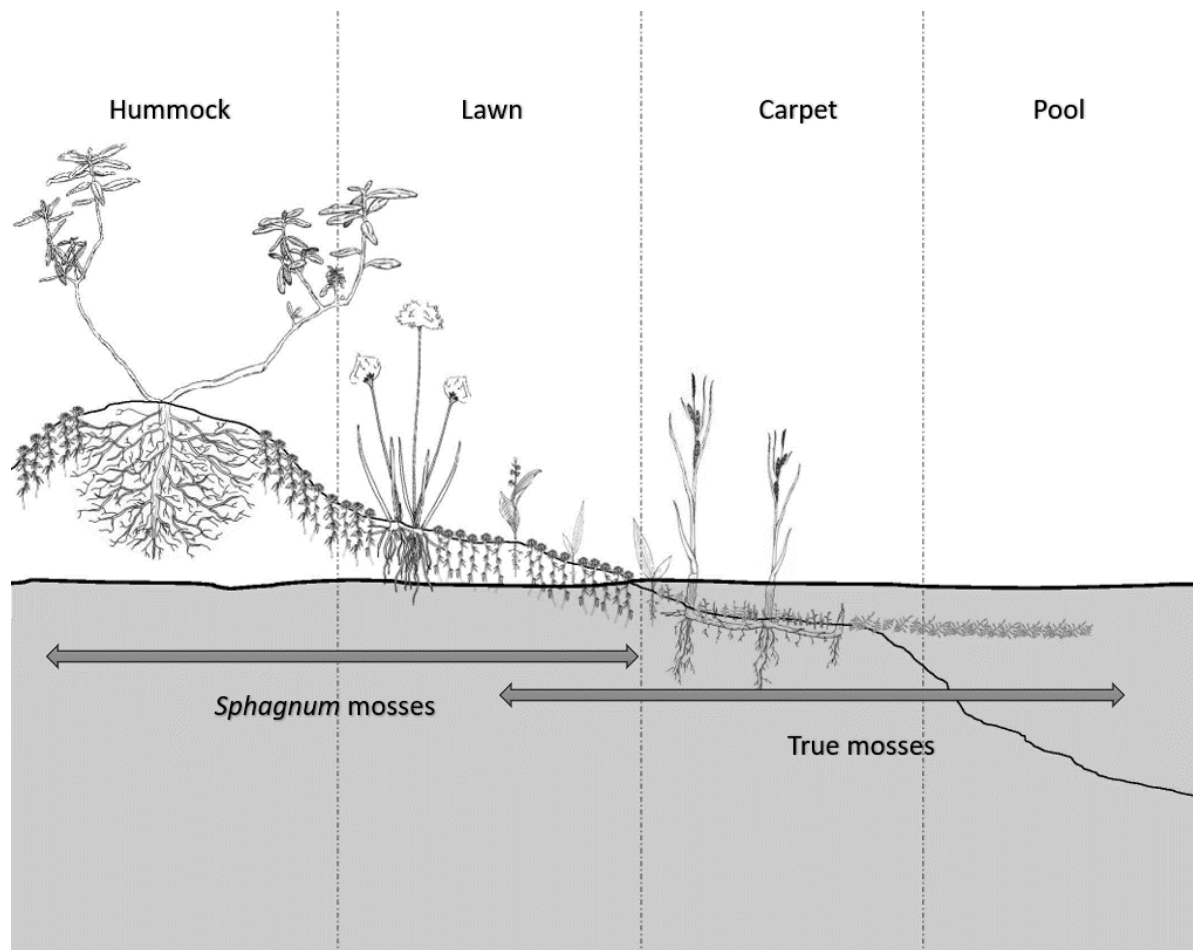
Peatlands, particularly bogs, have varying ground surface topography with high hummocks and low hollows. Hummocks are usually dry, while hollows range from dry (lichen dominated in mature bogs),

moist to wet in fens. At the site level, peatland ground surface can be further divided into pools (small bodies of open water filled with submerged vegetation), carpets (areas where the mosses have emergent upper parts and form unconsolidated substrates), lawns (low, relatively level, moist habitats of consolidated peat), and hummocks (Figure 18 and Figure 19) (Rydin and Jeglum, 2015). The elevation difference between hummocks and hollows or pools is relatively small (no more than 1 m) and is thus referred to as “microtopography”. The size and distribution of hummocks and hollows depend on the hydrology and vegetation within the peatland. Microtopography is a secondary feature developed as a result of natural variation of ground surface and fluctuating water table, and accentuated by the growth and differential decomposition rates of highly adapted species along the water table gradient. Microtopography is one feature of a natural peatland that could be replicated through site preparation such as mounding and scarification. Creating a variable ground surface will likely contribute to the overall vegetation diversity and resilience against environmental uncertainties. Higher microsites are critical for woody vegetation establishment in wetlands. However, care should be taken to avoid too much dry exposed ground if bryophytes are to be introduced.

Figure 18. A peatland complex in northwestern Alberta.



Notice the sharp transition from open pool of moss carpets to shrubby hummocks to open canopy treed bogs in the background.



**Figure 19. Illustration of peatland microtopography along a hydrological gradient.**

*Sphagnum* mosses increases as the growing surface is isolated from mineral rich surface water. Credit: Melissa Kucey

**D2: Implications for Reclamation**

Based on the early field trials, a functional peatland or a reclaimed site on the trajectory towards becoming a functional peatland should have the following characteristics:

1. A moist to wet substrate (either peat or mineral) and a fluctuating water table that fits in with the local and regional topography and hydrology:

The reclaimed substrate should be moist and relatively flat (but not necessarily smooth) to ensure good contact of introduced moss plants (e.g., spores, fragments) with the substrate. The surface can be covered with straw mulch or other types of material to preserve near surface moisture for bryophyte germination. The soil should be decompacted or loose enough to promote vegetation growth. Geotextile may be a limiting factor on rooting depth, although roots of most peatland

plants are concentrated within the top 30-50 cm of soil profile due to high water table in most peatlands (Fan et al., 2017; Lieffers, 1987). The exact impact of geotextile on plant growth is unclear and warrants further investigation. Buried peat may or may not rebound after the removal of clay overburden. This may lead to prolonged flooding due to continued decomposition of underlying peat. The soil surface should also be stable without signs of erosion and slumping. Any berms or barrier to block water flow around or across the reclaimed site should be removed.

2. Mitigated and reduced impact on the surrounding areas around and along the in-situ features:  
Barriers and/or berms blocking water flow should be removed or mitigated. Drainage devices or trenches can be created to connect water flow from surrounding areas with the reclaimed surfaces. There should be no erosion or slumping of soil surface to minimize continued input of mineral soil into surrounding peatlands. The impact of mineral input on peatland chemistry is not well studied. Different types of peatland (bogs vs. fens) may have different buffering capacity against input of mineral nutrients. A well pad may affect local and regional hydrology differently from a linear features (e.g., access road). Regional context should be considered when leaving well pads in place.
3. A diverse vegetation community consists of mostly peat forming species well adapted to local soil and water chemistry conditions and matches the structural components of nearby reference peatlands (wooded, shrubby, open etc.):  
Vegetation composition, coverage, species richness are often mentioned as key considerations for assessing equivalent land capability of reclaimed well pads and/or pads left in place. Vegetation on site is often compared to off site to determine if a site is on the trajectory towards meeting either upland or peatland criteria. There is a consensus that a diverse community with native trees, shrubs, and herbs is more likely to persist and grow over time. Non-native, invasive or weedy species should be minimal. Non-peat forming species such as cattail should not dominate the site.
4. A healthy ground layer dominated by bryophytes, particularly mosses, which is a key differentiator from other non-peat forming wetlands such as marshes (dominated by sedges, herbs and grasses) and swamps (dominated by trees with poor ground layer vegetation).  
Most respondents agreed that woody vegetation is a good indicator for natural encroachment on well pads left in place. For reclaimed sites (complete or partial removal), respondents default to the peatland criteria for assessing peatland development progress.

5. Minimal non-peat forming species although some may persist on early successional sites with high nutrients and exposed microsites.

Weeds and invasive species present key challenges for well pads left in place. For reclaimed peatland sites, non-peat forming species will not be included in reclamation assessment according to the peatland criteria. Cattails may become dominant if a site is too wet due to improper topography or hydrology. There is concern about upland grasses (e.g., *Calamagrostis*) on newly reclaimed peatland sites. Non-peat forming species, even upland species, can establish on reclaimed peat and mineral substrates. In some cases, these early colonizers fall out of the community as the site chemistry changes as other peatland vegetation starts to develop. However, this is another knowledge gap to address through field trials.

6. Accumulation of biomass and the formation of peat in the catotelm layer.

Peat accumulation is a defining character of a functional, healthy peatland ecosystem (Rydin and Jeglum, 2015). A healthy, carbon accumulating cover of peatland species and the eventual accumulation of peat is a widely considered a key indicator of success in peatland restoration trials (Graf and Rochefort, 2009; Lucchese et al., 2010; Rochefort, 2000). However, it is unknown if any of the current reclamation approaches can lead to the eventual accumulation of peat on reclaimed mineral features. This is a major knowledge gap in reclamation practice as well as general peatland ecology.